

# LEARN SPANISH LIKE CRAZY

— 2 BOOKS IN 1 —

From Beginners to Advanced Level

Boost your Vocabulary and Conversations in No Time, at Home or in Your Car with Common Phrases, Short Stories and Grammar Lessons



S O F I A L O P E Z

---

**LEARN SPANISH  
LIKE CRAZY**

---

2 Books in 1

Boost your Vocabulary and Conversations in No Time, at Home or in  
Your Car with Common Phrases, Short Stories and Grammar Lessons

From Beginners to Advanced Level

## TABLE OF CONTENT

### BOOK 1 # LEARN SPANISH FOR BIGINNERS

#### Description

Chapter 1: Introduction

Chapter 2: Tips For Pronunciation

Chapter 3: Reading In Spanish

Chapter 4: Accent And Accentuation

Chapter 5: Accentuation Rules

Chapter 6: Tips For Learning New Language

Chapter 7: Articles

Chapter 8: Numbers

Chapter 9: Basic Verbs

Chapter 10: Adjectives

Chapter 11: Adverbs

Chapter 12: The Indicative Mood

Chapter 13: The Subjunctive Mood

Chapter 14: The Imperative Mood

Chapter 15: Preposition

Chapter 16: Basic Spanish Vocabulary And Phrases

### BOOK # 2 Spanish Lessons

#### **Part 1:- Spanish Short Stories**

##### Introduction:

Chapter 1- Easy Stories

Chapter 2- Intermediate Stories

Chapter 3- Difficult Stories

#### **Part 2:-Spanish Conversations**

Chapter 1: Starting Conversation At Shop/Restaurant

Chapter 2: Conversations At School

Chapter 3: Internet Conversations

[Chapter 4: Talking About Health Issues](#)  
[Chapter 5: Sharing Problems](#)  
[Chapter 6: Conversation While Shopping](#)  
[Chapter 7: Conversation About Sports And Athletics](#)  
[Chapter 8: Introduction And Social Conversation](#)  
[Chapter 9: Conversation While Travelling](#)  
[Chapter 10: Conversation Between Foreigners](#)  
[Chapter 11: Greetings Based Conversations](#)

### **Part 3: Spanish Common Phrases**

[Introduction](#)

[Chapter 1: Numbers](#)  
[Chapter 2: Times Of The Day](#)  
[Chapter 3: Colors](#)  
[Chapter 4: Date And Time](#)  
[Chapter 5: Celebrations](#)  
[Chapter 6: How Do You Say...?](#)  
[Chapter 7: Money And Shopping](#)  
[Chapter 8: Emergencies](#)  
[Chapter 9: Health And Wellness](#)  
[Chapter 10: Medical Basics](#)  
[Chapter 11: Car Break Down](#)  
[Chapter 12: Greetings](#)  
[Chapter 13: Saying Good Bye](#)  
[Chapter 14: Saying Sorry](#)  
[Chapter 15: Getting Introduced](#)  
[Chapter 16: Showing Gratitude](#)  
[Chapter 17: Time Discussion](#)  
[Chapter 18: Speaking Language](#)  
[Chapter 19: Compliments](#)  
[Chapter 20: Complaints](#)  
[Chapter 21: Likeness And Dislike](#)  
[Chapter 22: Certainty](#)  
[Chapter 23: Invitation](#)  
[Chapter 24: Query](#)

[Chapter 25: Making & Refusing Offers](#)

[Chapter 26: Permission](#)

[Chapter 27: Advice And Suggestions](#)

[Chapter 28: Opinions](#)

[Chapter 29: When Can We Meet Up.](#)

[Chapter 30: Spanish Idiomatic Phrases](#)

[Chapter 31: Spanish Idioms With Meaning](#)

---

## **Learn Spanish For Beginners**

---

## DESCRIPTION

---

This book is divided into several chapters in order to brief all of the Spanish basics to beginner. It includes all important modules of Spanish language i.e basic grammar, tenses, vocabulary and reading skill improvement tips. This book covers the experience of travellers and Spanish Native speakers to get into more depth of this language.

The sequence of book has been settled properly taking into consideration , the level of knowledge of a person who is trying to learn the language. Starting chapters are based upon introduction, history and then importance of this language to encourage the learner.

Further chapters consist of basic words, vocabulary, verbs tenses and parts of the speech in Spanish Language. If you want to enhance and increase your command on this language then you should buy this book immediately. Hope that readers will find our approach to be effective, Thank you.

## CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

---

Everyone has some knowledge of the Spanish language. And even if you think you don't you do, let me tell you that there are a number of [words in English of Spanish origin](#), and therefore you subconsciously have knowledge of the Spanish language.

Spanish is one of the most spoken languages in the world, with around 440 million native speakers, and 70 or so million people speaking it as a second language. There are 20 Spanish speaking countries who use the language in an official capacity, as well as large populations of Spanish speakers in other countries where the language is not officially recognised.

You will find plenty of guides to learn Spanish on the internet. They will tell you about the grammar, the vocabulary, and the pronunciation.

However, this guide is slightly different. We will deal with some of the questions that people ask themselves before they start studying Spanish that are perhaps not the mainstream questions related to how easy Spanish is to learn, or how long it will take.

This guide will look at how similar Spanish is to other languages, such as Catalan and Portuguese, as well as looking at the history of the language and how it is related to the culture. We believe these are all useful things to know before you start learning the language of Cervantes, and this information could even enhance your learning experience.

### **What are the Origins of the Spanish Language?**

So let's begin by having a quick look at the [history of the Spanish language](#). It could be that your Spanish lessons don't cover this aspect of language learning, but in order to learn any foreign language, you need to know where it has come from and the way it developed.

The Spanish language has its roots in Latin that the Romans brought to the [Iberian Peninsula](#) in around the 3rd century BC. For over 600 years, the people of the Iberian Peninsula became speakers of Latin, and other languages in this area began to die out.

The Iberian Peninsula, where we find modern day Spain and Portugal, is the expanse of land at the most western point of mainland Europe. It is



surrounded on all sides by sea, apart from a small northeastern connection to France where the Pyrenees Mountains are found. This relative isolation means that the languages that developed on the Iberian Peninsula developed in relative isolation, and other developments in the Latin language were extremely slow in arriving from Rome.

The languages on the Iberian Peninsula have changed a lot over the years. When the Roman Empire started to decline, various Germanic tribes began to invade the peninsula, bringing with them their own language. This language didn't really catch on, and people continued to speak Latin in day-to-day life. However, it did make some small contributions, and as such the Latin that was spoken began to change slightly.

In 8th century AD, it was the Moors of North Africa who invaded the peninsula from the south. They conquered large swathes of territory, and the romance languages that had developed over almost a thousand years in various parts came under renewed threat. These languages included Catalan, Galician, and Navarro-Aragonese.

Importantly for our story, it was the Kingdom of Asturias in the north of modern-day Spain that provided the main resistance against the Moors' advance. As the Kingdom grew stronger, it started to push the Moors back, and led the [reconquista](#) of the Iberian peninsula between the 11th and the 13th centuries AD, to take back the territory that had fallen under Muslim rule, and put it back in the hands of the Christians.

The language of the Kingdom of Asturias was what we know today as Spanish, and as the Kingdom took more and more territory, the language spread further afield.

### **The Golden Age of Discovery**

From the Kingdom of the Asturias came modern day Spain as it started to start to disintegrate. When the Spanish royalty decided to sponsor Christopher Columbus' expeditions to the Americas, the Spanish language was flung half way across the world. As he conquered territory, he imposed Spanish on the local communities. This is why large parts of Latin American now speak Spanish.

This dominance of the Spanish empire of Latin American territories ensured that Spanish took hold in these parts, all the way until its collapse in the 19th century.

### **Collapse of the Spanish Empire**

Napoleon's invasion of Spain led to a political crisis which triggered independence in Latin American countries under Spanish rule. Some of the only territories still held by the Spanish at the end of 19th century were Guam, the Philippines, Cuba, and Puerto Rico, but they were forced to offer these to America after the Spanish-American war of 1898.

Spain became extremely fragile, both politically and economically. This laid the foundations for Franco's dictatorship at the end of the Spanish civil war in 1939.

Under his rule, he made Spanish the only language that could be spoken, and outlawed all regional dialects. This was the case until his death in 1975, after which a new Spanish constitution reinstated Catalan, Occitan, Basque, and Galician, as co-official languages in Spain.

### **Catalan and Spanish: Just How Similar are They?**

This leads us nicely on to our next section; [how do Spanish and Catalan differ?](#) The answer is, more than you might think.

Sometimes people assume that Spanish speaking is Catalan speaking, and vice versa. But this is wrong, and Catalan is very much its own language and culture.

It is the language of Catalonia in northeastern Spain where Barcelona is located, but it is also spoken further south towards the city of Valencia, as well as on the Balearic Islands. Most people in these areas speak both Catalan and Spanish, particularly in the big towns and cities. However, if you go to more rural areas, you may encounter people who only speak Catalan.

We have already mentioned that Catalan and Spanish developed as romance languages that came out of Latin. They developed at the same time and with similar influences, and therefore do share some things in common. For example:

- They both have two genders for nouns (male and female)
- They both have singular and plural forms for nouns
- They both have high inflection meaning the verb changes depending on tense, person, number, gender etc
- The pronunciation of the letter “v” is pronounced as a “b” in both languages

How do you say these words in Catalan?

### **Linguistic Differences**

Even though these two languages share some common features due to their

shared origins, they also have a number of different characteristics that make them different and unique.

Spanish has 5 vowel sounds, where as Catalan has 8, and where as Spanish is completely phonetic meaning that every written letter has a sound when pronounced, Catalan is not. These two differences in particular make Catalan more similar to Portuguese than Spanish.

Other differences include:

- Catalan also doesn't have a vowel at the end of masculine nouns, which Spanish does.
- In Spanish, every accent is acute and goes in the same direction. But in Catalan, there are grave tonal accents (such as À) and acute accents (such as É)
- Different ways of spelling similarly sounding words. For example, window is *finestra* in Catalan and *ventana* in Spanish.

When it comes to the pronunciation, one of the biggest differences is where you put the stress in the word. In Spanish, words ending in a vowel or an "n" or "s" have the stress on the second to last syllable, and the last syllable when the word ends in a different consonant to the ones mentioned here.

In Catalan, the number of syllables in the word is more important for ascertaining where the stress lies, rather than whether the word ends in a vowel or consonant.

## **Cultural Differences**

Catalonia is very proud of its culture, and the language is the cornerstone of that.

It has its own celebrations and festivals, as well as its own gastronomy with plates such as:

- Butifarra (a cinnamon pork sausage)
- Fideuas (noodles)
- Calçots (spring onions)
- Pa amb tomaquet (toasted bread with tomato, olive oil and salt)

What's more, the pride that Catalans take in their language and culture has been reinvigorated ever since Franco's crackdown on regional languages and cultures.

The love for the Catalan language is very strong in Catalonia. But bilingualism still remains the norm!

## **Different Spanish Accents**

One thing to note before signing up for a Spanish course, is that there are many [different accents in Spanish](#). Just as you find with English, the accent can differ from city to city, and from country to country. The same is true of Spanish.

Within Spain itself, the main accent is the Castilian Spanish accent, found in most northern and central areas. This differs from the Andalusian accent in the south where people swallow some of their vowels, and omit certain letters from words which changes the Spanish pronunciation.

If you have a conversation with someone from Catalonia, you may find that their accent changes depending on how often they speak Spanish. People who speak it regularly will have a less noticeable accent, whereas the accent of those who don't speak it with such frequency will be more distinguishable.

Generally speaking, the Spanish accent, and the Spanish vocabulary, differs a lot with Latin America. If you want to go abroad to study in Latin America, then you can choose from countries such as:

- Argentina
- Colombia
- Costa Rica
- Ecuador
- Guatemala
- Mexico
- Peru
- Plus many more

Naturally, with so many countries speaking Spanish over such a large area, the accents used in each country have their differences. If you want to communicate with a person, you might need to know where they are from to understand their conjugation of verbs (Argentina uses *vos* instead of *tu*), or the different Spanish words that they use.

In terms of the differences between Spanish from Spain, and Spanish in Latin America, there are three main differences:

- Spain uses *vosotros* for the second person plural, where as Latin America uses *ustedes*
- The vocabulary changes meaning that there can be up to 10 different words for the same thing depending which country you are in
- Spaniards pronounce "c" and "z" as a "th" sound, where as in Latin America these letters are pronounced as an "s".

The Spanish speaking world covers a lot of territory (Image Source: CC0 1.0,

stokpic, Pixabay)

## Comparison of Spanish and Portuguese

People who sign up to Spanish courses to learn Spanish often end up asking themselves about the [similarities and differences between Spanish and Portuguese](#). This is a fair question to ask, considering they are found in the same area, and Portuguese developed much in the same way that Spanish did. In fact, Portuguese was a romance language like any other on the Iberian Peninsula at the time of the reconquista, but benefited from being the language of the Count of Portugal which was one of the two main states that appeared after the Kingdom of Asturias. Its dominance of the west coast of the Iberian Peninsula meant that Portuguese became established in these areas, such as it is today.

Spanish and Portuguese do have some similarities. Linguistically, some words look very similar:

- Año (Spanish) / Ano (Portuguese) – *Year*
- País (Spanish) / País (Portuguese) – *Country*
- Poco (Spanish) / Pouco (Portuguese) – *Not much*

In terms of grammar, they both have two verbs for the verb "to be" (estar/ser) which are used in very similar ways, although the verb conjugation isn't the same.

Regarding the differences, the pronunciation is different in both languages, partly due to Portuguese having more vowel sounds than Spanish. This means that there are more ways to pronounce words in Portuguese than in Spanish.

You will also find some false friends. These are words that mean one thing in Spanish, but something completely different in Portuguese. For example *aceite* means "oil" in Spanish, but "admitted" in Portuguese.

When it comes to the merits of learning each one, this will depend on your own goals and desires. Both are relatively easier to learn for English speakers in comparison with other languages. This means to reach and intermediate level, or even near fluency, you won't need to get your head around heaps and heaps of unbelievably hard Portuguese or Spanish grammar.

In fact, reaching a conversational level could be done in a matter of months, or perhaps even quicker if you sign up for language courses and you are diligent with your learning. How similar are Portuguese and Spanish? Photo credit: D-Stanley on Visualhunt / CC BY

## Learn Spanish Before You Travel

The best piece of advice we can give you regarding a trip to a Spanish speaking country, is [learn beginners Spanish before you go](#). You don't need to be fluent, but learning some key phrases will make your life a lot easier, and allow you to make the most of your trip.

As a beginner, reaching a conversational Spanish level will develop your listening skills sufficiently to get by in Spain, Colombia, Cuba, or Uruguay.

There are also plenty of ways to learn:

- Learn Spanish online
- Hire a Spanish teacher
- Go to a Spanish language school to take Spanish classes

With most of the options available, not only will you be able to study Spanish, you will learn about Spanish culture as well.

And whilst you are looking for your nearest Spanish class or the best online Spanish option, here are some key words and phrases to get you going:

- “¡Buenos días!” – *Hello* (in the morning)
  - “¡Buenas tardes!” – *Hello* (in the afternoon)
  - “¡Buenas noches!” – *Hello* (in the evening)
  - “Adiós” – *Goodbye*
  - “Hasta luego” – *See you later*
  - "Me llamo..." - *My name is...*
  - "Tengo 25 años" - *I am 25 years old*
  - "Soy inglés" - *I am English*
  - “Lo siento, pero tengo que irme” – *I’m sorry, I have to go*
- You won't always find English speakers, so learn some Spanish before you travel

## Spanish Language and its Culture Connection

By learning some Spanish before you travel, you will also be able to understand more about the [connection between the Spanish language and culture](#).

The Spanish language is global in scope, not just in terms of its geographical distribution, but also its influence. There is a reasonable amount of crossover between Spanish and English; words of English origin in the Spanish language, and words of Spanish origin in the English language.

But Spanish really comes into its own as a vehicle to make Spanish culture global.

It is the language that Miguel de Cervantes used to write the hugely influential

novel, *Don Quixote*. It is also the language that Oscar winning director Pedro Almodóvar uses in his hugely popular films.

When it comes to food, it lends itself to the name of some of the world's favourite dishes; tapas, paella, tortilla española, and gazpacho but to name a few.

As a new learner, you will come into contact with all these things. You will also be able to understand them better as your language skills and proficiency increase.

But importantly, learning Spanish will help you understand the untranslatable words in Spanish. These are words that are usual cultural in scope, and therefore an English translation isn't required as we don't need to express what it is.

For example, *vergüenza ajena* is the act of feeling embarrassed on somebody's behalf, even if they feel no embarrassment themselves, and *aturdir* describes the feeling of being so overwhelmed by something that you are unable to think clearly. The Spanish language and the culture of Spain are linked in more ways that you can probably think of

### **Interesting Quotes in Spanish**

Another aspect where we can see the connection between the Spanish language and culture in general, is by studying a number of different quotes by influential Spanish speaking personalities. Obviously these don't always pertain to Spanish culture, but they are relevant to studying other cultures.

People such as Che Guevara, Pablo Picasso, Pablo Neruda, Frida Kahlo, and Isabel Allende have all given some [interesting quotes in Spanish](#).

Their quotes don't just make us think about culture, and the circumstances that made them say them, but they also give us another perspective on how to view the world and certain situations that arise within it.

Such quotes include:

- *La vida no es la que uno vivió, sino la que uno recuerda, y cómo la recuerda para contarla* (Life isn't what one has lived, but what one remembers, and how one remembers it in order to retell it) by Colombian Nobel Laureate, Gabriel Garcia Marquez
- *Tengo un día. Si lo sé aprovechar, tengo un tesoro* (I have one day. If I know how to make the most of it, I will have struck gold) by Chilean poet, and Nobel Prize winner, Gabriela Mistral
- *Todo lo que puede ser imaginado es real* (Everything that can be

imagined is real) by world famous Spanish painter, Pablo Picasso  
These, and many more, can give us a fresh view and help us to think about things in a different way.



## CHAPTER 2: TIPS FOR PRONUNCIATION

---

### Introduction to Spanish Pronunciation

Like all Romance languages, Spanish uses the Latin alphabet, so it'll be a lot easier to learn if your native language uses this alphabet. This is especially true if it's another Romance language, such as Portuguese or Italian. As for pronunciation, this too is easier for those who already speak a similar language. But luckily, [Spanish alphabet](#) pronunciation isn't that hard to learn for *anyone*.

Spanish has noticeably fewer sounds than English, both for consonants and vowels. But what's more important is that ninety-nine percent of the time you pronounce just what's written. This is thanks to the simplicity of its *phonology*, which is the distribution of sounds in a language.

Most Spanish sounds are similar to English sounds. It can be confusing, however, that a few of these sounds are found in different letters than they are in English. For example, the *th* sound in “**T**hursday” can be found in Iberian Spanish; but you'll actually find it in the letter *z* and sometimes *c*. For example, in the words *zapato* (“shoe”) and *cera* (“wax”). Again, we realize this might be confusing, but we'll see more on this later.

### Top Five Mistakes to Avoid

Spanish alphabet pronunciation does have its difficult spots. Let's take a look at some common Spanish language pronunciation errors to avoid!

1- Do not pronounce the letter *h* when it's by itself.

For example, the word *hola*, [which we're sure you all know](#), is pronounced as if it was spelled *ola* (which is actually another word that means “wave”). This is quite a common mistake, so be careful!

2- Don't mistake *ñ* for *n*.

We know they look similar, but they're definitely not the same. The letter *n* is the normal one we all know. The sound for *ñ* is a sound you might have heard before, but it's not that common. The Spanish *ñ* is equivalent to *gn* in Italian, as in “lasagna,” or the *nh* in Portuguese, among others.

Here's an example that we're sure will make you remember that they're

different: *año* means “year,” but *ano* means “anus.” That’s definitely a mistake you don’t want to make.

The *ñ* sounds like *ni* in “**onion**.” While that isn’t completely precise, it’s a good start if you’re not sure how to pronounce it.

3- The letters *v* and *b* have the same pronunciation, but it changes depending on their position in a word.

When it comes to pronunciation, the letters *v* and *b* are essentially the same letter in Spanish and they always sound more like a *b*. However, their pronunciation does vary between two different sounds. Like we just mentioned, they’re pretty much the same letter, so this pronunciation doesn’t depend on whether it’s a *b* or a *v*; it depends on its position within the word.

Basically, at the beginning of a word, both the *v* and the *b* will sound like a hard *b*, nearly the same as the English sound for *b*. If this sound is in the middle of a word, especially in-between vowels, it’s a much softer *b*. To try this sound, you need to do the *b* sound, but without letting your lips touch very much.

4- Never pronounce the letters *j* and *g* as in the *j* in “juice.”

The English sound for the letter *j* doesn’t exist in Spanish, so anytime you want to use it—don’t. The sound we have in Spanish doesn’t exist in English either, and it would be something like the English sound for *h*, but harder... sort of as if you wanted to spit, but shorter. Yes, we realize that’s probably not the nicest way of describing it, but it’s definitely the easiest way to help you understand it.

In a little bit, we’ll show you exactly when you should use this sound when you find the letter *g*, and when you shouldn’t.

5- Never pronounce the letter *z* like you would in English.

Just like we mentioned before, the sound for *z* isn’t the one you would use in English; it’s the sound you find in words like “**thin**.”

Remember that we’re learning Standard Iberian Spanish! In Latin America and some parts of southern Spain, the letter *z* is actually pronounced like an *s*.

6- Don’t pronounce the letter *u* in *que*, *qui*, *gue*, or *gui*.

Before, we said that in Spanish, ninety-nine percent of the time you pronounce what’s written. Well, here’s the exception. Whenever you see any of these four combinations inside a word (*que*, *qui*, *gue*, *gui*), you never pronounce the *u*.

To better understand how this works, take the word “guitar” in English. It has

a *u*, but do you pronounce it? No; you jump straight from the *g* to the *i*. Well, this is what happens in Spanish every time you see one of these combinations. It happens in common words such as *qué*, which means “what” or *queso*, which means “cheese.”

However, there’s also an exception to the exception. Not as commonly, sometimes you’ll see *qüe*, *qüi*, *güe*, or *güi*. The two little dots above the *u* aren’t as important in Spanish as they are in German, and can only be found on top of a *u*. Well, whenever you find this, you *do* have to pronounce the *u*. An example is the word *pingüino*, which is very similar to its translation in English and means “penguin.”

## Vowel Sounds in Spanish

When it comes to vowels, Spanish is much simpler than English. While English has what feels like a million different vowel sounds, some long and some short, in Spanish we only have five different vowels, which are the written ones that you all know (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*), and they’re always short.

The pronunciation of the vowels is a bit different though.

- The “a” sounds like animal,
- “e” like elefante,
- the “i” like Ibiza,
- the “o” is a shorter and crisper version of the English “o”,
- and “u” sounds more like “oo”.

When you see a written vowel in English, it will often be pronounced in two sounds. For example, the letter *u* in the word “unit” requires a diphthong, or two different sounds, before the *n*. This will never happen in Spanish.

We think Spanish vowels are much easier to understand if you can hear them, and that’s why we have this amazing Spanish Vowels & Diphthongs video above with each of these sounds for you to listen to and practice with us.

## Consonant Sounds in Spanish

The language has a large number of consonants as well, and for the most part the consonants are going to sound just like their English counterparts sound. Some of the consonants in Spanish pronunciation are quite different though, and it is important to recognize them.

- The letter “h” alone has no sound. It is a silent letter.
- Pairing a “c” in front of the “h” gives a ch sound as in chorizo or Chihuahua. Not that the other “h”s in Chihuahua are silent.
- The “j” can change based on the speaker. Those who are speaking

traditional Spanish will have the “j” make an “h” sound.

- The letter ñ actually has a “ny sound to it. Thus, the word Español is going to have the ny sound in the third syllable.
- The letter “v” is English, and it sounds just like “b”.

These are just some of the many differences that you are going to encounter with the consonants. Learning proper Spanish pronunciation might seem like it will take a long time because of all of the differences, but you will find that it really isn't too hard once you break things down. Understanding the differences in the Spanish language, and how it can even differ from speakers in Mexico to speakers in Spain is important in grasping the language and being able to speak it fluently.

## 1- Familiar Sounds

For this list of Spanish pronunciation rules for consonants, let's start with the sounds you already know in English. Some of these are found in the same letters you have in English, but some aren't. To help you better understand these sounds, we've included some Spanish pronunciation to English examples.

- b

Like we mentioned before, the letters *b* and *v* have the same sound in Spanish, even though it can change according to its position within a word. Examples: *llave* (“key”); *abuela* (“grandmother”).

- ch

We mentioned that we don't pronounce the *h* when it's by itself. In this case, you'll find the *ch* sound in the exact same environment as in English, and it's pronounced the same way. Example: *coche* (“car”).

- d

The Spanish sound for *d* is quite similar to the English one, but it's not exactly the same. What happens with the *d* sound in Spanish is the same thing that happens to *b*. When this sound is in the middle of a word, it's pronounced much lighter than it would be at the beginning of the word. Here, it's not about the lips; it's about not letting your teeth touch your tongue very much so that it sounds lighter. Example: *dedo* (“finger”).

- f

The *f* sound is the same in English and in Spanish. Example: *café* ("coffee").

- g

We already mentioned that the *j/g* sound that we find in words like "cage" doesn't exist in Spanish, so here we're talking about the other *g* sound, such as in "gray." The letter *g* is pronounced this way when it's in front of another consonant or the vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*. Examples: *grande* ("big"); *agujero* ("hole").

- k

The letter *k* is rather uncommon in Spanish, and the few times we find it, it's in foreign words such as *karate*, *kiwi*, *karaoke*, etc. However, we find this sound in more letters, such as *q*, which is much more common in Spanish than in English. Sometimes it's also found in the letter *c*.

When I say sometimes, it's because of a rule that's actually very similar in English. This rule also applies to a sound earlier in this list. The letter *c* is only pronounced like a *k* when it's in front of the vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*, or in front of another consonant. This rule is the same in English, so it should be easy to follow. Examples: *casa* ("house"); *querer* ("to want").

- l

The sound for *l* is the same in both English and in Spanish. Example: *alma* ("soul").

- m

The sound for *m* in Spanish is the same as in English. Example: *mano* ("hand").

- n

Another easy one. The sound for *n* has the exact same pronunciation as it does in English. Example: *nariz* ("nose").

- p

Again, the *p* sound is the same in English and in Spanish. Example: *desaparecer* ("to disappear").

- s

The *s* sound is exactly the same in Spanish and in English. The only thing

you need to keep in mind is that in standard Iberian Spanish, you'll only use this sound when the word is spelled with the letter *s*, never with a *c*. Example: *serpiente* ("snake").

- *t*

The *t* sound is the final easy sound for us to explain. In Spanish, we always pronounce a hard *t*, as it is in English at the beginning of a word, like in the word "table." Example: *antes* ("before").

- *th*

The last of our familiar sounds is one that we mentioned previously in this article. Like we said, we share this exact sound, but it's found in a much different context. In Spanish, we find this sound any time there's the letter *z*, as well as any time *c* isn't pronounced like a *k*. This means that you have to use the *th* sound every time the letter *c* is followed by the vowels *e* or *i*. Examples: *cena* ("dinner"); *zorro* ("fox").

- *y*

The pronunciation of the *ll* or double *l* (in Spanish, *elle*) might differ slightly in some Spanish regions, but you should never pronounce it like a regular *l*. Even though it's not exactly the same sound in all areas, you can't go wrong if you pronounce both *y* and *ll* like a *y*, as in the word "young." This ensures that everyone understands you. Examples: *llorar* ("to cry"); *ayer* ("yesterday").

## 2- New Sounds

- *j*

We've already mentioned this sound. It's the one that kind of sounds like you want to spit. It's used any time you find the letter *j*, as well as whenever you see the letter *g* in a different environment than the one used for the other *g* sound (every time it's in front of the vowels *e* or *i*). Examples: *justicia* ("justice"); *girasol* ("sunflower").

- *ñ*

We've also explained this sound before, so it doesn't require another explanation. Just keep in mind that it's not a regular *n*! Even though it can be at the beginning of a word, the most common place you'll find it is in the

middle of a word, always in-between two vowels. Examples: *español* ("Spanish"); *muñeca* ("doll").

- r

Here comes the tough one. There are two different kinds of *r* in Spanish: the hard one (the trilled *r*) and the soft one.

Let's start with the soft *r*. This sound actually exists in American English, but it's not considered an *r*, so it might be confusing. You can find it in words like "water," "bottle," "doodle," and "little." In British English, this is pronounced like a hard *t* or a regular *d* in the case of "doodle," but in American English we get the *r* sound we're looking for. We can find this sound in the middle of a word when there's a single *r* in-between two vowels, between a vowel and a consonant, or at the end of a word.

Examples: *araña* ("spider"); *actriz* ("actress"); *sombrero* ("hat"); *andar* ("to walk").

We know that to many Spanish learners, the trilled *r* can be a nightmare, both pronouncing it and knowing whether it should be a hard or soft *r*. An *r* is trilled when you find it at the beginning of a word, and whenever the word is spelled with a double *r* (which you can only find in-between vowels).

Examples: *ratón* ("mouse"); *aburrido* ("bored"); *arreglar* ("to fix"); *romper* ("to break"). Notice that in the last two examples, there's an *r* at the end. But as we mentioned before, whenever you find an *r* at the end of a word, it's pronounced as a soft *r*.

Though if you want to learn Spanish pronunciation from a native speaker, you can upgrade your account to take advantage of our [MyTeacher program!](#) Further, it may help to look for Spanish pronunciation exercises online to help you trill your *r*'s more like a native.

## How to Improve Spanish Pronunciation

Wondering how to practice Spanish pronunciation and how to improve Spanish pronunciation overall?

In order to improve your pronunciation in any language, there's no doubt that the best thing you can do when learning is to listen to native speakers and practice as much as you can. You can learn the theory, but only when you pay attention to the way people speak can you understand each of these sounds completely.

An important part of good Spanish pronunciation isn't related to sounds, but

rather to when syllables should (or shouldn't) be stressed. If you know the accentuation rules in Spanish, it will be easy to know exactly how to stress it when you see it written. If you don't know them, they might seem complicated at first. But they're actually quite simple once you know them.

In Spanish, we divide words according to their stressed syllable. If a word has an accent, we know we have to stress the syllable where the accent is. If it doesn't have one, we can learn to find out where the stress is anyway. Let's take a quick look at these rules and Spanish pronunciation words.

### 1- *Palabras agudas*

In *palabras agudas*, the stressed syllable is the last one. These words require an accent when the word ends in *n*, in *s*, or in a vowel.

#### Examples:

- *Camión* → ca - **mión** ("truck")
- *Cantar* → can - **tar** ("to sing")
- *País* → pa - **ís** ("country")
- *Bebé* → be - **bé** ("baby")

### 2- *Palabras llanas*

In *palabras llanas*, the stressed syllable is the second to last. These words have the opposite rule as *palabras agudas*. This means that they're accentuated when they end in any consonant that isn't *n* or *s*.

#### Examples:

- *Dólar* → **dó** - lar ("dollar")
- *Fútbol* → **fút** - bol ("football")
- *Nube* → **nu** - be ("cloud")
- *Resumen* → re - **su** - men ("summary")

### 3- *Palabras esdrújulas*

In *palabras esdrújulas*, the stressed syllable is the third to last. All *esdrújulas* words need to be accentuated. There's only one exception to this rule, and that is when the word is an adverb that's formed by an adjective and followed by *-mente*. In this case, the word keeps the accent that it would (or wouldn't) have in the original word, the adjective.

#### Examples:

- *Química* → **quí** - mi - ca ("chemistry")
- *Sábado* → **sá** - ba - do ("Saturday")



- *Romántico* → ro - **mán** - ti - co (“romantic”)
- *Matemáticas* → ma - te - **má** - ti - cas (“Math”)
- *Felizmente* → fe - **liz** - men - te (“happily”)

#### 4- *Palabras sobresdrújulas*

Palabras sobresdrújulas are the least common, and in these words, the stressed syllable is even before the third to last syllable. Many of these words are, in fact, part of the previously mentioned category of adverbs that end in -mente. Just like before, these words only have an accent if the word without -mente would have it as well. Other sobresdrújulas include verbs that have pronouns attached to them. In this case, they always require an accent.

#### Examples:

- *Rápidamente* → **rá** - pi - da - men - te (“quickly”)
- *Véndemelo* → **vén** - de - me - lo (“sell it to me”)
- *Firmándosele* → fir - **mán** - do - se - la (“signing it to him/her”)

In our [Ultimate Spanish Pronunciation Guide of Stress & Accentuation](#) lesson, you can learn much more about these rules, as well as their exceptions.

There are also some tips for improving your pronunciation that are always helpful. Take a look at our [Best Ways to Improve Pronunciation](#) page.

#### Hard Words to Pronounce

There are many words that might seem hard at first, but because Spanish phonology is relatively simple, as soon as you read them out loud a few times, you should be fine. Only words with sounds you’ve never used before can be a proper challenge.

For most, the hardest sound to pronounce is the trilled *r*, so obviously words that include this sound will be quite difficult. For example, the word *perrera*, which means “dog pound,” includes both Spanish *r*’s.

Even though the *th* sound in *z* and *c* is quite common in English, it might become hard to say when you find it twice in a word, such as in *zurcir*, which means “to mend” or “to sew.”

Other hard sounds in Spanish include the *j* that we’ve mentioned a couple of times in this article. So the first time you try to pronounce it, it might be hard to say words like *jamón* (“ham”), but you can do this!

### **3 Reasons to Learn Spanish through PDF Lessons**

Let's now take a closer look at how studying Spanish lessons in PDF format can help you reach your dream in up to half the time of normal video or audio lessons!

#### **① *Saves Minutes on Your Data Plan***

Learning Spanish through PDF lessons can dramatically reduce your data use. Once a lesson or tool is downloaded, you can then access it offline via your computer or smartphone any time or place regardless of Internet access. And once you've downloaded the Spanish lessons in PDF format, you can actually access them faster than logging in and trying to do so via a live site. So not only will learning Spanish using PDF lessons save minutes on your data plan—it will save you some significant time as well as the lessons add up!

#### **② *Print and Take All Spanish Lessons and PDF Tools With You Anywhere***

Sometimes, a tiny smartphone screen just isn't adequate, especially when you are trying to learn something new. The great thing about PDF lessons, tools or files is that they can be quickly printed and taken anywhere after you download them. In fact, printing out Spanish lessons in PDF format can actually save you time when compared to going through the material on a smartphone with a small screen—even with the extra printing time!

#### **③ *Great Study Tool to Boost Retention and Mastery***

Studying video or audio lessons online is a great way to learn a language because students can play and rewind sections as many times as needed until the lesson is mastered. But when you review the same Spanish lessons again in PDF format, an incredible thing happens: your retention dramatically improves! Thanks to Time Spaced Repetition, seeing the information again in written format helps reinforce the information in your mind and improves both retention and recall. The benefits of learning Spanish using PDF lessons quickly add up to significant time savings for you, your data plan, and your dream of learning a new language!

## CHAPTER 3: READING IN SPANISH

---

There are so many reasons why [you should begin the process of reading in Spanish](#).

The most important reason to read in Spanish is that it will greatly strengthen your language-learning skills. Reading will allow you to:

- **Go at your own pace.** You decide what speed you want to read at without ever feeling like you're lagging behind. There's no one to compare to, no competition nor race. Reading is an individual activity where you control how fast or slow you want to go.
- **Broaden your vocabulary horizons.** Just think of all those mountainous undiscovered new words you're not only going to learn, but get to use in future conversations.
- **Learn colloquial phrases and sayings.** No longer will you sound like you're reciting a textbook. Now you'll recognize and be able to implement [slang that will make your conversations flow](#) more naturally.
- **Become familiar with repetitive words and grammar tenses.** We've all experienced those pauses in conversation where we speak in question rather than actual conversation. "*Ayer, fui...fui? Iba?...hmmm?*" All the while we're hoping that the person we're speaking to will put us out of our misery and confirm which tense it is. Reading will help you focus on repetitive grammatical tenses so that over time, you won't have to talk in question—you'll be confident in your grammatical choices.
- **Learn the structure of Spanish sentences.** Spanish words don't always flow within a sentence the way English words do. Reading allows you to naturally notice [the correct arrangement](#) so that in future, you can explain to someone that the cat was on the table, not the table cat on!
- For even more practice reading, [FluentU has you covered](#). FluentU takes real-world videos—like music videos, movie trailers, news and inspiring talks—and turns them into **personalized language learning lessons**.

The annotated subtitles make it easy to follow along as you read, and any words you don't know can go straight into your personal vocabulary list for later studies.

Now that we've looked at what you can gain from reading in Spanish, don't

let the reality of the task prevent you from starting. These eight simple strategies will help you keep calm and continue reading. Following are the strategies to make your Spanish Reading Skills Strong.

## 1. Pick a Topic That Interests You

Simply put, pick a topic or subject matter that you are interested in. If you're enthusiastic about what you're reading, it will motivate you to continue when you reach a challenging section. Without that enjoyable interest, there's no reason for you to break through the mental wall you're confronted with.

Whether you're drawn to sports, [movies](#), cars or politics, your eagerness for the topic will remind you that reading is a leisurely activity when the going gets tough.

## 2. Start Small

In order to succeed, you need to acknowledge your Spanish abilities. If you're a beginner, picking up an 800-page philosophy book is going to take a long time. You won't understand the majority of the language, and the longer it takes, the more reading will seem like a chore.

Instead, start small with some of the following resources:

- **A newspaper or [magazine article](#):** A great advantage to reading articles daily is that it allows you to stay knowledgeable in not just your Spanish, but also with current events. You also have the option of reading on-the-go by [subscribing to newspapers](#) for daily emails or reminders, with a smartphone app. You'll be able to read anytime, anyplace!
- **Blog posts:** Subscribe to various blogs for more variety. You can even mix and merge your interests by including [Spanish learning blogs](#) and [must-read blogs](#) that will have you eagerly awaiting the next post.
- **Children's or young adult books:** Not all children or YA books focus on the alphabet or nursery rhymes. There are many intriguing stories, like Isabel Allende's "[La Ciudad de las Bestias](#)" or Pam Munoz Ryan and Peter Sis's "[El Sonador](#)" that captivate adults and children alike with their inspiring imagery.
- **Poetry:** Aside from its time-efficient length to read, [poetry goes beyond the learning of words](#) to teach us about culture and identity within the Spanish-speaking worlds. "[Reversible Monuments: Contemporary Mexican Poetry](#)" introduces us to the diverse faces of Mexico and its people, while "[Spanish Contemporary Poetry: An Anthology](#)" addresses

not only the history of Spain, but how society has changed and continues to change over the years.

- **Song lyrics:** Short and sweet, song lyrics allow us to engage in advancing our Spanish in a fun and interactive way. By [learning through listening and reading the music](#), we can compare our pronunciations with the actual songs after we've translated the words.
- **Short stories:** If the thought of picking up a story of any size makes you nervous, you can start with a dual-language short story like [“Spanish Stories/Cuentos Españoles \(A dual-language book\)”](#) by Angel Flores. Then, when your confidence grows and you're looking for something more adventurous that you can sink your teeth into [“Hacerse el muerto”](#) by Andres Neuman is an excellent venturesome starting point.

### **3. Read a Story That's Familiar to You**

We all have books that we return to again and again. The pages are dog-eared and the cover is worn, but it is still our go-to book. It's the one we still and will in all likelihood, continue to read repeatedly in future. So why not try reading the Spanish version? If “To Kill a Mockingbird” is your go-to book, then you might enjoy reading [“Matar un Ruisenor”](#)

Your familiarity with the plot, the characters and the flow will decrease any intimidation you might have, not to mention, your enthusiasm for the original will give you that extra motivational boost. By incorporating this strategy, you already know what you're going to get before you turn the first page.

### **4. Read Parallel Texts**

If you have an English version of a book that's sitting on your shelf waiting to be read, get the Spanish version too. Cross-referencing the words or sentences will stop you from having to time-consumingly search for every new word in a dictionary.

You won't have to scramble to translate at every instance, thereby reinforcing your fluency development with the safety-net knowledge that the correct translation is always at hand.

### **5. Word Log After You Reach a Stopping Point**

While it is extremely helpful to note all new words in a word journal, too often we get weighed down in the assumption that we need to log every unknown word as soon as we read it. This doesn't have to be the case; you don't need to pause at every single word. It takes up a lot of your reading

time, and stops you from connecting with the story.

Instead, underline every word you don't understand and make a choice to stop reading when you reach a specific point; be it the end of a paragraph, page or chapter. Then return to the underlined words when you reach your chosen point. This will ease your frustrations at having to constantly stop to make notes.

[MosaLingua's web app](#) can also help you cast aside these usual frustrations by allowing you to instantly get translations for words and phrases in the recommended content in their library. You can also create flashcards quickly and easily as you read, which you can then review later once you've finished reading.

## **6. Make Reading Practical**

Read as often as possible, wherever possible. You have a constant stream of information at your fingertips that can often be overlooked, but if you continuously look for efficient opportunities to read in Spanish, it can make your reading experience so simple, and become subconsciously natural.

Try reading movie reviews or [BuzzFeed](#) in Spanish, or change the settings on your computer or phone to Spanish for a day. You can even incorporate social media sites like [Facebook](#) and [Twitter](#) as vital resources for Spanish reading, or use Google's "[Mind the Word](#)" Chrome add-on, which randomly translates words into Spanish on webpages you browse. These small modifications will encourage you to broaden your reading abilities at a rate that feels comfortable, while advancing your word memory and increased vocabulary use.

## **7. Pause in Your Reading**

Too often, people continue reading page after page without ever taking a break to ask themselves, "Do I understand what I am reading?" It's easy to settle into the repetitive motion of moving your eyes over the lines while your mind starts planning what to eat for lunch, or how to spend your weekend.

Choose a point in your reading, be it a paragraph, page or chapter, where you'll take a moment to evaluate. When you pause, ask yourself if you understand what you've just read. If you find it difficult to summarize or pinpoint where you are in the story, you have the option of returning to the last point of knowledge and recovering what you might have missed.

## **8. Read Aloud**

Many people find it helpful to read aloud in Spanish in order to hear the words, familiarize themselves with them and to practice their spoken Spanish. Taking an interactive role like this can help maintain your engagement in what you're reading, and also make it entertaining.

If you're unsure about pronunciation or wondering whether you're saying the words correctly, read aloud with the use of [the audiobook version](#).

Conquering your nerves of the Spanish book monster to become the bookworm you are destined to be is only a page away. Remember that you are always in control of your reading choices. It's easy to get overwhelmed, but reading should always be a relaxing activity that should be enjoyed. If you're not enjoying what you're reading, find something else to read, or take a break.

There will be many words you won't know, many words that will be daunting and sentence structures that will confuse you, but remember to steadily take your time. There's no rush to the finish line of that last page. Reading allows you to be in control, to fall into the words and to visualize the images. Remember to enjoy it, and the learning will come effortlessly.

## **CHAPTER 4: ACCENT AND ACCENTUATION**

---

It may seem strange to hear this, but even fluent Spanish speakers who learned the language from one country may find it extremely difficult to understand native speakers from other countries. Many people may become frustrated when testing their recently acquired Spanish skills because native speakers from other countries speak very differently from what we are used to hearing in our Spanish lessons – and sometimes they even use different words.

If this sounds familiar, rest assured that this is normal. You have not been wasting your time or money by learning Spanish. Just like English, Spanish has several variations in accents, pronunciations, and commonly used words that can make the same language sound very different.

### **Differentiating Between Spanish Accents**

Just like English? Yes. For instance, English can take on many different accents when spoken by Americans, Australians, the British and the Irish – just to name a few. Although the pronunciation varies, the meaning and the intention of what is spoken is the same. The trick here is to have an idea of how each of these cultures tends to pronounce and articulate certain words. For instance, if you have heard a British accent before with enough frequency, odds are you will be able to understand one simply by knowing that the speaker is British. A similar scenario exists in the Spanish language, which contains quite a few ways to pronounce and articulate words.

In the following paragraphs, I will briefly explain some of these accents, quoting others for the accents that I don't know as well. Click the links to hear each accent for yourself! :

#### **[Castilian](#)**

“Spanish of Madrid and of northern Spain, called Castilian, developed characteristics that never reached the New World. These include the pronunciation of ‘ci’ and ‘ce’ as ‘th.’ In Madrid, ‘gracias’ (thank you) becomes ‘gratheas’ (as opposed to ‘gras-see-as’ in Latin America). Another difference is the use of the word ‘vosotros’ (you all, or you guys) as the informal form of ‘ustedes’ in Spain. Castilian sounds to Latin Americans



much like British English sounds to U.S. residents.”

### **Colombian**

This is a very diverse country with many different accents, but in general, especially in the Colombian highlands in cities such as Bogotá, their accent is relatively neutral and clear, although there is a slightly marked “s” that sounds like “shh”. This is very different from the “s” pronunciation in Spain or Argentina, where it has a much softer, almost imperceptible sound. Also, letters like “b,” “d,” and “g” are occlusive, meaning that their sounds are approximated to similar letters, because their sound is pronounced more softly.

### **Peruvian**

The Peruvian accent doesn’t have a strong intonation, but its tone does exhibit an influence from indigenous languages like Quechua and Aymara.

### **Mexican**

Think Speedy Gonzalez, but not as exaggerated. There is marked tone in the last word of every phrase, and they also reduce the accentuation of some vowels. For example, a phrase like “Que te pasa” sounds more like “Que t pasaaaa”. Still, Mexican Spanish is pretty understandable and clear, and probably the easiest regional variety to identify.

### **Chilean**

In my opinion, Chileans speak quickly, mumble, and chew the last syllables of certain words. There is a certain similarity with the Peruvian accent, though the latter is much slower and clearer.

### **Argentinian**

“Generally in the Spanish world ‘tú’ is the singular way of saying ‘you.’ In Buenos Aires, however, ‘vos’ is used instead. It is accompanied by a modified old Spanish verb form. It is as if part of the English-speaking world still used ‘thee’ and ‘thou’ in everyday speech. For instance, they pronounce the ‘ll’ as an English ‘zh,’ while most other Spanish speakers pronounce ‘ll’ as an English ‘y.’”

### **Caribbean**

“Spanish is spoken in the Caribbean, coastal areas of Latin America, and in

some cases in southern Spain. In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, the accent in Seville, Cádiz, and other cities in Andalusia, in Southern Spain, began to change. Speakers began to drop the final 's' on words. The settlers and traders of southern Spain took this dialect with them to the Caribbean and other coastal areas. Today Caribbean or 'Lowland' Spanish is characterized by its relative informality, its rapid pace, and the dropping of 's' sounds, allowing people to talk more quickly."

## CHAPTER 5: ACCENTUATION RULES

---

### 1. Word Ends in a Vowel

(a) Normal stress falls on the 2nd-to-last syllable (no written accent):

pa-ta-ta, ha-bla

(b) Disregard **n** or **s** at the end of a word:

pa-ta-tas, ha-blan

(c) Written accent shows stress in an abnormal position:

es-pec-tá-cu-lo, ha-bló, ha-bla-rás

### 2. Word Ends in a Consonant

(a) Normal stress falls on the last syllable (no written accent):

pa-pel, ha-blar

(b) **n** & **s** at the end of a word do not count as consonants:

pa-pe-les ha-bla-ron

(c) Written accent shows stress in an abnormal position:

ár-bol al-cá-zar

### 3. Vowel Combinations

(a) **a e o** — “strong” vowels, so they remain in separate syllables:

pa-se-o, pa-se-ar, pa-se-ó

(b) **i u** — “weak”, so they combine with another vowel to form a diphthong:

pa-tio, fa-tuo, pa-se-a-bais, pa-sión

(c) Written accent on i or u shows that it is stressed, not forming a diphthong (therefore “strong”, remaining separate):

po-e-sí-a, a-cen-tú-a, co-me-rí-ais

(d) Disregard **h** between vowels:

prohi-bi-do pro-hí-be

### 4. Distinguishing between Stressed and Unstressed Forms of a Word

#### Adjective and Pronoun

ADJECTIVE (unstressed)	PRONOUN (stressed)
------------------------	--------------------

este chico	éste
mi casa	para mí
tu casa	tú bailas

### Relative pronoun, conjunction, interrogative adjective/pronoun

Conjunction (unstressed) ('that')	Dice que han cantado una copla
Relative pronoun (unstressed) ('that/which')	No conozco la copla que han cantado
Interrogative adjective (stressed) ('which/what')	¿Qué copla han cantado? Dime qué copla han cantado
Interrogative pronoun (stressed) (= 'what/who')	¿Qué han cantado? Dime cuál han cantado Tú sabes qué han cantado No importa quién haya cantado
Conjunction (unstressed) ('where/like')	Se sentó donde había un poco de sombra Cantaron como pájaros
Interrogative adverb (stressed) ('where/how')	No recuerdo dónde se sentó No me preguntes cómo cantaron

### Exclamations

¡Qué tío tan pesado!

¡Cómo hablas!

¡Cuánta riqueza!

## Other Pairs

	NO ACCENT		ACCENT
si	conjunction ('if')	sí	adverb ('yes') or reflexive pronoun ('him/her/itself')
el	article ('the')	él	subject pronoun ('he/it')
mas	conjunction ('but') (= pero)	más	adverb or adjective ('more')
se	object pronoun ('to him/her/it') or reflexive pronoun ('him/her/itself')	sé	verb, present indicative ('I know') or imperative ('be')
de	preposition ('of, from')	dé	verb, present subjunctive ('give')
te	object pronoun ('you')	té	noun ('tea')
solo	adjective ('alone') (= no acompañado)	sólo	adverb ('only') (= solamente)
aun	adverb ('even') (= hasta, incluso)	aún	adverb ('still') (= todavía)

## CHAPTER 6: TIPS FOR LEARNING NEW LANGUAGE

---

Here are some language learning tips I've gathered over the past few years:

**1. Conversation, Conversation, Conversation.** If there's a "secret" or "hack" to learning a new language, it's this: hours and hours of [awkward and strenuous conversation](#) with people better than you in that language. An hour of conversation (with corrections and a dictionary for reference) is as good as five hours in a classroom and 10 hours with a language course by yourself.

There are a few reasons for this. The first is [motivation](#). I don't care how cool your study guide is, you're going to be far more invested and motivated to communicate with a live person in front of you than a book or audio program on your computer.

The second reason is that language is something that needs to be processed, not memorized. I'm no expert on language learning, but in my experience staring and memorizing a word in a book or with flashcards 100 times does not stick the same way that being forced to use a word in conversation a mere two or three times does.

I believe the reason is that our minds place more priority on memories which involve actual human and social experiences, memories which have emotions tied to them. So, for instance, if I look up the verb for "to complain" and use it in a sentence with a new friend, chances are I'm always going to associate that word with that specific interaction and conversation I was having with her. Whereas I can blow by that same word 20 times with flashcards, and even though I may get it right, I haven't actually practiced implementing it. It means nothing to me, so it is less likely to stick with me.

**2. Intensity of study trumps length of study.** What I mean by this is that studying a language four hours a day for two weeks will be more beneficial for you than studying one hour a day for two months. This is one reason why so many people take language classes in school and never remember anything. It's because they only study 3-4 hours per week and often the classes are separated by multiple days.

Language requires a lot of repetition, a lot of reference experiences, and a consistent commitment and investment. It's better to allot a particular period of your life, even if it's only 1-2 weeks, and really go at it 100%, than to half-

ass it over the course of months or even years.

**3. Classes suck and are an inefficient use of time and money.** All things considered, you get a really poor return for your time and effort in group classes. There are two problems. The first is that the class moves at the pace of its slowest student. The second is that language learning is a fairly personal process — everyone naturally learns some words or topics easier than others, therefore a class is not going to be able to address each student's personal needs as well or in a timely fashion.

For instance, when I took Russian classes I found verb conjugations to be simple because I had already learned Spanish. But an English classmate struggled quite a bit with them. As a result, I spent a lot of my class time waiting around for him to catch up. I also had a German classmate who had already been exposed to cases, whereas I had no clue what they were. I'm sure he ended up waiting around for me to figure it out as well. The larger the classroom, the less efficient it's going to be. Anyone who had to take a foreign language in school and retained absolutely none of it can tell you this.

**4. Start with the 100 most common words.** Not all vocabulary is made the same. Some gives you a better return on investment than others. For instance, when I lived in Buenos Aires, I met a guy who had been studying with Rosetta Stone for months (not recommended). I had been working on and off with a tutor for a few weeks, but I was surprised by how he could not follow even the most basic of conversations despite months of study and living there.

It turns out, much of the vocabulary he had been studying was for kitchen utensils, family members, clothing and rooms in a house. But if he wanted to ask someone which part of town they lived in, he had no idea what to say.

Start with the 100 most common words and then make sentences with them over and over again. Learn just enough grammar to be able to do this and do it until you feel pretty comfortable with all of them.

**5. Carry a pocket dictionary.** This made a much bigger difference than I expected. I carry an English-Spanish dictionary app on my phone and I used it all the time when I live in Spanish-speaking countries. My first two weeks in Brazil, I was lazy and kept forgetting to download an English-Portuguese application. I struggled in my conversations A LOT during those two weeks, despite knowing basic Portuguese.

Once I downloaded the dictionary, there was an immediate difference. Having it on your phone is great, because it takes two seconds to look

something up in the middle of conversation. And because you're using it in conversation, you're that much more likely to recall it later. Even something that simple affected my conversations and ability to interact with locals a great deal.

**6. Keep practicing in your head.** The other use for your dictionary is that you can practice while going about your day and not talking to anyone. Challenge yourself to think in the new language. We all have monologues running in our head, and typically they run in our native tongue. You can continue to practice and construct sentences and fake conversations in your head in a new language. In fact, this sort of visualization leads to much easier conversations when you actually have them. For instance, you can envision and practice a conversation about a topic you're likely to have before you actually have it. You can begin to think about how you would describe your job and explain why you're in the foreign country in the new language. Inevitably, those questions will come up and you'll be ready to answer them.

**7. You're going to say a lot of stupid things. Accept it.** When I was first learning Spanish, I once told a group of people that Americans put a lot of condoms in their food. Later, I told a girl that basketball makes me horny. Um, yeah... It's going to happen. Trust me.

**8. Figure out pronunciation patterns.** All Latin-based languages will have similar pronunciation patterns based on Latin words. For instance, any word that ends in "-tion" in English will almost always end in "-ción" in Spanish and "-ção" in Portuguese. English-speakers are notorious for simply adding "-o" "-e" or "-a" to the end of English words to say Spanish words they don't know. But stereotypes aside, it's surprising how often it's correct. "Destiny" is "destino," "motive" is "motivo," "part" is "parte" and so on. In Russian, case endings always rhyme with one another, so if you are talking about a feminine noun (such as "Zhen-shee-na"), then you know that the adjectives and adverbs will usually rhyme with its ending ("krasee-vaya" as opposed to "krasee-vee").

(For a language-learning method that focuses on pronunciation, check out [The Mimic Method](#)).

**9. Use audio and online courses for the first 100 words and basic grammar.** After that they should only be used for reference and nothing more. There are a lot of study materials out there (I recommend [Benny Lewis' Language Hacking](#) courses, but there are tons). These courses are great for getting you from absolutely no ability in a language to being able to



Speak basic sentences and phrases within a few days time. They're also good for teaching the most fundamental vocabulary (words such as: the, I, you, eat, want, thanks, etc.).

But remember, the greatest return on investment in language learning is forcing yourself to speak and communicate with others, and when you're sitting in your bedroom with a book or a software program, you're not being forced to formulate meaning and significance in the new language on the spot. Instead, you're encouraged to parrot and copy concepts and patterns you've observed elsewhere in the materials. As mentioned before, I feel that these are two different types of learning and one is far more useful than the other.

**10. After the first 100 words, focus on becoming conversational.** Studies have shown that the most common 100 words in any language account for 50% of all spoken communication. The most common 1,000 words account for 80% of all spoken communication. The most common 3,000 words account for 99% of communication. In other words, there are some serious diminishing returns from learning more vocabulary. I probably only know 500-1,000 words in Spanish and in most conversations I never have to stop and look a word up in my phone.

The basic grammar should get you speaking fundamental sentences within a matter of days.

*"Where is the restaurant?"*

*"I want to meet your friend."*

*"How old is your sister?"*

*"Did you like the movie?"*

The first few hundred words will get you pretty far. Use them to get as comfortable as possible with grammar, idioms, slang and constructing thoughts, jokes and ideas in the new language on the fly. Once you're able to joke consistently in the new language, that's a pretty good sign that it's time to expand your vocabulary out.

A lot of people attempt to expand their vocabulary too quickly and too soon. It's a waste of time and effort because they're still not comfortable with basic conversations about where they're from, yet they're studying vocabulary about economics or medicine. It makes no sense.

**11. Aim for the brain melt.** You know how when you do a lot of intellectually-intensive work for hours and hours on end, at some point your brain just feels like a lump of gravy? Shoot for that moment when learning

languages. Until you've reached brain-gravy stage, you probably aren't maximizing your time or effort. In the beginning, you'll hit mind-melt within an hour or two. Later on, it may take an entire night of hanging out with locals before it happens. But when it happens, it's a very good thing.

**12. “How do you say X?” is the most important sentence you can possibly learn. Learn it early and use it often.**

**13. One-on-one tutoring is the best and most efficient use of time.** It's also usually the most expensive use of time, depending on the language and country. But if you have the money, grabbing a solid tutor and sitting with him or her for a few hours every day is the fastest way to learn a new language I've ever found. A mere two hours a day for a few weeks with a tutor in Brazil got me to at least a respectable conversational level — i.e., I could go on a date with a girl who spoke no English and maintain conversation throughout the night without making too much of a fool of myself.

Speaking of which...

**14. Date someone who speaks the target language and not your native language.** Talk about investment and motivation. You'll be fluent in a month. And best of all, if you make them mad or do something wrong, you can claim that it was lost in translation.

**15. If you can't find someone cute who will put up with you, find a language buddy online.** There is a number of websites of foreigners who want to learn English who would be willing to trade practice time in their native language for practice in yours. [Here is an overview](#) of language exchange websites and apps. (The reviews are written by Bilingua, which is itself one of the apps reviewed, so take their bias into account.)

**16. Facebook chat + Google Translate = Winning.**

**17. When you learn a new word, try to use it a few times right away.** When you stop and look up a new word in conversation, make a point to use it in the next two or three sentences you say. Language learning studies show that you need to hit a certain amount of repetitions of saying a word within one minute of learning it, one hour of learning it, one day, etc. Try to use it immediately a few times and then use it again later in the day. Chances are it'll stick.

**18. TV shows, movies, newspapers and magazines are a good**

**supplementation.** But they should not be mistaken or replacements for legitimate practice. When I was getting good at Spanish, I made a point to watch a couple movies each week and read an article on [El País](#) each day. It was helpful for keeping me fresh, but I don't believe it was as helpful as my time spent in conversations.

**19. Most people are helpful, let them help.** If you're [in a foreign country](#) and making a complete ass out of yourself trying to buy something at the grocery store, ask random people for help. Point to something and ask how to say it. Ask them questions. Most people are friendly and willing to help you out. Learning a language is not for shy people.

**20. There will be a lot of ambiguity and miscommunication.** Fact of the matter is that for many, many words, the translations are not direct. "Gustar" may roughly mean "to like" in Spanish, but in usage, it's more nuanced than that. It's used for particular situations and contexts, whereas in English we use "like" as a blanket verb covering anything we enjoy or care about. These subtle differences can add up, particularly in serious or emotional conversations. Intentions can be easily misconstrued. Nuanced conversations over important matters will likely require double the effort to nail down the exact meaning for each person than it would between two native speakers. No matter how good you are in your new language, you're not likely to have a complete grasp over the slight intuitive differences between each word, phrase or idiom that a native speaker does without living in the country for years.

**21. These are the phases you go through.** First, you're able to speak a little and understand nothing. Then you're able to understand far more than you speak. Then you become conversational, but it requires quite a bit of mental effort. After that, you're able to speak and understand without conscious mental effort (i.e., you don't have to translate words into your native tongue in your mind). Once you're able to speak and listen without thinking about it, you'll begin to actually *think* in the foreign language itself without effort. Once this happens, you're really hitting a high level.

And the final level? Believe it or not, being able to follow a conversation between a large group of native speakers is the last piece of the puzzle to fall into place. Or at least it was for me. Once that happens, and you're able to interject, come in and out of the conversation at will, you're pretty set. After that, there's not really anywhere else to go without living in the country for at least a year or two and reaching complete fluency.

**22. Finally, find a way to make it fun.** As with anything, if you're going to stick to it, you have to find a way to make it fun. Find people you enjoy talking to. Go to events where you can practice while doing something fun. Don't just sit in a classroom in front of a book, or you're likely to burn out fairly quickly. Talk about personal topics which you care about. Find out about the person you're talking to. Make it a personal, life experience, or else you're going to be in for a long, unenjoyable process which will likely end up in you forgetting everything you learned.

## CHAPTER 7: ARTICLES

---

In Spanish, all nouns are either masculine or feminine. There several rules which help to identify a given object's gender; for example, nouns that end in a - like "manzana" (apple) - are almost always feminine, while nouns that end in o - like "bolígrafo" (pen) - are almost always masculine. (Learn more: [Spanish nouns](#))

To make things even more interesting, each gender has its own set of articles, those little words - the, a, an, some - that essentially introduce a noun and say a little something about it. While in English you can simply apply the same articles - the, a, an, some - to all nouns, in Spanish there are distinctions between masculine and feminine as well as between singular and plural.

### **Definite Articles / Artículos definidos**

**Definite articles** (the) refer to a specific object (*the* apple or *the* pen). Check out a few examples:

	<b>Article</b> <b>English</b>	-	<b>Article</b> <b>Spanish</b>	-	<b>Noun</b> <b>English</b>	-	<b>Noun</b> <b>Spanish</b>	-
masculine, singular	the		el		the pen		el bolígrafo	
masculine, plural	the		los		the pens		los bolígrafos	
feminine, singular	the		la		the apple		la manzana	
feminine, plural	the		las		the apples		las manzanas	

## Indefinite Articles / Artículos indefinidos

**Indefinite articles** (a, an, some), on the other hand, refer to an unspecified object (*an* apple or *a* pen ).

	<b>Article</b> <b>English</b>	-	<b>Article</b> <b>Spanish</b>	-	<b>Noun</b> <b>English</b>	-	<b>Noun</b> <b>Spanish</b>	-
masculine, singular	a, an		un		a pen		un bolígrafo	
masculine, plural	some		unos		some pens		unos bolígrafos	
feminine, singular	a, an		una		an apple		una manzana	
feminine, plural	some		unas		some apples		unas manzanas	

## CHAPTER 8: NUMBERS

I found it easier to learn the numbers ten at a time rather than trying to memorise the full list of numbers all at once.

The first column is the English word for the number. The second column is the word for the Spanish number, followed by the third column which is the Spanish word in phonetics to help you to pronounce the numbers correctly.

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
zero	cero	thero
one	uno	oo-no
two	dos	dos
three	tres	tres
four	cuatro	kwat-ro
five	cinco	theen-ko
six	seis	seys
seven	siete	syet-ay
eight	ocho	o-cho
nine	nueve	nwe-bay
ten	diez	dyeth

When you feel comfortable with above ten numbers, try the next ten numbers

...

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
eleven	once	on-thay
twelve	doce	doth-ay
thirteen	trece	treth-ay
fourteen	catorce	kat-or-thay
fifteen	quince	keen-thay
sixteen	dieciséis	dyeth-ee-seys

seventeen	diecisiete	dyeth-ee-syet-ay
eighteen	dieciocho	dyeth-ee-o-cho
nineteen	diecinueve	dyeth-ee-nwe-bay
twenty	veinte	beyn-tay

After the number twenty (veinte), you just add one (uno), two (dos) etc. after the number twenty (veinte).

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
twenty-one	vientuno	beyn-tay-oo-no
twenty-two	vientidós	beyn-tay-dos
twenty-three	vientitres	beyn-tay-tres
twenty-four	venticuatro	beyn-tay-kwat-ro
twenty-five	venticinco	beyn-tay-theen-ko
twenty-six	vientiseis	beyn-tay-seys
twenty-seven	vientisiete	beyn-tay-syet-ay
twenty-eight	vientocho	beyn-tay-o-cho
twenty-nine	vientinueve	beyn-tay-nwe-bay

Now that you have the twenties accomplished, you can try the thirties, forties etc.

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Spanish</b>
----------------	----------------	----------------



Number	Number	Phonetic
thirty	treinta	treyn-ta
forty	cuarenta	kwa-ren-ta
fifty	cincuenta	theen-kwen-ta
sixty	sesenta	se-sen-ta
seventy	setenta	se-ten-ta
eighty	ochenta	o-chen-ta
ninety	noventa	no-ben-ta

I found that the numbers after ninety were a little more complicated, but it all made sense to me eventually.

One Hundred in Spanish is ...

English Number	Spanish Number	Spanish Phonetic
one hundred	cien	thyen

Notice that the Spanish do not say the word **one** before the word **hundred** i.e., **uno** cien, as we do in the English language **one hundred**. The Spanish word for one hundred is simply **cien**.

Note also that when you want to say a number such as **One Hundred Seven**, the word for **one hundred** becomes **ciento**.

English Number	Spanish Number	Spanish Phonetic
one hundred seven	ciento setenta	thyen-to-se-ten-ta

Unlike One Hundred (cien), the hundred numbers that follow one hundred are specified i.e., **dos** and pluralized, i.e., **cientos**.

--	--	--

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
two hundred	<b>dos</b> cientos	dos-thyen-tos
three hundred	<b>trescientos</b>	tres-thyen-tos
four hundred	<b>cuatrocientos</b>	kwat-ro-thyen-tos

Five hundred is pronounced slightly different:

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
five hundred	<b>quinientos</b>	keen-yen-tos

The following are quite simple to remember:

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
one thousand	mil	meel
one million	un million	oon –meel-yon

## **Ordinal Numbers**

Knowing the Ordinal Numbers can sometimes come in handy, so I have listed them for you here:

<b>English Number</b>	<b>Spanish Number</b>	<b>Spanish Phonetic</b>
first	primero	pree-me-ro
second	segundo	se-goona-do
third	tercero	ter-the-ro
fourth	cuarto	kwat-to
fifth	quinto	keen-to

sixth	sexto	sex-to
seventh	séptimo	sept-ee-mo
eighth	octavo	ok-ta-bo
ninth	noveno	no-be-no
tenth	décimo	deth-ee-mo

### **Amounts and Size**

Sometimes you may need to express an amount or a size, for instance if you go shopping. The following are the Spanish words used to do so. The (M) represents the masculine form and the (F) represents the feminine form.

English Word	Spanish Word(M)	Spanish Phonetic (M)	Spanish Word (F)	Spanish Phonetic (F)
A little bit	un poquito	oon po-kee-to		
Many	muchos	moo-chos	muchas	moochas
some	algunos	al-goo-nos	algunas	al-goo-nas
More	más	mas		
Less	menos	me-nos		

You may hear the words **mas o menos** quite often when you are in Majorca. This phrase means **more or less**.

English Word	Spanish Word (M)	Spanish Phonetic (M)	Spanish Word (F)	Spanish Phonetic (F)
Small	pequeño	pe-kay-nyo	pequeña	pe-kay-nya
Tiny	pequeñito	pe-kay-nee-to	pequeñita	pe-kay-nee-ta
Medium	medio	me-dyo	media	me-dya
Large	grande	gran-day		

I certainly hope that you have not found learning the Spanish numbers too off-putting. Do not despair, because with a little practice, before long you will find the Spanish numbers just rolling off your tongue.

## CHAPTER 9: BASIC VERBS

---

	Spanish	
1	ser	to be (essential/permanent quality)
2	haber	to have (to do something, auxiliary verb)
3	estar	to be (health, location, state)
4	tener	to have
5	hacer	to do, make
6	poder	to be able, can
7	decir	to say, tell
8	ir	to go
9	ver	to see
10	dar	to give
11	saber	to know (information)
12	querer	to want, love
13	llegar	to arrive, come, reach
14	pasar	to pass, to spend (time), to happen
15	deber	to owe, must, should, ought to
16	poner	to put, place, set
17	parecer	to seem, appear
18	quedar	to stay, remain
19	creer	to believe
20	hablar	to speak
21	llevar	to carry, bring
22	dejar	to leave, abandon, to let, allow
23	seguir	to follow, continue

24	encontrar	to find, encounter
25	llamar	to call, to name
26	venir	to come
27	pensar	to think
28	salir	to leave, go out
29	volver	to return, go back
30	tomar	to take, drink
31	conocer	to know (people, places)
32	vivir	to live
33	sentir	to feel, regret
34	tratar	to treat, handle
35	mirar	to watch, look at
36	contar	to count, relate, tell
37	empezar	to begin, start
38	esperar	to wait for, to hope
39	buscar	to search for, look for
40	existir	to exist
41	entrar	to enter, go in, come in
42	trabajar	to work
43	escribir	to write
44	perder	to lose
45	producir	to produce
46	ocurrir	to occur, happen
47	entender	to understand
48	pedir	to request, ask for
49	recibir	to receive, to welcome, greet
50	recordar	to remember, remind
51	terminar	to finish, end
52	permitir	to permit, allow
53	parecer	to appear, show up
54	conseguir	to get, obtain
55	comenzar	to begin, start, commence
56	servir	to serve

57	sacar	to take out, stick out
58	necesitar	to need, require
59	mantener	to maintain, get
60	resultar	to turn out (to be)
61	leer	to read
62	caer	to fall
63	cambiar	to change
64	presentar	to introduce
65	crear	to create, to make
66	abrir	to open
67	considerar	to consider
68	oír	to hear
69	convertir	to convert, change
70	ganar	to convert, change
71	ganar	to win, gain, earn, get, acquire
72	formar	to form, shape, fashion, make
73	traer	to bring, to get, fetch, to carry
74	partir	to divide, to leave
75	morir	to die
76	aceptar	to accept, approve, to agree to
77	realizar	to achieve, attain, accomplish to achieve, attain, accomplish
78	suponer	to suppose
79	comprender	to understand, comprehend
80	obtener	to get, obtain, to achieve, attain
81	explicar	to explain
82	preguntar	to ask, inquire
83	tocar	to touch, to play (an instrument)
84	reconocer	to recognize
85	estudiar	to study
86	alcanzar	to reach, catch up
87	nacer	to be born

88	dirigir	to direct
89	correr	to run
90	utilizar	to use, utilize
91	pagar	to pay, pay for
92	ayudar	to help
93	gustar	to please, be pleasing
94	jugar	to play (a game or sport)
95	escuchar	to listen, hear
96	cumplir	to fulfil, carry out
97	ofrecer	to offer
98	descubrir	to discover
99	levantar	to raise, to lift
100		
101	intentar	to try, attempt
102	decidir	to decide, settle, resolve
103	repetir	to repeat
104	olvidar	to forget
105	valer	to be worth
106	comer	to eat
107	mostrar	to show
108	ocupar	to occupy
109	mover	to move
110	continuar	to continue
111	suceder	to happen, to succeed, follow
112	fijar	to fix, fasten, secure
113	referir	to refer (to)
114	acercar	to bring near
115	dedicar	to dedicate
116	aprender	to learn
117	comprar	to buy, purchase
118	subir	to go up, rise, move up, climb, raise up



119	evitar	to avoid, to prevent
120	interesar	to interest, be of interest (to)
121	cerrar	to close, shut
122	echar	to throw, cast, fling
123	responder	to respond, answer, reply to
124	sufrir	to suffer, to undergo, experience
125	importar	to import, to be important
126	obtener	to obtain, get
127	observar	to observe
128	indicar	to indicate
129	imaginar	to imagine
130	soler	to be accustomed to
131	detener	to stop, to hold up, delay, to arrest, detain
132	desarrollar	to develop, expand, to unroll, unwind, to unfold
133	señalar	to point out, indicate, to signal
134	elegir	to elect, choose
135	preparar	to prepare, get (something) ready
136	proponer	to propose
137	demostrar	to demonstrate, show
138	significar	to signify, mean
139	reunir	to gather, meet, collect
140	faltar	to lack, be lacking, be missing
141	acompañar	to accompany
142	desear	to desire, want, wish
143	enseñar	to teach, instruct, train, educate

144	construir	to build, construct
145	vender	to sell
146	representar	to represent
147	desaparecer	to disappear
148	mandar	to order (give an order), to send
149	andar	to walk
150	preferir	to prefer
151	asegurar	to assure, secure, insure
152	crecer	to grow (up)
153	surgir	to arise, emerge, spring up, come out
154	matar	to kill, slaughter
155	entregar	to deliver, hand over
156	colocar	to locate, place
157	establecer	to establish
158	guardar	to guard, protect, to keep
159	iniciar	to initiate, begin, start
160	bajar	to lower, go down, descend, download
161	notar	to note, notice, observe
162	meter	to put (in), place, insert
163	actuar	to act, perform, operate
164	pretender	to attempt
165	acordar	to decide, resolve, agree (on)
166	cortar	to cut
167	corresponder	to correspond with
168	romper	to break
169	adquirir	to obtain, acquire, buy
170	lanzar	to throw, hurl, cast, fling
171	aprovechar	to take advantage of

172	apoyar	to support, hold up, to back
173	negar	to deny, refuse
174	avanzar	to advance, move forward
175	resolver	to solve, to resolve, to settle (a debt, matter)
176	costar	to cost
177	exigir	to demand, require
178	aumentar	to increase, add to, rise
179	recoger	to pick up
180	abandonar	to abandon, leave behind, desert, to quit, give up
181	imponer	to impose, enforce
182	obligar	to oblige
183	aplicar	to apply
184	pertenecer	to belong, pertain
185	disponer	to have, arrange
186	expresar	to express, voice, state
187	provocar	to provoke
188	defender	to defend
189	quitar	to remove, take away
190	conservar	to preserve, conserve, to keep, retain
191	depender	to depend
192	marcar	to mark, stamp, to show, indicate
193	compartir	to share, to divide (up)
194	consistir	to consist
195	constituir	to constitute
196	cubrir	to cover
197	funcionar	to function, to run
198	caber	to fit (in something)
199		

200	insistir	to insist
201	sentar	to seat, sit (someone down)
202	merecer	to deserve, merit
203	incluir	to include
204	cruzar	to cross
205	tender	to lay out
206	anunciar	to announce
207	despertar	to awaken (somebody), wake up (somebody)
208	comentar	to comment on
209	publicar	to publish
210	cargar	to load, load up, to charge
211	participar	to participate, to share in, to inform
212	impedir	to prevent
213	salvar	to save, rescue, to except, exclude
214	escapar	to escape
215	tirar	to throw, to shoot, to throw away, to pull
216	contestar	to answer
217	preocupar	to worry
218	prestar	to lend
219	pesar	to weigh, to weigh down
220	exponer	to expose
221	viajar	to travel, journey
222	separar	to separate
223	regresar	to return, go back
224	contemplar	to contemplate
225	recorrer	to travel
226	durar	to last, go on, continue
227	retirar	to remove, retire, withdraw (money)

228	permanecer	to stay, remain
229	asistir	to attend
230	organizar	to organize
231	contener	to contain, hold
232	visitar	to visit
233	informar	to inform, tell, announce
234	enviar	to send
235	cuidar	to take care of, look after
236	intervenir	to intervene
237	extender	to extend
238	comprobar	to verify, to check
239	dormir	to sleep
240	discutir	to argue, discuss
241	enfrentar	to confront, to face
242	conducir	to drive, conduct
243	firmar	to sign
244	respetar	to respect
245	sostener	to support, to hold up
246	advertir	to notice, observe, advise, warn
247	transformar	to transform
248	bastar	to suffice
249	mencionar	to mention
250	plantear	to propose, present

## CHAPTER 10: ADJECTIVES

---

Learning a language is about expressing yourself, and just as you like to explain your thoughts and feelings on a variety of situations, objects, films, places and people with a whole load of different words in your own language, there's no reason why you can't do the same in Spanish.

Adjectives also add color, interest and variety to your Spanish and help you explain yourself and others better.

### Where Does an Adjective Go in a Spanish Sentence?

The order of adjectives is something that many beginners struggle to get their heads around, but just remember that unlike in English, Spanish adjectives usually go after the noun. So instead of saying “he has beautiful blue eyes,” you say the equivalent of “he has eyes blue beautiful”—“*tiene unos ojos azules preciosos.*”

It might sound weird at first, but once you get the idea, noun before adjective will come naturally to you.

Also, don't forget that each adjective can either be [masculine](#), [feminine](#), singular and plural. So, the word *lindo* can actually be *lindo* (masculine single), *linda* (feminine single), *lindos* (masculine plural) or *lindas* (feminine plural) so that it agrees with the noun it's modifying.

That means that if you're talking about a plural, feminine noun, like *palabras* (words), you'd need the plural, feminine adjective.

¡*Qué lindas palabras!* (What beautiful words!)

For the purpose of this post, all adjectives will be written in masculine singular. [Click here for more information on the ins and outs of the order of adjectives in Spanish.](#)

### Spanish Adjectives to Describe the World Around You

1. *lindo* (pretty)

Remember those beautiful blue eyes?

¡*Qué lindos que son!* (They're so pretty!)

2. *feo* (ugly)

I don't think anyone ever talks about ugly eyes, but there's plenty more in life

that can be *feo*, such as the appearance, behavior or performance of someone or something.

### 3. *feliz* (happy)

Just like [Pharrell Williams](#).

Remember there's a difference between *estoy feliz* (I'm temporarily happy) and *soy feliz* (I'm a happy person). Pharrell is arguably both.

For more on the differences between temporary and permanent happiness—from a grammatical point of view, that is, we're not getting existential on you—[see this post on when to use \*ser\* and \*estar\*](#).

### 4. *triste* (sad)

You can't be happy all the time! Here's how to talk about feeling down.

*Todos nos sentimos **tristes** cuando termina la canción de Pharrell.* (We all feel sad when Pharrell's song is over).

### 5. *alto* (tall)

Now we're getting into some physical properties here.

*Algunas personas en el video de Pharrell son **altas**.* (Some people in Pharrell's video are tall.)

### 6. *bajo* (short)

Not everyone's the same, so you need to know how to describe a spectrum of traits.

*Y algunas son **bajas**.* (And some are short.)

### 7. *grande* (big)

Just like Pharrell's smile. Note that normally adjectives ending in *-e* are the same for both for masculine and feminine nouns.

*Tiene una sonrisa muy **grande**.* (He has a very big smile.)

### 8. *pequeño* (small)

We should take *un pequeño recreo* (a small break) from talking about Pharrell.

### 9. *simple* (simple)

This one really is *simple*.

Just take care to get your pronunciation right. Unlike in English, the Spanish word has stress on the beginning of the word. While in English, you pronounce this word sim-*PLE* (or sim-*PULL*, phonetically), in Spanish, the stress is on the first syllable, making it *SIM-ple* (or SEEM-*pley*).

It can also take on the connotation of “bland” or “lacking” in something, particularly when describing food.

### 10. *complicado* (complicated)

It's not *complicado* at all to figure out this word.

11. *divertido* (fun)

But it's *divertido* to work out this one.

Just like the word for "happy"—and many others—whether you use *ser* or *estar* before this adjective can change its meaning. See here:

*Juan es **divertido**.* (Juan is fun.)

The above means that Juan is a fun person in general. Remember that *ser* is used to talk about general situations, properties or things that are always true. Meanwhile, *Juan está divertido hoy* (Juan is fun today) suggests he isn't normally so fun, but today is an exception. The use of *estar* in this version of the statement highlights the temporary nature of Juan being fun.

12. *aburrido* (boring)

If you think adjectives are boring, you're wrong. Stick with it.

*No me digas que es **aburrido**.* (Don't tell me it's boring.)

Once again, note that the use of *ser* or *estar* can modify the meaning of this adjective, albeit in a slightly different way. Something or someone can be boring (*es aburrido*), or can be bored (*está aburrido*).

13. *rico* (rich)

This can be used to talk about rich people, for example:

*Ella es **rica**.* (She is rich.)

You can also say food is *rico*, for example:

*La sopa está **rica**.* (The soup is delicious.)

Note the different use of *ser* and *estar* with these different meanings. You've got one use that's describing a property of a person's being, and another describing a temporary taste being perceived at the moment.

14. *pobre* (poor)

Like in English, you can talk about someone being poor, as in not having any money.

*La chica es muy **pobre**.* (The girl is very poor.)

Or you can use in an exclamation or expression of sympathy for someone:

*¡**Pobre** chica!* (Poor girl!)

This is suggesting she's not having a good time, although she may in fact be *rica* in the context of wealth.

15. *delicioso* (delicious)

An alternative to saying food is *rico* is *delicioso*.

16. *repugnante* (disgusting)

This is a strong word, and you can always add a disgusted face for extra



effect.

17. *inteligente* (intelligent)

You don't have to be *inteligente* to work this one out.

18. *tonto* (stupid)

*Estúpido* is also a word meaning the same thing, but it's actually not that commonly used.

19. *nuevo* (new)

You got that one, right?

20. *viejo* (old)

You can say "*los viejos*" to casually refer to your parents, although they might not like it.

This isn't generally considered to be offensive or rude, but that all depends on the parents.

21. *abierto* (open)

As in English, this can refer to a person.

*Es una persona muy **abierto**.* (He/she is a very open person.)

Or it can refer to a shop or establishment.

*La tienda está **abierto** hasta las 5 de la tarde.* (The shop is open until 5 in the afternoon).

Again, note the difference in the use of the verbs *ser* and *estar*.

22. *cerrado* (closed)

The shop could also be closed late, if it's in a country that takes its *siesta* seriously.

*La tienda está **cerrado** hasta las 5 de la tarde.* (The shop is closed until 5 in the afternoon.)

23. *cansado* (tired)

Did someone say *siesta*?

*De repente estoy **cansado**.* (I'm suddenly tired.)

*Cansado* isn't to be confused with *casado*, which means married.

24. *despierto* (awake)

This is exactly what you don't want to be during *siesta* time.

25. *caluroso* (hot)

The reason for the *siesta* during this sunny time of day.

*Está **caluroso**.* (It's hot.)

26. *frío* (cold)

You can use this to talk about the lower temperatures on the thermometer.

*No hay siesta en países más **fríos**.* (There's no siesta in colder countries.)

27. *caro* (expensive)

¿Son más **caros** los países sin siesta? (Are the countries with no *siesta* more expensive?).

28. *barato* (cheap)

Answers on a postcard please.

¿O son más **baratos**? (Or are they cheaper?)

29. *rápido* (fast)

I'm sure you can learn the word for fast *muy rápido* if you didn't know it already.

30. *lento* (slow)

But remember to slow down if this list is too much information all at once.

*Este mundo necesita más movimientos lentos.* (This world needs more slow moves.)

31. *loco* (crazy)

We all know this one already, thanks to Ricky Martin and his ["Livin' la Vida Loca."](#)

32. *tranquilo* (tranquil)

This can also be used as a suggestion or order, in addition to an adjective meaning "calm" or "tranquil."

If you say "*tranquilo*" to someone who's worked up, you're telling them to calm down. It's a pleasant way to say this and be reassuring, when said in a calming tone.

33. *fuerte* (strong)

If you go to the gym every day, you'll get *fuerte*, hopefully.

34. *débil* (weak)

But if you still feel *un poco débil* (a little weak), don't be too hard on yourself.

35. *enfermo* (sick)

You could be *un poco enfermo* (a little sick) or you could just need more time, and perhaps a gym instructor.

36. *sano* (healthy)

As you might have guessed, this can also mean "sane," in reference to mental/emotional health. Either way, it's definitely a compliment or a positive thing to be.

37. *dulce* (sweet)

This isn't just about flavor, it can also be a compliment, referring to someone's sweet nature.

Eres **dulce**. (You're sweet.)

Or the person talking might be confusing you with that big sticky bun you're standing next to—and instead say *está dulce*, which is used to describe a sweet taste. Again, note how using *ser* and *estar* can change the meaning of the adjective from a permanent personality trait to the temporary flavor of a food.

38. *salado* (savory)

*Salado* more directly means “salty,” but can describe any savory dish. It's also used in [a number of colloquialisms around Latin America](#), so keep an ear out for those!

39. *limpio* (clean)

Let's hope the place where you're buying the sticky buns is *limpio* and *barato* too, why not?

40. *sucio* (dirty)

Just a suggestion.

*Si es un poco sucio, deberías ir a otro lado*. (If it's a little dirty, you should probably go somewhere else).

41. *seco* (dry)

Hopefully *es un día seco* (it's a dry day), so you won't get *mojado* on the way to the other bakery.

42. *mojado* (wet)

I already gave this one away, didn't I? This word is useful if it does start raining.

43. *injusto* (unfair)

Did your favorite sweater get *mojado*?

And your friend stole your umbrella and ran away?

¡Qué **injusto**! (How unfair!)

44. *justo* (fair)

Definitely not fair.

*No es justo*. (It's not fair.)

That friend shouldn't have done that under any circumstances.

45. *vacío* (empty)

What your life's gonna feel like once you finish this post.

46. *lleno* (full)

What your vocabulary notebook's gonna look like once you write down all these great new words.

47. *delgado* (thin)

I can't say how you'll look when you've finished this. Probably the same as when you started.

48. *gordo* (fat)

Maybe your notebook will be *más gordo* if you download this post as a PDF, print it and stick it in your notebook?

49. *bueno* (good)

Just in case you'd forgotten the basics after learning all these new words.

50. *malo* (bad)

Ditto. It's always good to remember these essentials!

So, go on and be *un(a) estudiante bueno/a* (a good student) and learn this whole list!

### **Adjectives at a Meal**

Spanish-speaking people are typically very hospitable and are quick to invite guests into their homes for delicious meals. When you find yourself facing a dinner invite, you'll no doubt immediately start dreaming of homemade tostadas and tamales, then break out into a cold sweat as you picture yourself fumbling through conversation during the meal. The thought of sitting through a meal with a group of people that only speaks Spanish can be overwhelming. Have no fear! The truth is, if you can smile and are able to learn a few key adjectives from each of the categories below, you'll know enough Spanish to win someone's heart at dinner. (Reminder: An adjective describes a noun.)

1. Praise the food. This is number one and it's the most important. Take a bite, smile, then say *La comida es **rica**. Es **perfecta**...* Mmmm. (The food is yummy. It's perfect.... Mmm.) Or if something is spicy, you can say *Es **picante***, (It's spicy) as you reach for your milk, laughing. Your hosts will all laugh, too.

2. For some engaging conversation, chat about famous people or people you both know. Even if you are talking to a person from a different country than you, it's likely that you are both familiar with some of the same famous people. You might find yourself talking about the president, Jennifer Lopez or Michael Jackson. If this happens, you can share your opinion. *Es **guapo***. (He's handsome.) Or *Es **feo***. (He's ugly.) You might find that you both are fans of Enrique Iglesias and end up at a concert together someday! You can also talk about a mutual friend and say *Es **cariñosa y graciosa***. (She's warm/endeared and funny.) Your hosts will think you are

sweet for noticing those positive traits.

3. People are proud of where they are from, so it's always a good idea to praise someone's home. Su casa es **limpia, cómoda y muy bonita**. (Your house is clean, comfortable and very pretty). They'll definitely invite you back.

4. End by sharing your feelings about the dinner. Mi estómago está **lleno**. (My stomach is full.) Estoy **feliz**. (I'm happy.) Again, everyone will be pleased.

## Describe Food

These adjectives will help you describe, specifically, what you think about the food placed in front of you.

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Pronunciation Help</b>
hot (temperature)	caliente	cah·lee·en·tay
hot (spicy)	picante	pee·khan·tay
cold	frío(a)	free·oh
yummy/delicious	rico(a)	ree·coh
bitter	amargo(a)	ah·mar·go
sweet	dulce	dool·say
perfect	perfecto(a)	pair·fec·toh
frozen	congelado(a)	cone·hay·la·doh
grilled/roasted	asado(a)	ah·sah·doh
fried	frito(a)	free·toh
boiled	hervido(a)	air·vee·doh
gross	asqueroso(a)	ah·scare·oh·so

## Describe Physical Appearance

These adjectives will help you describe what you and the people around you look like.

<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>Pronunciation Help</b>
good-looking	guapo(a)	gwa·poh
cute/pretty	lindo(a)	leen·doh
pretty	bonito(a)	boh·nee·toh
beautiful	hermoso(a)	air·moh·soh
precious	precioso(a)	preh·see·oh·soh
thin	delgado(a)	del·gah·doh
fat	gordo(a)	gore·doh
weak	débil	day·beel
strong	fuerte	fwer·tay
tall	alto(a)	all·toh
short	bajo(a)	bah·ho

## Describe Personality

Use these words to describe what people are like, on the inside. Many of these words can also be used to describe objects, events, or situations.

English	Spanish	Pronunciation Help
nice	simpático(a)	sim·pah·tee·coh
mean	antipático(a)	ahn·tee·pah·tee·coh
friendly/polite	amable	ah·mah·blay
funny	gracioso(a)	grah·see·oh·so
boring	aburrido(a)	ah·buur·ee·doh
fun	divertido(a)	dee·vair·tee·doh
warm/endearing	cariñoso(a)	car·ee·nyoh·soh
weird/odd	raro(a)	rah·roh
fierce	feroz	fair·ohss
creative	creativo(a)	cray·ah·tee·voh
brave	valiente	vaal·ee·en·tay
crazy	loco(a)	loh·koh
de buena onda	nice guy/gal/someone who you think is putting out a good vibe (very common phrase in Mexico)	day bwayne·ah own·dah



## CHAPTER 11: ADVERBS

---

Adverbs are words used to modify or describe verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. An adverb can give information about time, place, manner, or number and answer questions such as:

- How?
- How long?
- How often?
- When?
- Where?

Unlike Spanish adjectives, Spanish adverbs are invariable, which is a fancy way to say they do not change according to the gender or number. This is because adverbs modify verbs, adjectives and adverbs, not nouns.

## **Adverb Placement**

- An adverb usually comes after the verb it modifies.

**Cantas bien.**

*You sing well.*

- An adverb always comes before the adjective it modifies.

**Eres muy alto.**

*You're very tall.*

- An adverb always comes before the adverb it modifies.

**Hablas demasiado rápido.**

*You speak too quickly.*

## Types of Adverbs

Adverbs can be categorized into several types, including adverbs of place, adverbs of time, adverbs of quantity, and adverbs of manner.

### Adverbs of Place

Adverbs of place answer questions like Where? and give information on location.

#### List of Adverbs of Place

Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<b>aquí</b>	<i>here</i>	<b>acá</b>	<i>here</i>
<b>allí</b>	<i>there</i>	<b>allá</b>	<i>there</i>
<b>cerca</b>	<i>near</i>	<b>lejos</b>	<i>far</i>
<b>delante</b>	<i>in front</i>	<b>detrás</b>	<i>behind</i>
<b>encima</b>	<i>on top</i>	<b>debajo</b>	<i>underneath</i>
<b>dentro</b>	<i>inside</i>	<b>fuera</b>	<i>outside</i>
<b>adelante</b>	<i>ahead</i>	<b>atrás</b>	<i>behind</i>
<b>arriba</b>	<i>up, above</i>	<b>abajo</b>	<i>down, below</i>
<b>adentro</b>	<i>inside</i>	<b>afuera</b>	<i>outside</i>

#### Examples with Adverbs of Place

**El templo está allá.**

*The temple is over there.*

**Aquí hay muchas flores.**

*There are lots of flowers here.*

## **Adverbs of Time**

Adverbs of time answer questions like When? and How often? and are used to give information on time, duration, and frequency.

### **List of Adverbs of Time**

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<b>hoy</b>	<i>today</i>	<b>ahora</b>	<i>now</i>
<b>mañana</b>	<i>tomorrow</i>	<b>ayer</b>	<i>yesterday</i>
<b>anoche</b>	<i>last night</i>	<b>anteayer</b>	<i>the day before yesterday</i>
<b>anteanoche</b>	<i>the night before last</i>	<b>previamente</b>	<i>previously</i>
<b>recientemente</b>	<i>recently</i>	<b>actualmente</b>	<i>currently</i>
<b>brevemente</b>	<i>briefly</i>	<b>permanentemente</b>	<i>permanently</i>
<b>diariamente</b>	<i>daily</i>	<b>frecuentemente</b>	<i>frequently</i>
<b>todavía</b>	<i>still</i>	<b>ya</b>	<i>already</i>
<b>nunca</b>	<i>never</i>	<b>siempre</b>	<i>always</i>
<b>ocasionalmente</b>	<i>occasionally</i>	<b>semanalmente</b>	<i>weekly</i>

### **Examples with Adverbs of Time**

**Llegaste tarde a clase.**

*You arrived to class late.*

**Todavía no ha comido sus guisantes.**

*He still hasn't eaten his peas.*

### **Adverbs of Quantity or Degree**

Adverbs of quantity or degree answer questions like: How much? or To what extent? and are used to give information on quantity, number, and degree.

#### **List of Adverbs of Quantity or Degree**

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
<b>muy</b>	<i>very</i>	<b>demasiado</b>	<i>too much</i>
<b>mucho</b>	<i>a lot</i>	<b>poco</b>	<i>a little</i>
<b>menos</b>	<i>less</i>	<b>más</b>	<i>more</i>
<b>tanto</b>	<i>so much</i>	<b>bastante</b>	<i>enough</i>
<b>algo</b>	<i>somewhat</i>	<b>nada</b>	<i>not at all</i>

#### **Examples with Adverbs of Quantity or Degree**

**Comí demasiado anoche.**

*I ate too much last night.*

**Estoy muy cansada.**

*I am very tired.*

### **Adverbs of Manner**

Adverbs of manner answer questions like How?, or In what way? and are used to give information on the way something is done.

#### **List of Adverbs of Manner**

<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Spanish</b>	<b>English</b>
----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

<b>bien</b>	<i>well</i>	<b>mal</b>	<i>badly</i>
<b>mejor</b>	<i>better</i>	<b>peor</b>	<i>worse</i>
<b>rápido</b>	<i>fast, quickly</i>	<b>despacio</b>	<i>slowly</i>
<b>claramente</b>	<i>clearly</i>	<b>inteligentemente</b>	<i>intelligently</i>
<b>bonito</b>	<i>beautifully</i>	<b>cuidadosamente</b>	<i>carefully</i>
<b>alto</b>	<i>loudly</i>	<b>quieto</b>	<i>quietly</i>
<b>dulcemente</b>	<i>sweetly</i>	<b>estupendamente</b>	<i>stupendously</i>
<b>seriamente</b>	<i>seriously</i>	<b>voluntariamente</b>	<i>voluntarily</i>
<b>así</b>	<i>like this, this way</i>	<b>fácilmente</b>	<i>easily</i>

### Examples with Adverbs of Manner

**Lo siento, pero así soy yo.**

*I'm sorry, that's the way I am.*

**Estoy bien, gracias.**

*I'm well, thank you.*

## Forming Adverbs

### Simple Adverbs

Many adverbs can also be formed with adjectives by using the following formula.

feminine singular adjective + **-mente** (the Spanish equivalent of the English -ly)

- lenta + **-mente** = **lentamente**

(*slowly*)

**Caminaba lentamente.**

*He was walking slowly.*

- fácil + **-mente** = **fácilmente**

(*easily*)

**Contesté las preguntas fácilmente.**

*I answered the questions easily.*

- rápida + **-mente** = **rápidamente**

(*quickly*)

**Corrí rápidamente para escaparme de los perros.**

*I ran quickly to escape from the dogs.*

## More on Manner

Manner can frequently be expressed using adverbial expressions that use the following formulas.

- **de manera** + adjective
- **de modo** + adjective
- **con** + noun

**Me besó de manera dulce.**

*He kissed me sweetly.*

**Hice el examen de manera fácil.**

*I completed the exam easily.*

**Corrí de modo rápido para escaparme de los perros.**

*I ran quickly to escape from the dogs.*

**Escribe de modo romántico para ganar su corazón.**

*I wrote romantically to win her heart.*

**Me besó con dulzura.**

*He kissed me sweetly.*

**Hice el examen con facilidad.**

*I completed the exam easily.*



## Adverbial Expressions

Below you will find some more common Spanish adverbial expressions.

Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<b>a ciegas</b>	<i>blindly</i>	<b>a veces</b>	<i>sometimes</i>
<b>al final</b>	<i>in the end</i>	<b>a tiempo</b>	<i>on time</i>
<b>de día</b>	<i>during the day</i>	<b>de noche</b>	<i>at night</i>
<b>de verdad</b>	<i>really, truly</i>	<b>por fin</b>	<i>finally</i>
<b>sin cuidado</b>	<i>carelessly</i>	<b>con cuidado</b>	<i>carefully</i>
<b>a la perfección</b>	<i>perfectly</i>	<b>a la vez</b>	<i>at the same time</i>
<b>al principio</b>	<i>in the beginning</i>	<b>de una vez por todas</b>	<i>once and for all</i>
<b>a diario</b>	<i>daily</i>	<b>a menudo</b>	<i>often</i>
<b>de inmediato</b>	<i>immediately</i>	<b>de nuevo</b>	<i>once again</i>
<b>en serio</b>	<i>really, seriously</i>	<b>en realidad</b>	<i>really</i>
<b>a diestra y siniestra</b>	<i>all over the place</i>	<b>a escondidas</b>	<i>secretly</i>
<b>al anochecer</b>	<i>at dusk, at sunset</i>	<b>al amanecer</b>	<i>at dawn</i>
<b>a oscuras</b>	<i>in the dark</i>	<b>a la moda</b>	<i>fashionably</i>
<b>en casa</b>	<i>at home</i>	<b>con frecuencia</b>	<i>frequently</i>
<b>con alegría</b>	<i>happily</i>	<b>con tristeza</b>	<i>sadly</i>

<b>de buena gana</b>	<i>willingly</i>	<b>de mala gana</b>	<i>unwillingly</i>
<b>de pronto</b>	<i>suddenly</i>	<b>de repente</b>	<i>suddenly</i>
<b>por desgracia</b>	<i>unfortunately</i>	<b>por suerte</b>	<i>luckily</i>
<b>de memoria</b>	<i>by heart</i>	<b>de prisa</b>	<i>quickly</i>

## Common Spanish Adverbs

English Word	Spanish Translation
here	aquí
there	allí
near	cerca
in front	delante
on top	encima
inside	dentro
ahead	adelante
up	arriba
above	arriba
inside	adentro
here	acá
there	allá
far	lejos
behind	detrás
underneath	debajo
outside	fuera
behind	atrás
down	abajo
below	abajo
outside	afuera
today	hoy
tomorrow	mañana
last night	anoche
the night before last	anteanoche
recently	recientemente
briefly	brevemente
daily	diariamente
still	todavía

never	nunca
occasionally	ocasionalmente
now	ahora
yesterday	ayer
the day before yesterday	anteayer
previously	previamente
currently	actualmente
permanently	permanentemente
frequently	frecuentemente
already	ya
always	siempre
weekly	semanalmente
very	muy
a lot	mucho
less	menos
so much	tanto
somewhat	algo
too much	demasiado
a little	poco
more	más
enough	bastante
not at all	nada
well	bien
better	mejor
fast	rápido
quickly	rápidamente
clearly	claramente
beautifully	bellamente
loudly	ruidosamente
sweetly	dulcemente
seriously	seriamente
like this	así

this way	así
badly	mal
worse	peor
slowly	lentamente
intelligently	inteligentemente
carefully	cuidadosamente
quietly	tranquilamente
stupendously	estupendamente
voluntarily	voluntariamente
easily	fácilmente
perhaps	acaso
besides	además
before	adelante
around	alrededor
often	a menudo
before	antes
rather	en lugar
as soon as	apenas
hence	por lo tanto
hence	de ahí
still	aún
yet	todavía
within	dentro
after	después
shortly	en breve
then	entonces
towards	hacia
till	hasta
until	hasta
in the meantime	mientras tanto
nor	ni

neither	ni
soon	pronto
perhaps	tal vez
so	tan
so	así
late	tarde
early	temprano
everyday	todos los días
usually	usualmente
generally	generalmente
from time to time	de vez en cuando
monthly	mensualmente
seldom	pocas veces
annually	anualmente

## CHAPTER 12: THE INDICATIVE MOOD

---

The **indicative mood** is characterized by expressing actions or ideas that are real or concrete, such as facts, objective statements and easily perceived qualities of a person, place or thing. For example, the sentence "I eat eggs on Sundays" (*Yo como huevos los domingos*) is in the **indicative mood** as it is stating a truth or a fact. Even if the tense were to change to, let's say, the preterite tense "I ate eggs on Sunday" (*Yo comí huevos el domingo*) it is still considered to be in the **indicative mood** as it remains a statement of fact. The **indicative mood** is the most frequently used out of the three and thus it is the first one to learn at the [basic Spanish level](#).

Example Sentences for the Indicative Mood:

<i>Debería ir a la cena de despedida.</i>	He/she should go to the going-away dinner.
<i>No vas a ir a la fiesta.</i>	You are not going to the party.
<i>Durante el sismo, mantuvimos la calma.</i>	During the earthquake, we remained calm.
<i>No ganaron.</i>	They didn't win.
<i>Me gustan las flores.</i>	I love flowers.

## CHAPTER 13: THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The **subjunctive mood** is characterized by expressing actions or ideas that are hypothetical and not concrete. These can be in the form of subjective statements and opinions as well as desires, hopes and wishes. The **subjunctive mood** is used a lot more in Spanish than it is in English so it can sometimes be a tricky concept for native English speakers.

The following verbs are normally expressed in the **subjunctive mood** by making a subjunctive clause with the word *que* (that) followed by a second verb conjugated in the subjunctive:

<i>pedir que</i>	to ask/request
<i>demandar que</i>	to demand
<i>insistir que</i>	to insist
<i>ordenar que</i>	to order
<i>rezar que</i>	to pray
<i>preferir que</i>	to prefer
<i>recomendar que</i>	to recommend
<i>arrepentirse de que</i>	to regret
<i>requerir que</i>	to require
<i>sugerir que</i>	to suggest
<i>esperar que</i>	to wish
<i>negar que</i>	to refuse
<i>sorprender que</i>	to surprise
<i>gustar que</i>	to like
<i>querer que</i>	to want



<i>dudar que</i>	to doubt
<i>necesitar que</i>	to need
<i>sentir que</i>	to feel
<i>No creer que</i>	to not believe that
<i>No es cierto que</i>	It's not true that
<i>Es interesante que</i>	It is interesting that
<i>Es necesario que</i>	It's necessary that
<i>Es posible que</i>	It's possible that
<i>Es ridículo que</i>	It's ridiculous that
<i>Es raro que</i>	It's strange that
<i>Es terrible que</i>	It's terrible that
<i>Es mejor que</i>	It's better that
<i>Es bueno/malo que</i>	It's good/bad that

Aside from the [common verbs](#) used with the subjunctive, here are some other expressions that trigger the subjunctive mood:

Example Sentences for the Subjunctive Mood:

<i>Me sorprende que no haya venido a la cena de despedida.</i>	It surprises me that he/she didn't come to the going-away dinner.
<i>Te niego que vayas a la fiesta.</i>	I forbid you from going to the party.
<i>Es importante que mantengamos la calma.</i>	It's important that we all remain calm.
<i>Dudo que ganen.</i>	I doubt that they will win.
<i>Me gusta que me regales flores.</i>	I like that/when you give me flowers.

## CHAPTER 14: THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

---

The **imperative mood** is characterized by making demands and giving direct orders. Only the present tense is used to express the imperative mood. Also, since demands are always made to another person there is no conjugation for the "yo" form.

Example Sentences for the Imperative Mood:

<i>¡Ve a la cena de despedida!</i>	<i>Go to the going-away dinner!</i>
<i>¡No vayas a la fiesta!</i>	<i>Don't go to the party!</i>
<i>¡Mantengan la calma!</i>	<i>Stay calm!</i>
<i>¡Ganen!</i>	<i>Win!</i>

## **CHAPTER 15: PREPOSITION**

---

As the prefix pre in the word preposition suggests, prepositions precede the word or words they link. There are simple prepositions, which consist of only one word, and compound prepositions, which consist of multiple words.

## Simple prepositions

Below you will find a list of some of the most common simple prepositions in Spanish.

Spanish	English	Spanish	English
<b>a</b>	to, at	<b>ante</b>	before, in the presence of
<b>bajo</b>	under	<b>con</b>	with
<b>contra</b>	against	<b>de</b>	of, from
<b>desde</b>	from, since	<b>detrás (de)</b>	behind
<b>en</b>	in, on, at	<b>entre</b>	between, among
<b>hacia</b>	until, toward	<b>hasta</b>	until, toward
<b>para</b>	for, in order to	<b>por</b>	for, by
<b>según</b>	according to	<b>sin</b>	without
<b>sobre</b>	about, on, upon, above, over, around	<b>tras</b>	after, behind

In most cases, prepositions are used the same way in Spanish as they are in English, and you will find their placements fairly logical. There are a few Spanish prepositions, however, that warrant a little extra attention. Below you'll find more in-depth information on a few of the most common Spanish prepositions.

## **Preposition Profile: a**

This very common preposition can mean to, at, by, or for, among other translations.

It can be used to:

- indicate motion (translation: to)

### **Fuimos a España.**

We went to Spain.

### **Iremos al museo el martes.**

We will go to the museum on Tuesday.

- connect a verb to another verb in the infinitive (no direct English translation)

### **Vamos a bailar.**

We are going to dance.

### **Empecé a leer.**

I began to read.

- indicate manner, or how something is done (translations: on, by, with)

### **Vamos a pie.**

We went on foot.

### **Lo hice a mano.**

I did it by hand.

### **Escribe a lápiz.**

He writes with a pencil.

- introduce a person as a direct object, aka the personal a (no direct English translation)

**¿Conoces a Isabela?**

Do you know Isabela?

**Veo a mi madre.**

I see my mother.

- introduce an indirect object (translations: to, for)

**Le di el regalo a Celia.**

I gave the gift to Celia.

**Compré los tomates a Anita.**

I bought the tomatoes for Anita.

- express time (translation: at, although sometimes it has no direct translation)

**Cenamos a las seis.**

We eat dinner at six o'clock.

**Estamos a martes.**

It is Tuesday.

## **Preposition Profile: de**

This preposition can mean of, from, or with, among other translations. It can be used to:

- indicate possession (translations: of or possessive 's or s')

**Atlanta es la capital de Georgia.**

Atlanta is the capital of Georgia.

**Allí está el café de Manuel.**

There's Manuel's cafe.

- indicate cause (translations: from, of, with)

**Estoy cansada de correr.**

I am tired from running.

**Estamos contentos de nuestro hijo.**

We are happy with our son.

- indicate origin (translations: from, of)

**Ella es de Uruguay.**

She is from Uruguay.

**La gente de esta región es muy alta.**

The people of this region are very tall.

- talk about the beginning of a process (translation: from)

**De ahora en adelante solo voy a tomar café en la mañana.**

From now on I'm only going to drink coffee in the morning.

- compare or talk about a member of a group (translations: in, of or than)

**Sonia es la más inteligente de la familia.**



Sonia is the most intelligent person in the family.

**Juan es el más grande de todos los estudiantes del quinto grado.**

Juan is the biggest of all the 5th-grade students.

**Hay más de 10 personas en la clase de historia.**

There are more than 10 people in the history class.

- describe a noun using another noun (translation: of, although it often has no direct translation)

**¿Puedes comprar papel de baño?**

Can you buy toilet paper?

**Me encanta el jugo de naranja.**

I love orange juice.

## Preposition Profile: en

This common preposition can mean in, on, at, about, or by, among other translations. It can be used to:

- indicate location (translations: in, on, at)

**Está en mi mochila.**

It is in my backpack.

**Pon el cuadro en la pared.**

Put the painting on the wall.

**Ellos están en la iglesia.**

They are at church.

- to indicate time (translation: in)

**Fui a Perú en el verano.**

I went to Peru in the summer.

**Vienen en una hora.**

They are arriving in one hour.

- to indicate manner, or how something is done (translation: by)

**Vamos a Italia en tren.**

We go to Italy by train.

**Me voy al doctor en coche.**

I go to the doctor by car.

There are also many common phrases that begin with **en**:

**en broma**

as a joke

**en serio**

seriously

**en vivo**

live

The Spanish [preposition](#) "a" is often thought of as the equivalent of "to"—but in fact, it has far more uses. "A" can also be the equivalent of "on," "at," "from," "by" or "in." In many cases, it is not translated at all.

Rather than learning how to use the Spanish "a" by its translation, learn the purposes for which "a" is used. The following list doesn't cover all its uses, but it does show the uses you are most likely to come across at the beginning stages of learning Spanish.

## Using "a" to Indicate Motion or Location

Almost any verb indicating motion, and even nouns, can be followed by "a" before a destination. It can also be used with some other verbs to indicate where the verb's action takes place. In this and the following tables and examples, the preposition is listed in italics in Spanish and in English where it's translated rather than implied.

Spanish Sentence	English Translation
Llegamos a Argentina	We arrived in Argentina
Se acercó a la casa.	He approached the house.
Cayó al piso.	It fell to the floor.
Ofrecemos servicios especializados para facilitar su visita a Disneyland.	We offer specialized services to facilitate your visit to Disneyland.
Esa es la puerta al baño.	That is the door to the bathroom. ("Al" is a contraction of a + el, usually meaning "to the.")
Me siento a la mesa.	I am sitting at the table.

## Using "a" Before an Infinitive

"A" is often used to connect a verb with an [infinitive](#) that follows. This use is especially common when indicating the start of an action. In these cases, "a" is not translated separately from the infinitive.

Spanish Sentence	English Translation
Empezó a salir.	She began to leave.
Entró a hablar contigo.	He came in to talk to you.
Él se negó a nadar.	He refused to swim.
He venido a estudiar.	I have come to study.
Comenzó a bailar.	She began to dance.

The most common usage following this pattern is using "ir a + infinitive" to form the "a" type of future tense known as the periphrastic future.

- Si no jugamos bien no vamos a ganar. > If we don't play well we aren't

going to win.

- Voy a cantar. > I am going to sing.
- Tenemos que aceptar que tal vez no nos vayan a entender. > We have to accept that sometimes they aren't going to understand us.

## Using A to Indicate Manner or Method

Numerous expressions begin with "a" followed by a noun to indicate how something is done. The phrase starting with "a" [functions as an adverb](#) and is sometimes translated as one.

Spanish Sentence	English Translation
Vamos a pie.	We are going on foot.
Hay que fijarlo a mano.	It is necessary to fix it by hand. (Note that a mano also could have been translated as "manually," an <a href="#">adverb</a> .)
Estoy a dieta.	I am on a diet.
Escribo a lápiz.	I am writing with a pencil.
Andan a ciegas.	They are walking blindly.
Llegamos a tiempo.	We are arriving on time.
La internet evoluciona a cada instante.	The internet is changing constantly.
Lee el libro a escondidas.	She is studying the book covertly.

## Introducing an Object With "A"

Before a [direct object](#), "a" is used before name or noun that represents a person in a usage known as the "[personal a](#)." The preposition in these cases usually is not translated. "A" can also introduce an [indirect object](#).

Spanish Sentence	English Translation
Conozco a Pedro.	I know Peter. (In this and the next two examples, the name functions as a direct object.)
Encontré a Fido.	I found Fido.
Veré a María.	I will see Mary.
Le doy una camisa a Jorge.	I am giving a shirt to George. (In this and the next three examples, "George" is an <a href="#">indirect object</a> . Note how the translation of a varies with the verb.)
Le compro una camisa a Jorge.	I am buying a shirt for George.
Le robo una camisa a Jorge.	I am taking a shirt from George.
Le pongo la camisa a Jorge	I am putting the shirt on George.

## Using "a" in Time Expressions

"A" is sometimes used in specifying [times](#) or days, as in these examples.

- Salimos a las cuatro. > We are leaving at four.
- A la una de la noche escuchamos maullar. > At 1 a.m. we heard meowing.
- Estamos a lunes. > Today is Monday. (Literally, we are at Monday.)



## CHAPTER 16: BASIC SPANISH VOCABULARY AND PHARASES

### Physical appearance in Spanish

After studying this tutorial, you should be able to make good descriptions of people. Making descriptions in Spanish is very similar to English:

e.g.

He has + (adjective) + (noun)

He is + adjective.

e.g.

He has blue eyes = Tiene los ojos azules

He is bald = Es calvo

Français	English	Español
	facial features / rasgos	
le visage	face	la cara/el rostro
acné	acne	acne
ride	wrinkles	arugas
apeuré	frightened	asustado
glabre	clean-shaven	bien afeitado
froncement des sourcils	a frown	el ceño fruncido
point noir	blackheads	espinillas
bouton	spots/pimples	granos
une joue glabre/ un visage glabre	smooth-cheeked/smooth-faced	lampiño
des joues glabres/ un visage glabre	smooth-cheeked/smooth-faced	lampiño
les joues creuses	hollow cheeks	las mejillas hundidas
grain de beauté	moles	lunares
les joues roses	rosy cheeks	mejillas sonrosadas

des joues rebondies	chubby-cheeked	mofletudo
il a l'air soucieux	he looks worried	parece preocupado
prendre des couleurs	to go red in the face (with anger/heat)	ponerse colorado/rojo
rougir	to go red/to blush (with embarrassment)	sonrojarse/ruborizarse
surpris	surprised	sorprendido
hâlé	he had a weather-beaten face	tenía un rostro curtido
elle a le visage mince	she has a thin face	tiene la/una cara delgada
elle a des taches de rousseur	she has freckles	tiene pecas, es pecosa
tache de naissance	a birthmark	un antojo/una mancha de nacimiento
fossette	a dimple	un hoyuelo
un lifting	a face lift	un lifting, un estiramiento facial
une tête heureuse	a happy face	una cara alegre
un visage chérubin	a cherubic face	una cara angelical
une tête triste	a doleful face	una cara compungida
un air pince-sans-rire	a deadpan face	una cara de póquer/de palo
le visage bouffi	a bloated face	una cara hinchada/abotagada/abotargada
une tête ovale	an oval face	una cara ovalada
un visage joufflu/potelé/rebondi	a chubby/podgy face	una cara rechoncha, regordete, gordinflona
une tête ronde	a round face	una cara redonda
un visage joufflu	a chubby face	una cara regordete
un air sérieux	a serious face	una cara seria
un visage souriant	a smiling face	una cara sonriente

un visage triste	a sad face	una cara triste
un double menton	a double chin	una papada
un sourire	a smile	una sonrisa
un sourire en coin	a smirk	una sonrisita
verrue	warts	verrugas
	le nez / nose / la nariz	
un gros nez	a bulbous nose	una nariz protuberante
un nez crochu	a hooked nose	una nariz aguileña
un gros nez	a big nose	una nariz grande
un nez retroussé	a turned-up/snub nose	una nariz respingona
un nez pointu	a pointed nose	una nariz puntiaguda
un nez plat	a flat nose/a pug nose	una nariz chata
un nez de travers	a lopsided nose	una nariz ladeada/torcida
un pif	a hooter/conk (colloquial Br. Eng.) a schnozzle (colloquial Am. Eng.)	una napia
dilater ses narines	to flare your nostrils/to snort	resoplar/bufar
	yeux / eyes / los ojos	
elle a des yeux marrons	she has brown eyes	>tiene los ojos marrones
noisette	hazel	color avellana
il a des yeux de fouine	he has beady eyes	tiene los ojos redondos y brillantes como cuentas
un oeil noir	a black eye	un ojo morado
les yeux rouges	red eyes	ojos rojizos
les yeux injectés de sang	bloodshot eyes	ojos sanguinolentos/injectados de sangre

cligner de l'oeil	to wink	guiñar el ojo
battre des paupières	to blink	pestañear/parpadear
elle louche	she is cross-eyed	es bizca
un strabisme	a squint	una bizquera, un estrabismo
elle est aveugle	she's blind	es ciega
il est borgne	he's blind in one eye	es tuerto
perdre la vue	to go blind	quedarse ciego
pattes d'oie	crow's feet	patas de gallo
les yeux caves	sunken eyes	ojos hundidos
les yeux porcins	piggy eyes	ojitos redondos y brillantes
les yeux exorbités	bulging eyes	ojos saltones
les yeux bridés	slit/slanting eyes	ojos achinados
.....	a styne	un orzuelo
le regard fuyant	shifty eyes	ojos furtivos
sourcil	eyebrows	las cejas
sourcil arqué	arched eyebrows	cejas arqueadas
sourcil broussailleux	bushy eyebrows	cejas tupidas
sourcil épais	thick eyebrows	cejas pobladas
lever les sourcils au ciel	to raise your eyebrows	arquear las cejas
cils	eyelashes	las pestañas
faux-cils	false eyelashes	pestañas postizas
	la bouche / mouth / la boca	
bec-de-lièvre	harelip	labio leporino
gerçures	chapped lips	labios agrietados
dents de lapin	buckteeth	dientes de conejo/dientes salidos
fausse dent	false teeth	dentadura postiza
les dents de devant	front teeth	paletas/dientes de adelante
dent de sagesse	wisdom teeth	muelas del juicio
claquer des dents	to chatter (teeth)	castañetear

mes dents claquent	my teeth are chattering	me castañetean los dientes
	cheveux / hair / cabello	
elle a des cheveux blonds	she has blond hair	tiene el pelo rubio
auburn	auburn	castaño rojizo
elle a des cheveux gris	she has grey hair	es canosa, tiene el pelo canoso, tiene canas
cheveux châains	mousy hair	el pelo castaño desvaído
elle est rousse	she's red- haired/red- headed	es pelirrojo
une brune	a brunette	una morena
des mèches	streaks	mechones
reflets	highlights	mechitas/reflejos/claritos
cheveux teints	dyed hair	el pelo teñido
cheveux longs	long hair	el pelo largo
cheveux courts	short hair	el pelo corto
cheveux mi-long	shoulder-length hair	el pelo hasta los hombros
cheveux frisés	curly hair	el pelo rizado
cheveux ondulés	wavy hair	el pelo ondulado
cheveux crépus	frizzy hair	el pelo crespo
cheveux en brosse	spiky hair	el pelo de punta
elle a une permanente	she has permed hair	se ha hecho un permanente
cheveux frisés	crimped hair	pelo rizado con tenacillas
cheveux raides	straight hair	el pelo liso
une frange	a fringe	un flequillo
une raie	a parting	una raya
une natte	a pigtail	una trenza
une queue de cheval	a ponytail	una cola

des couettes	bunches	coletas
un chignon	a bun	un moño
les cheveux plats	lank hair	el pelo lacio
triste, sans goût	dull	sin brillo
cheveux gras	greasy hair	el pelo graso/grasoso
fin	fine	fino
elle a les cheveux épais	she has thick hair	tiene mucho pelo/tiene el pelo grueso
sec	dry	seco
cheveux brillants	shiny hair	el pelo brillante
cheveux fourchus	split ends	las puntas abiertas
pellicules	dandruff	la caspa
coupe à la Jeanne d'Arc	a pageboy	un peinado/corte a lo paje
coupe au carré	a bob	una melena
coiffure	a hairdo	un peinado
coupe de cheveux en brosse	a crew cut	un pelo cortado al rape
....	sideburns	patillas
une perruque	a wig	una peluca
un postiche	a toupée	un peluquín, un tupé
chauve	bald	calvo
une calvitie	a bald patch	una calva/una pelada
il se dégarni	he's balding	se está quedando calvo
	carrure / build / complexión	
menu	thin	delgado
elle est un sacré personnage	she's got a very good figure	tiene una figura estupenda
dodu	plump (a nicer way of saying fat)	gordito
mince	slim	esbelto

gros	fat	gordo
un ventre à bière	a beer belly	una panza
rondelet	chubby	regordete/gordinflón/rellenito
fort	strong	fuerte
faible	weak	flojo
petit	short	bajo
grand	tall	alto
bossu	a hunchback	un jorobado
il boite	he walks with a limp	cojea
taille moyenne	medium height	de estatura media
carrure moyenne	medium build	de talla media
il est large	he's a large man	es un hombre corpulento
	termes généraux / general terms / términos generales	
beau, attirant, charmant	handsome, good-looking, attractive	guapo
belle, mignonne, attirante, charmante	pretty, good-looking, attractive, lovely	guapa, bonita, linda
c'est un beau mec	he's quite a hunk	está buenísimo
horrible	ugly	fea/feo
beau	beautiful	preciosa, guapísima, lindísima, hermosa, bella

## ECHAR

Apart from its most common literal meaning of "to throw out" or "to expel", "echar" is also used in a large number of expressions and phrases. On this page we include some of the most common and useful ones.

Spanish	English
FRASES COMUNES	

<p> echar de menos algo / a alguien  Te echo de menos  Te echaba mucho de menos cuando estabas en Francia. </p>	<p> to miss  I miss you  I really missed you when you were in France. </p>
<p> echar una mano  ¿Me puedes echar una mano con este ejercicio? </p>	<p> to lend a hand  Can you give me a hand with this exercise? </p>
<p> me echaron la culpa a mí  ¡no me eches la culpa a mí! </p>	<p> they put the blame on me  don't put the blame on me! </p>
<p> echar un vistazo  echó un vistazo a su alrededor </p>	<p> to have a look at something  she glanced around </p>
<p> echar leña al fuego </p>	<p> to add fuel to the fire:  This is used in a figurative sense, meaning to make a bad situation worse by negative actions or comments. </p>
<p> echarse atrás  Ya es demasiado tarde para echarse atrás.   Se echó atrás en el último momento </p>	<p> to back out / withdraw / to go backwards  It's too late to back out now.   She backed out at the last moment </p>
<p> echar raíces  echar anclas </p>	<p> to put down roots (for a person)  to drop anchor </p>
<p> echarse a (infinitive)   echarse a llorar  se echó a llorar   se echó a llorar   se echó a correr </p>	<p> this expression is often used to express that something starts suddenly:   to burst into tears  she burst into tears  she burst into song   he broke into a run </p>
<p> echar una cabezada </p>	<p> to have a nap </p>
<p> me voy a echar una siesta </p>	<p> I'm going to have a siesta </p>



<p> echar una carrera  Tendrás que echar una carrera si quieres coger el tren.</p>	<p> to get a move on  You'll have to get a move on if you want to catch the train.</p>
<p> echar una corrida  Tuve que echar una buena corrida para coger el tren.</p>	<p> to run for it  I really had to run for it to catch the train.</p>
<p> echar la casa por la ventana  Eché la casa por la ventana para la boda de su hija.</p>	<p> to push the boat out / to go overboard / to spare no expense  He went overboard for his daughter's wedding.</p>
<p> echar el cerrojo</p>	<p> to bolt the door</p>
<p> echar los dados</p>	<p> to throw the dice</p>
<p> echar a alguien  me echaron  me echó de casa</p>	<p> to sack / fire someone / to throw someone out   they gave me the sack / fired me   he threw me out of the house</p>
<p> echar  eche el aceite en un bol</p>	<p> pour  pour the oil into a bowl (from a recipe)</p>
<p> echar algo en falta  Lo que se echa en falta es más tiempo</p>	<p> to miss / lack  What is needed is more time.</p>
<p> echar una mirada a algo</p>	<p> to have a look at something</p>
<p> echar un ojo a alguien o algo</p>	<p> to take a quick look at something / someone</p>
<p> echar un partido de tenis  Vamos a echar un partido de tenis.</p>	<p> to have a game of tennis  Let's have a game of tennis.</p>
<p> echar un pulso</p>	<p> to arm wrestle</p>
<p> echarse en la cama</p>	<p> to lie down on the bed</p>
<p> Le tengo que echar gasolina.</p>	<p> I have to get some petrol.</p>
<p> echar las cortinas</p>	<p> to draw the curtains</p>

FRASES NO TAN COMUNES	
echar brotes	to sprout
echar las campanas al vuelo	to shout it from the rooftops to get excited about something
echar su cuarto a espadas	to stick one's oar in
echar los hígados	to bust a gut (higado = liver)
echar a alguien a los leones	to throw someone in at the deep end
echar luz sobre algo	to shed / cast light on something
echarse las manos a la cabeza Se echó las manos a la cabeza cuando vio lo que había hecho.	to throw one's hands up in horror She threw her hands up in horror when she saw what he had done.
echar mano de algo Si tenemos problemas de dinero siempre podemos echar manos de nuestros ahorros.	to fall back on If we have money problems we can always dip into our savings.
echar algo a perder Las lluvias echaron a perder la cosecha	to ruin / spoil something The rains ruined the harvest.
echar pestes de alguien Siempre me está echando de pestes.	to run someone down She's always slagging me off.
echar el resto	to go all out
¿Cuántos años me echas?	How old do you think I am?
Se ha echado novio.	She's found herself a boyfriend.
echar rayos y centellas	to fume (colloquial) (centella = sparks)
echar algo a suerte	to toss / draw straws for something etc.
echar tierra a / sobre algo	to cover / hush something up
echar algo por tierra Van a echar este monumento por tierra.	to knock down / demolish They're going to knock down that monument.

echar la toalla	to throw in the towel
echar algo por la ventana	to throw something away to spoil / squander something
echar de ver He soon realised that he had been robbed.	to realise / notice Pronto echó de ver que le habían robado.

### Car related vocabulary in Spanish

Français	English	Español
PARTIES DE LA VOITURE	PIEZAS Y ACCESORIOS	CAR PARTS
Un cric	un gato	a jack
Une pièce de rechange	una pieza de repuesto / recambio	a spare part
Une roue de secours	una rueda de repuesto	a spare wheel
Un pneu	un neumático	a tyre (Am. tire)
Une roue	una rueda	a wheel
Essuies glaces	un limpiaparabrisas	a windscreen wiper (Am. windshield wiper)
L'accélérateur	el acelerador	accelerator
La batterie	la batería	battery
Capot	el capó	bonnet (Am. hood)
Le coffre	el maletero	boot (Am. trunk)
Le frein	el freno	brake
Phare de stop	la luz de freno / la luz de frenado	brake light
Le pare-chocs	el parachoques	bumper (Am. fender)
Embrayage	el embrague	clutch
Le tableau de bord	el salpicadero	dashboard
Feux de croisements	la luz de cruce	dipped headlights
La porte	la puerta	door
La poignée de porte	la manilla de la puerta	door handle

Le permis de conduire	el permiso de conducir	driving licence (Am. driver's license)
Le moteur	el motor	engine
Pot d'échappements	el tubo de escape	exhaust
Grille de ventilateur	la correa del ventilador	fan belt
Les phares antibrouillard	el faro antiniebla	fog lamp / light
Les sièges avants / arrières	el asiento delantero / trasero	front / back seat
La boîte de vitesses	la caja de cambios	gear box
Le levier de vitesses	la palanca de cambio	gear stick (Am. gear shift)
Boîte à gants	la guantera	glove box / glove compartment
Le frein à main	el freno de mano	handbrake
Le phare	el faro	headlamp
Le klaxon	el claxon	horn
Clignotants	el intermitente	indicator
Longues portées	la luz de carretera	main beam
Le compteur kilométrique	el cuentakilómetros	mileometer / milometer
La plaque d'immatriculation	la (placa de) matrícula	number plate (Am. license plate)
La pédale	el pedal	pedal
Jauge d'essence	el tapón	petrol cap
Feu arrière	la luz trasera / la luz de atrás / los pilotos	rear light / lamp
Rétroviseur central	el retrovisor	rear-view mirror
La galerie	la baca	roof rack
La ceinture de sécurité	el cinturón de seguridad	seat belt
Feux de positions	la luz de posición (plural: las luces)	sidelight (Am. parking light)
La bougie	la bujía	spark plug

Compteur de vitesse	el velocímetro / el indicador de velocidad	speedometer
Le volant	el volante	steering wheel
La fenêtre	la ventanilla	window
Le pare brise	el parabrisas	windscreen (Am. windshield)
Rétroviseur latéral	el espejo lateral	wing mirror
ROUTES	CARRETERAS	ROADS
Une route régionale	una carretera comarcal	a B-road (Am. secondary road)
Une piste cyclable	un carril para bicicletas	a cycle lane / a cycleway
Un cul-de-sac	una calle sin salida	a dead-end street
Une route à quatre voies	una autovía	a dual carriageway (Am. divided highway)
Une sortie	una salida p.ej. Deja la autopista en la salida número 16	a junction (of a motorway) e.g. Leave the motorway at junction 16.
Une voie	un carril	a lane
Une autoroute (avec péages)	una autopista	a motorway (Am. freeway)
Une route à sens unique	una calle de dirección única	a one-way street
Le périphérique / La rocade	una (carretera de) circunvalación	a ring road / a bypass
Une route	una carretera	a road (between towns)
Une rue	una calle	a street
Un péage	una carretera de peaje	a toll road
Une nationale	una carretera nacional	an A-road (Am.

		highway)
La route principale	la carretera general	the main road
ACCIDENTS	ACCIDENTES	ACCIDENTS
Un accident de voiture	un accidente de coche	a car accident
Une collision	una colisión	a car crash
Un carambolage	un accident en cadena	a pile-up
Un accident de trafic	un accidente de tráfico	a road accident
Traces de dérapages	huellas de un patinazo	skid marks
La voiture glisse sur la glace	el coche patinó en el hielo	the car skidded on the ice
Rentrer dans	chocar contra	to crash into
Griller un feu rouge	saltarse un semáforo	to go through a red light
Perdre le contrôle de	perder control de	to lose control of
Écraser Elle a été écrasé par un camion	atropellar La atropelló un camión.	to run over She was run over by a lorry.
Déraper	derrapar / patinar	to skid
Faire un excès de vitesse Ils m'ont mis une amende pour excès de vitesse	ir a exceso de velocidad Me multaron por exceso de velocidad.	to speed I was fined for speeding.
OTHER CAR-RELATED VOCABULARY		
Les vitesses	las marchas / los cambios	gears
La marche arrière	la marcha atrás	reverse
Diesel	gasóleo, diesel	diesel, gas-oil
Mettre un sabot	ponerle el cepo a un coche	to clamp a car
Un sabot	un cepo	a clamp
Sans-plomb	sin plomo	lead free
Faire marche arrière	dar marcha atrás	to reverse

Le carburant, le combustible, le fuel	el combustible, el carburante	fuel
Une voiture à quatre roues motrices	un todoterreno	an off-road vehicle, a four-wheel-drive vehicle
Une dépanneuse	la grúa	a crane, a tow truck
Il a été remorqué	se lo llevó la grúa	it was towed away
La première vitesse	la primera	first gear
Le point mort	el punto muerto	neutral
Freiner	frenar	to brake
Tomber en panne	averiarse	to break down
Le pétrole	la gasolina	petrol (Am. gas)
Une station de pétrole	una gasolinera	a petrol station (Am. gas station)
Tomber en panne	quedarse sin gasolina	to run out of petrol
Faire le plein	echar gasolina	to fill up with petrol
Un garage	un taller	a workshop / garage (Am. repair shop)
La limite de vitesse	el límite de velocidad	the speed limit
Respecter les limitations de vitesses	respetar el límite de velocidad	to keep to the speed limit
L'huile	el aceite	oil
Révision d'huile	cambiar / revisar el aceite	to change / check the oil
Anti gel	el anticongelante	antifreeze
Une crevaison	un pinchazo	a puncture
Un passage piéton	un paso de peatones	a pedestrian crossing
Un passage piéton	un paso de cebra	a zebra crossing
Éclairage de chaussée	el semáforo	traffic lights
Un croisement	un cruce	a crossroads
Remorquer	remolcar	to tow
Un embouteillage	un atasco	a traffic jam

L'heure de pointe	la hora punta	the rush hour
Un rond-point	una glorieta / una rotonda	a roundabout (Am. traffic circle)
Un carrefour	un cruce	a junction
Un carrefour en T	un cruce en forma de T	a T-junction
Un virage	una curva	a bend
Un virage en épingle à cheveux	una curva muy cerrada / una curva en herradura	a hairpin bend (Am. hairpin turn)
Se garer	aparcar	to park
Un parking	un aparcamiento	a car park (Am. parking lot)
Une zone de stationnement	un lugar para estacionar	a parking space
Un ticket de parking	una multa (por estacionamiento indebido)	a parking ticket
Une amende	una multa	a fine

## ENTRETENAMIENTO - ENTERTAINMENT

Spanish	English
<b>TEATRO - THEATRE</b>	
una compañía	a company
un vestuario	a costume
un diseñador	a costumer
un pie	a cue
un director	a director
el ayudante de camerino	a dresser
una farsa	a farce
un bastidor	a flat
un musical	a musical
una comedia musical navideña	a pantomime (u.k.)
un papel	a part



una representación / una función	a performance
una obra de teatro	a play
un/a dramaturgo/a, un/a autor/a teatral	a playwright
un / una apuntador/a	a prompter
un espectáculo	a show
un sketch, un apunte	a sketch
un papel hablado	a speaking part
un parlamento	a speech
un aficionado al teatro	a theatregoer
una gira	a tour
un papel de figurante / comparsa	a walk on part
un actor	an actor
una actriz	an actress
la taquilla	booking office
el traspunte	callboy
el centro del escenario	centre stage
la dramatización / adaptación teatral	dramatisation
el primer piso / la platea alta	dress circle
el camerino	dressing room
un bis	encore
la apoteosis	finale
la noche del estreno	first night
las candilejas	footlights
un lleno	full house
las luces de la sala	house lights
la primera actriz	leading lady
el primer actor	leading man
la iluminación	lighting
el maquillaje	makeup
fuera del escenario	offstage
el estreno	opening

la escenografía, el decorado	scenery
los tramoyistas	stage crew
el telón de fondo	the backdrop
el reparto, el elenco	the cast
el telón	the curtain
las bambalinas	the flies
la galería	the gallery
el entreacto	the interval
el foco	the spotlight
el escenario, el decorado	the set
el escenario	the stage
la puesta en escena, el montaje	the staging
la platea, el patio de butacas	the stalls
el vestuario	the wardrobe
los bastidores	the wings
aplaudir	to applaud
abuchear	to boo
asignar	to cast
aprenderse el papel	to learn one's lines
presentar	to perform
poner en escena, representar	to stage
el segundo piso	upper circle
una sala de conciertos, un auditorio	a concert hall
el foso orquestal	the orchestra pit
la orquesta	the orchestra
una butaca de platea	an orchestra stall
un director / una directora	a conductor
CINE - CINEMA	
un / una guionista	a scriptwriter
el guión	the script
rodar, filmar	to shoot

un cortometraje	a short
un/una doble	a stand-in
un / una doble de riesgo	a stunt man / woman
el guión	screenplay
un primer plano	a close up
el equipo de rodaje	film crew
el plató	the set
un papel de extra	a walk on part
aparecer en el papel de	to feature
un largometraje	a feature film
el protagonista	leading man
la protagonista	leading lady, main character
el lugar de filmación	location
la primera sesión de la tarde	matinée
el estreno	opening
la función	performance
la proyección	screening
el ayudante del electricista	best boy
la distribudora	distributor
doblar	dub
un extra	an extra
un electricista	a gaffer
los fragmentos, rushes	rushes
una toma	a take
un / una acomodador/a	an usher
<b>CINE / TEATRO / TELEVISIÓN - CINEMA / THEATRE / TV</b>	
la pantalla	the screen
argumento, trama	the plot
blanco y negro	black and white
el estreno	opening
el operador de sonido	mixer

el papel	role
el productor / la productora	producer
el público	audience
el reparto/los actores	cast
fracasar estrepitosamente	to flop
la adaptación	adaptation
la cámara	camera
la continuación de	sequel
la producción	production
los camarógrafos	camera crew
subtitular	to subtitle
los subtítulos	subtitles
los telespectadores	viewers
tener como protagonista	to star
un accesorio,un objeto de utilería	a prop
un actor secundario	supporting actor
un avance/un tráiler	a trailer
un crítico	a critic
un estudio	a studio
una actriz secundaria	supporting actress
una entrada	a ticket
una escena peligrosa	a stunt
TELEVISIÓN - TV	
el/la regidor/a	floor manager
las secuencias	footage
un fotograma	a frame, a still
la emisión	screening
una repetición f de la jugada	action replay
un anuncio,un spot (publicitario)	an advert, a commercial
los comentarios,una crónica	a commentary
la cabina de prensa	the commentary box

la sala de control	control room
un episodio	an episode
un documental	documentary
un presentador	an anchorman
una presentadora	an anchorwoman
un / una comentarista	a commentator
un locutor / una locutora de continuidad	an announcer
un / una presentador/a (de un informativo)	a newscaster
una antena	an aerial/antenna
el presentador	the front man
la estrella invitada	guest star
un invitado	a guest
el/la presentador/a	the host
un enlace, una conexión	link up
en vivo, en directo	live (adjective)
un programa que lleva tiempo en pantalla	long running programme
las noticias	the news
el / la programador/a	the programmer
un drama psicológico	a psychodrama
un programa concurso	a quiz show
el índice de audiencia	ratings
la recepción	reception
el mando a distancia	the remote control
una repetición	a repeat
una antena parabólica	satellite dish
la programación	scheduling
una serie	a tv series
un culebrón, una telenovela	a soap opera
el transmisor	transmitter

un documental	a documentary
---------------	---------------

### Colours - advanced level

Español	English
COLOUR NOUNS / SUSTANTIVOS RELACIONADOS CON LOS COLORES	
un morado	a bruise
el blanco	target / bull's eye
el vino tinto	red wine
el vino blanco	white wine
el vino rosado	rosé wine
COLOUR EXPRESSIONS / FRASES RELACIONADAS CON LOS COLORES	
<b>ROJO</b> ponerse hecho una furia ponerse rojo ponerse más rojo que un tomate estar en números rojos	<b>RED</b> to see red to blush to turn as red as a beetroot to be in the red
<b>AMARILLO</b> la prensa amarilla/amarillista/sensacionalista	<b>YELLOW</b> the yellow press
<b>VERDE</b> estar verde me muero de envidia poner verde a alguien tener mano para las plantas un viejo verde	<b>GREEN</b> to be green (inexperienced) I'm green with envy to call someone all the names under the sun to have green fingers a dirty old man
<b>AZUL</b> amorado de frío una película verde / porno esfumarse	<b>BLUE</b> blue with cold a blue film to disappear into the blue
<b>NEGRO</b>	<b>BLACK</b>

mentir descaradamente una mirada de odio pasarlas negras dijo la sartén al cazo	to swear black is white a black look to have a tough time That's the pot calling the kettle black.
BLANCO Se casó de blanco. Se pusieron blanco de miedo. Me quedé en blanco.	WHITE She had a white wedding. They went white with fear. My mind went blank.
OTHER COLOUR-RELATED EXPRESSIONS / OTRAS FRASES RELACIONADAS CON LOS COLORES	
daltonismo	colour blindness
perder color	to fade
estar matizado de	to be tinged with
televisión de color	colour television
televisión de blanco y negro Note: how the colours are reversed	black and white television
apagado	dull
chillón	garish
llamativo, chillón	loud
chillón, chabacano	lurid
vibrante	vibrant
tonos pastel	pastel shades
colores primarios/fundamentales	primary colours
rojizo	reddish
amarillento	yellowish
verdoso	greenish
azulado	bluish
negruzco/renegrido	blackish
blanquecino/blancuzco	whitish
azul verdoso	greenish blue
azúcar moreno/morena	brown sugar
arco iris	rainbow
HAIR COLOUR / COLOR DE PELO	

castaño rojizo	auburn
rubio	blonde
castaño	brown
castaño	chestnut
rubio	fair
pelirrojo, color zanahoria	ginger
canoso/gris/cano Es canoso. / Tiene el pelo canoso. / Tiene canas.	grey He's got grey hair.
castaño desvaído	mousy
pelirrojo Es pelirrojo.	red She's got red hair.
rubio rojizo	sandy
Voy a teñirme el pelo de rubio	I'm going to dye my hair blonde

## FLORES - FLOWERS

Español	English
FLORES - FLOWERS	
una violeta africana	an African violet
una buganvilla	a bougainvillea
un clavel	a carnation
la flor de cerezo	cherry blossom
un crisantemo	a chrysanthemum
un aciano	a cornflower
un narciso	a daffodil
una dalia	a dahlia
una margarita	a daisy
un diente de león	a dandelion
un delphinio	a delphinium
una dedalera, una digital	a foxglove
una fucsia	a fuchsia
una fresia	a freesia



un geranio	a geranium
un gladiolo	a gladiolus (plural: gladioli)
el brezo	heather
una malvarrosa	a hollyhock
la madreselva	honeysuckle
un jacinto	a hyacinth
un lirio	an iris
un jazmín	a jasmine
una espuela de caballero	a larkspur
una lavanda, un espliego	a lavender
una lila	a lilac
un lirio de los valles, un muguete	a lily-of-the-valley
una caléndula	a marigold
una capuchina	a nasturtium
las flores de azahar	orange blossom
una orquídea	an orchid
un pensamiento	a pansy
un polemonio	a phlox
una primula	a polyanthus
una amapola	a poppy
una primula, una primavera	a primula
una rosa	a rose
un dragón, una boca de dragón	a snapdragon
una campanilla de invierno	a snowdrop
el/un alhelí	stock, a wall flower
un girasol	a sunflower
un guisante de olor	a sweet pea
la minutisa	sweet william
un tulipán	a tulip
una viola	a viola
una violeta	a violet
una glicina	a wisteria

PARTS OF A FLOWER	
el tallo	stem
un pétalo	a petal
el polen	pollen
una espina	a thorn
una raíz	a root
un brote	a shoot
un capullo (Note this is also a slang word for idiot)	a bud
FLOWER VOCABULARY	
una flor silvestre	a wild flower
una flor cultivada	a garden flower
un ramo de flores	a bunch of flowers
un ramillete	a posy, a spray
un ramo de flores	a bouquet
una flor que se lleva en el ojal	a buttonhole
las flores	blossom
florecer	to bloom, to flower
estar en plena floración	to be in full bloom
estar en flor	to be in flower
cortar, coger	to pick
podar	to prune
regar	to water
un florero	a vase
una maceta	a flowerpot
un arriate	a flowerbed
un arreglo de flores	a flower arrangement
bianual	biennial
anual	annual
perenne, vivaz	perennial
una malahierba, un hierbajo	a weed

un esqueje	a cutting
el estiércol	manure
el abono orgánico / el compost	compost
una floristería	a florist's / a flower shop
<b>FLOWER EXPRESSIONS</b>	
estar criando malvas	to be pushing up the daisies
tan fresco como una lechuga	as fresh as a daisy
todo está saliendo a pedir de boca	everything's coming up roses
ver las cosas de color de rosa	to see things through rose-tinted glasses
no hay rosa sin espina	there's no rose without a thorn
no son todo rosas	it isn't / wasn't all (a bed of) roses
dar/echar margaritas a los cerdos	to cast pearls before swine
deshojar la margarita	to play "she loves me, she loves me not"
estar en la flor de la vida Está en la flor de su vida.	to be in the prime of one's life She's in the prime of her life
la flor y nata	the crème de la crème
echarle flores a alguien Me estaba echando flores toda la noche.	to pay someone compliments He was paying me compliments all night.
a flor de piel Tiene los nervios a flor de piel.	edgy He's very edgy. / His nerves were all on edge.

## HERBS AND SPICES

Apart from its most common literal meaning of "to throw out" or "to expel", "echar" is also used in a large number of expressions and phrases. On this page we include some of the most common and useful ones.

Spanish	English
<b>HIERBAS - HERBS / ESPECIAS - SPICES</b>	

pimienta de Jamaica	allspice
anís	anise
albahaca	basil
una hoja de laurel	a bayleaf
borraja	borage
alcaravea	caraway
cardamomo	cardamom
pimienta de cayena	cayenne pepper
perifollo	chervil
chile	chili
cebollinos	chives
canela	cinnamon
clavos	cloves
cilantro, coriandro	coriander
comino	cumin
curry	curry
eneldo	dill
hinojo	fennel
fenogreco, alholva	fenugreek
finas hierbas	fines herbes
ajo	garlic
jengibre	ginger
enebro	juniper
melisa	lemon balm
limoncillo	lemon grass
macis, macia	mace
mejorana	marjoram
menta	mint
mostaza	mustard
nuez moscada	nutmeg
orégano	oregano
pimentón dulce, paprika	paprika

perejil	parsley
pimienta	pepper
hierbabuena	peppermint
semillas de amapola	poppy seeds
romero	rosemary
azafrán	saffron
salvia	sage
ajedrea	savory
semillas de ajonjolí/sésamo	sesame seeds
menta verde	spearmint
estragón	tarragon
tomillo	thyme
cúrcuma	turmeric
vainilla	vanilla
HERB WORDS	
molido	ground
entero	whole
semillas	seeds
granos de pimienta	peppercorns
polvo	powder
chile en polvo	chili powder
vaina de vainilla	vanilla pod
un trozo de canela en rama	a cinnamon stick
hebras de azafrán	saffron strands
EXPRESSIONS	
¡Ábrete sésamo!	Open sesame!
No me importa un comino.	I couldn't care less.
ser canela fina	to be exceptional
Este vino es de canela fina.	This wine is pure nectar.
dormirse en/sobre los laureles	to rest on one's laurels
el que se pica ajos come	if the cap fits, wear it

echar/soltar ajos	to swear
estar metido en el ajo	to be mixed up / to be involved in something
¡Ajo y agua!	I'll/You'll/She'll have to put up with it.

## DEPORTES - SPORTS

Spanish	English
LOS DEPORTES ACUÁTICOS	AQUATIC SPORTS
el salto de plataforma, el salto de trampolín	platform diving, springboard diving
la natación (estilo libre, crol, braza, mariposa, espalda)	swimming (freestyle, crawl, breaststroke, butterfly, backstroke)
la natación sincronizada	synchronised swimming
el waterpolo	water polo
ATLETISMO (PISTA)	ATHLETICS (TRACK EVENTS)
los sprints	sprints
las vallas	hurdles
los 100 metros vallas	100 metres hurdles
una carrera con relevos	Relay
una carrera con obstáculos	steeplechase
ATLETISMO (CAMPO)	ATHLETICS (FIELD EVENTS)
el salto de longitud	long jump
el triple salto	triple jump
el salto de altura	high jump
el salto con garrocha/pértiga	pole vault
el lanzamiento de bala/peso	shotput
el lanzamiento de disco	Discus
el lanzamiento de jabalina	Javelin
el lanzamiento de martillo	hammer throw
OTRAS PRUEBAS	OTHER EVENTS
el/la maratón	marathon

la marcha	road walk
el heptatlón (mujeres) (200m, 800m, 100m vallas, lanzamiento de peso, jabalina, salto de longitud, salto de altura)	heptathlon (women) (200m, 800m, 100m hurdles, shotput, javelin, long jump, high jump)
el decatón (hombre)	decathlon (men)
DEPORTES ECUESTRES/HÍPICOS	EQUESTRIAN SPORTS
la doma	dressage
las pruebas de tres días	eventing
el salto	jumping
LA GIMNASIA (LA GIMNASIA ARTÍSTICA)	GYMNASTICS (ARTISTIC GYMNASTICS)
la barra de equilibrio	Beam
el ejercicio de suelo	floor exercises
la barra fija	horizontal bar
las barras paralelas	parallel bars
el potro con arcos	pommel horse
las anillas	Rings
las barras asimétricas	uneven bars
el salto	Vault
GIMNASIA (LA GIMNASIA RÍTMICA)	GYMNASTICS (RHYTHMIC GYMNASTICS)
la cuerda	Rope
la pelota	Ball
el aro	hoop
las clavas	clubs
la cinta	ribbon
OTROS DEPORTES OLÍMPICOS	OTHER OLYMPIC SPORTS
el bádminton	badminton
el béisbol	baseball
el baloncesto	basketball

el boxeo	boxing
el piragüismo	canoeing / kayak
el ciclismo	cycling
la esgrima	fencing
el fútbol	football, soccer
la gimnasia	gymnastics
el balonmano	handball
el hockey (el hockey sobre hierba, el hockey sobre hielo)	hockey (field hockey, ice hockey)
el judo	Judo
el pentatlón moderno (el tiro, la esgrima, la natación, el salto hípico, la carrera a pie)	modern pentathlon (shooting, fencing, swimming, show jumping, running)
el ciclismo de montaña	mountainbiking
el remo	Rowing
la vela	Sailing
el tiro	shooting
el softball	softball
el tenis de mesa	table tennis
el taekwondo	taekwondo
el tenis	tennis
el triatlón (la natación, el ciclismo, la carrera a pie)	triathlon (swimming, bike ride, running)
el voleibol	volleyball
el levantamiento de pesas, la halterofilia	weightlifting
la lucha	wrestling
DEPORTES OLÍMPICOS DE INVIERNO - WINTER OLYMPIC SPORTS	
el biatlón (esquí de fondo, tiro)	biathlon (skiing, shooting)
el bobsleigh	bobsleigh, bobsled
el skeleton	skeleton



el curling	Curling
el hockey sobre hielo	ice hockey
el luge	Luge
el patinaje (el patinaje artístico, el patinaje de velocidad)	skating (figure skating, speed skating)
el esquí (el esquí alpino, el esquí de fondo, el esquí artístico, la combinada nórdica, el salto de esquí, el snowboard)	skiing (alpine skiing, cross-country skiing, freestyle skiing, nordic combined skiing, ski jumping, snowboard)
DEPORTES RECONOCIDOS	RECOGNISED SPORTS
el aerobics	aerobics
la aeronáutica (el parapente, la aerostación, el ala delta, el paracaidismo)	aeronautics (paragliding, ballooning, hang gliding, skydiving)
el fútbol americano	American football
el bandy	bandy
el voleibol de playa, el voley playa	beach volleyball
el billar	billiards
los deportes de tabla (el mountainboard/patinaje de montaña, el sandboard, el monopatín/skateboarding, el snowboard, el surf/surfing, el wakeboard, el windsurf/windsurfing/surf a vela, el kitesurf)	board sports (mountainboarding, sandboarding, skateboarding, snowboarding, surfing, wakeboarding, windsurfing, kitesurfing)
el bumerang	boomerang
la petanca	Boules
los bolos, el bowling	bowling
el bridge (el bridge-contrato)	bridge (contract bridge)
el ajedrez	Chess
el críquet	Cricket
el croquet	croquet

el curling	curling
la danza deportiva	dancesport
buceo: el buceo de altura el submarinismo	diving: deep-sea diving scuba diving
la pesca	fishing
el golf	golf
el hurling	hurling
el footing hacer footing	jogging to go jogging
el kárate	karate
el korfball	korfball
el lacrosse	lacrosse
el socorrismo	life saving
las artes marciales	martial arts
el motociclismo de velocidad	motorcycle racing
el alpinismo y el montañismo	mountaineering and climbing
el netball	netball
la orientación	orienteering
el padel	paddleball
la pelota vasca	pelota Basque
el pelo	polo
el cañonismo, la espeleología	potholing, caving
el raquetball	raquetball
el patinaje sobre ruedas (el patinaje artístico, el patinaje sobre ruedas en descenso, el hockey en línea, el patinaje de velocidad)	roller skating (artistic roller skating, downhill, hockey, inline hockey, speed skating)
el rugby	rugby
el snowmobiling	snowmobiling
un squash	squash
el surfing	surfing

el juego de tira y afloja	tug of war
los deportes submarinos	underwater sports
el esquí acuático	waterskiing
el rafting, el descenso de rápidos	white water rafting
el wushu	wushu
LOS DEPORTES EXTREMOS	EXTREME SPORTS
la escalada artificial	ACW climbing
las carreras de aventura	adventure racing
el patinaje agresivo	agressive skating
el esquí acuático con los pies desnudos	barefoot waterskiing
la caída libre	base jumping
el patinaje de tabla de vela	boardsailing
el BMX	BMX
el puenting	bungee jumping
el descenso de los cañones	canyoning
el submarinismo libre	free diving
el funambulismo	high wire
las motos de agua	jetskiing
el motocross, el motocross en circuitos de barro	motocross, extreme motocross
el skysurfing	skysurfing
el bólico de calle	street luge

## SPANISH GARDENING VOCABULARY: LA HUERTA

I have always been a keen vegetable gardener. If I go over and speak to my Spanish neighbour Jacinto it is essential to have a good vocabulary about the vegetable garden so I can understand what he is saying and to know what to do when he give me some seeds and explains how to grow them.

Spanish	English
una huerta	a vegetable garden

producir flores y semillas antes de tiempo	to bolt
resistente a las heladas	hardy
está al tallo	it has gone to seed
tallo	stem, stalk
terreno fértil	fertile ground
regar	to water
podar	to prune
flores (de arboles frutales o ornamentales)	blossom
malas hierbas	weeds
maceta	plant pot
suelo	soil
ácido, neutro o alcalino	acidic, neutral or alkaline
plaguicida, el pesticida	pesticide
fósforo	phosphorus
calcio	calcium
magnesio	magnesium
molibdeno	molybdenum
boro	boron
carencias de nutrientes	lack of nutrients
estiércol	manure
el fertilizante, el abono	fertilizer
una hortaliza, las hortalizas	vegetable, garden produce
aspersor	sprinkler
una azada	a Spanish hoe
las semillas	seeds
una helada precoz	an early frost
sembrar	sow
conservar	store
el invernadero	greenhouse
la cosecha, la recolección	the harvest

una raíz, raíces	root, roots
arrancar una planta de raíz	to pull a plant up by its roots
el pulgón	greenfly
oruga	caterpillar
una motocultor, la motoazada	Rotovator
un surco	a furrow
hormonas de enraizamiento	rooting powder
turba	peat
lombriz	worm
verduras	vegetables
los semilleros	seedbeds
el cepellón	root ball
aclarar	to thin out
enterrar	to bury
Si se siembra muy superficialmente puede ser que la semilla se seque y no germine.	If you sow the seed very close to the surface it can dry out and not germinate.
sustrato	the growing medium
fibra de coco	coconut fibre
la perlita o la vermiculita	perlite or vermiculite
babosa, caracol	slug, snail
esparcir las semillas	scatter the seeds
regadera	watering can

## **AEROPUERTO – AIRPORTS**

Español	English
un aeropuerto	an airport
volar	to fly
un vuelo	a flight
un vuelo nacional	a domestic flight
un vuelo internacional	an international flight
un vuelo regular	a scheduled flight

un vuelo chárter	a charter flight
una conexión, el vuelo de enlace	a connecting flight
un vuelo directo	a direct flight
la pista de aterrizaje	the runway
el puente aéreo	shuttle service
la terminal	terminal
despegar	to take off
el despegue	takeoff
aterrizar	to land
el aterrizaje	landing
la facturación de equipajes	the check-in
el mostrador de facturación	the check-in counter/desk
facturar el equipaje	to check in
el equipaje	luggage/baggage
una maleta	a suitcase
el equipaje de mano	hand luggage
un carro/carrito	a trolley
el exceso de equipaje	excess baggage
el duty free, la tienda libre de impuestos	the duty-free shop
salir	to depart
las salidas	departures
llegar	to arrive
las llegadas	arrivals
un retraso	a delay
una cancelación	a cancellation
cancelar	to cancel
las llegadas	arrivals
la hora de salida/llegada	the departure/arrival time
el panel de llegadas y salidas	the arrivals and departures board
la sala de embarque	the departure lounge
la puerta de embarque	the departure gate

el control de pasaportes	passport control
el control de inmigración	immigration control
la aduana	customs
pasar por la aduana	to go through customs
¿Tiene algo que declarar?	Do you have anything to declare?
la recogida de equipajes	baggage claim/reclaim
el control del tráfico aéreo	air traffic control
la torre de control	control tower
el detector de metales	the metal detector
un billete, un pasaje	a ticket
un billete electrónico	an e-ticket
un billete de ida	a single ticket, a one-way ticket
un billete de ida y vuelta	a return ticket, a round-trip ticket
un viaje de ida y vuelta	a round trip
una tarjeta de embarque	a boarding card, a boarding pass
un pasaporte	a passport
un sello	a stamp
sellar tu pasaporte	to stamp your passport
un visado	a visa
un avión	a plane
un helicóptero	a helicopter
la cabina de mando	the cockpit
abordar	to board
la clase turista	tourist/economy class
la clase preferente, la business class	business class
un asiento	a seat
el cinturón de seguridad	the seat belt
abrocharse el cinturón	to fasten your seat belt
el pasillo	aisle
la ventanilla	window
una salida de emergencia	an emergency exit

un aterrizaje de emergencia	an emergency landing
una máscara/mascarilla de oxígeno	an oxygen mask
un chaleco salvavidas	a life jacket
un billete stand-by, un pasaje stand-by	a stand-by ticket
un traslado al y desde el aeropuerto	an airport transfer
contratar un seguro	to take out insurance
el seguro de viaje	travel insurance
viajar	to travel
un viaje	a journey
un viaje	a trip
un pasajero	a passenger
un/una piloto	a pilot
un/una copiloto	a co-pilot
la tripulación	the crew
una azafata	an air hostess
un auxiliar de vuelo	a steward
un/una oficial de aduanas	a customs official
un maletero	a porter
un controlador aéreo, una controladora aérea	an air traffic controller
un/una turista	a tourist
una agencia de viajes	a travel agency
un/una agente de viajes	a travel agent
un/una guía	a courier
una escala	a stopover

### Spanish Phrases

ESPAÑOL	INGLÉS
¡Anda ya!	Pull the other one.
¡Anímate!	Cheer up!



¡Cálmate!	Keep your hair on!
¡Date prisa	Hurry up
¡De verdad!	Really!
¡Jesús! (cuando alguien estornuda)	Bless you!
¡Qué cara!	What a cheek!
¡Qué lío!	What a mess!
¡Qué timo!	What a rip off.
¡Salud!	Cheers!
¡Ten cuidado!	Watch out!
¿Cómo es eso? ¿Por qué?	How come ?
A propósito	By the way
borracho como una cuba	Pissed as a newt
Cierra la puerta	Were you born in a field/barn?
Cruzando los dedos.	Cross your fingers.
De nada.	You're welcome.
Déjame en paz	Leave me alone
Dime cuanto (para comida o bebidas)	Say when
En mi opinión	To my mind
Estás de broma.	You're kidding.
Hablando del rey de Roma	Talk of the devil
Ligar con alguien	Chat someone up

Lo mereces.	It serves you right.
Más vale tarde que nunca	Better late than never
Me estás tomando el pelo.	You're pulling my leg.
Me suena.	It rings a bell.
No faltaría mas/Por supuesto	By all means
No me extraña	No wonder
No tengo ni idea	I haven't got a clue.
Ojalá	If only
Pagar en efectivo	To pay cash
Qué aproveche.	Bon appetit.
Quédate con el cambio.	Keep the change.
Revelar un secreto	Let the cat out of the bag
ser despedido	Get the sack
Siéntete como en tu casa	Make yourself at home
Sírvete	Help yourself
Tengo que irme.	I must be off.
Tocando madera	Touch wood.
Tomamos la penúltima	Let's have one for the road
Tú eliges.	It's up to you.
una aguafiestas	A wet blanket
una libra	A quid
una resaca	A hangover

Yo también

Same here

### **Insects-Insectos**

Spanish	English
<b>INSECTOS - INSECTS</b>	
una abeja	a bee
un abejorro	a bumblebee
una avispa	a wasp
un mosquito	a mosquito
un mosquito	a gnat
una pulga	a flea
una mosca	a fly
una hormiga	an ant
una araña	a spider
una cucaracha	a cockroach
un escarabajo	a beetle
un avispon	a hornet
una mariposa	a butterfly
una tijereta, un cortapicos	an earwig
una langosta, una tucura	a locust
un saltamontes	a grasshopper
una mariquita	a ladybird
una t�pula	a daddy longlegs
una oruga	a caterpillar
una viuda negra	a black widow spider
una mantis religiosa	a praying mantis
una tar�ntula	a tarantula
un bicho	a bug, a creepy-crawly
<b>INSECT-RELATED WORDS</b>	
una picadura de mosquito	a mosquito bite
un mercado de las pulgas, un rastro	a flea market
una tela de ar�a, una telara�a	a spider's web

un perro pulgoso	a flea-bitten dog
un hotel cochambroso / de mala muerte	a flea-bitten hotel, a fleabag hotel
INSECT PHRASES	
armar mucho revuelo, alborotar el avispero	to stir up a hornet's nest
tener monomanía con algo, tener algo metido entre ceja y ceja	to have a bee in your bonnet
creerse el no va más Se cree el no va más	to think one is the bee's knees He thinks he's the bees knees
echar a alguien con cajas destempladas, mandar al aguien de paseo	to send someone away with a flea in their ear
tener hormigas en el culo	to have ants in your pants
ponerte nervioso Se puso nervioso	to get butterflies in your stomach He got butterflies in his stomach.
Me habría gustado estar allí.	I'd like to have been a fly on the wall.
No tiene un pelo de tonta.	There are no flies on her.
morir / caer como moscas	to die / drop like flies
Lleva la bragueta abierta.	Your flies are undone.

## Spanish Food Words

English	Spanish
a bitter taste	un sabor amargo
A fad diet	Una dieta de moda
a food allergy	una alergia alimentaria
a healthy diet	una dieta saludable
a healthy meal	una comida saludable
Are you hungry?	¿tienes hambre?
breakfast, lunch, supper or dinner, desert,	desayuno, almuerzo, cena, postre
Do you like hot (spicy) food?	¿Te gusta la comida picante?
Do you like noodle soup?	¿te gusta la sopa de fideos?
Do you prefer sweet or savoury?	¿Prefieres lo dulce o lo salado?
enjoy your meal, bon appétit	¡que aproveche!
"eat-as-much-as-you-like" restaurants	restaurantes de bufé libre
Enjoying tasty meals with family and friends is a great pleasure in my life	Disfrutar de sabrosas comidas con familiares y amigos es un gran placer en mi vida.
Fresh fruit and vegetables may not be sold to consumers if they have gone off or are rotten, blemished, dirty, damaged by pests, underdeveloped or, in the case of fruit, unripe	Las frutas y hortalizas frescas no pueden venderse a los consumidores si están pasadas o podridas, magulladas, sucias, dañadas por parásitos, si son demasiado pequeñas o, en el caso de la fruta, si no están maduras.
glutton	un glotón, un comilón
Have you tried the cheese?	¿has probado el queso?
I am hungry	tengo hambre
I am starving hungry	Estoy muerto de hambre
I am still hungry	me quedo con hambre

I could eat a horse	tengo un hambre canina
I have eaten too much	he comido demasiado
Is English food as bad as they say it is?	¿Realmente la comida inglesa es tan mala como dicen?
it's bland, tasteless	está soso, sin sabor
it's finger licking good	es para chuparse los dedos
junk food	comida basura
knife, fork, spoon, cutlery	cuchillo, tenedor, cuchara, cubiertos
lay the table	poner la mesa
make something to eat	preparar algo para comer
my boyfriend is a vey fussy eater	mi novio es muy quisquilloso para la comida
No thanks, I am full	No, gracias, estoy lleno
Pass me the salt	¿Me puedes pasar la sal?
protein, fat, carbohydrate	proteína, grasa, carbohidrato
recipe, ingredients, a dish	receta, ingredientes, un plato
salty, bitter, sweet, sour	salado, amargo, dulce, ácido
The food crisis and world hunger are an increasingly serious issue.	La crisis alimentaria y el hambre en el mundo constituyen un problema cada vez más grave.
there is no such thing as a free lunch	Las comidas gratuitas no existen, nadie da nada a cambio de nada.
to say grace	bendecir la mesa
to secret of not getting fat is to chew each mouthful of food for 30 seconds before swallowing it.	el secreto de no engordar es masticar cada bocado de comida durante 30 segundos antes de tragar.
vegetarian, vegan, coeliac	vegetariano, vegano, celíaca
vitamins, nutrients, cholesterol	vitaminas, nutrientes, colesterol
What do you fancy eating?	¿que te apetece comer?
what doesn't kill you will make you fat. (In my experience this expression is used when someone has eaten a little piece of a fly or	lo que no mata engorda

some small foreign particle which has got into their food and one person says it to another meaning that eating a little bit of a it is not important so don't worry)	
Why do people like different foods?	¿porque las personas tienen diferentes gustos para la comida?
Would you like more potatoes?	¿quieres más patatas?

## Herramientas - Tools

Español	Inglés
unas herramientas	tools
una ferretería	a hardware shop
el bricolaje	DIY (do-it-yourself)
una droguería	store selling cleaning materials and other household goods

Frases útiles para la ferretería	
Español	Inglés
¿Tiene algo para .....?	Have you got anything for...?
Necesito algo que sea.....	I need something that is.....
¿Cómo funciona este chisme?	how does this thing work?
un chisme	thing, gadget, thingamajig

Español	Inglés
un martillo	a hammer
un mazo	a mallet
una sierra	a saw
una sierra de metales	a hacksaw
una llave	a spanner
una llave inglesa	an adjustable spanner
un destornillador	a screwdriver
un clavo	a nail
un tornillo	a screw
una lima	a file
el papel de lija	sandpaper
unos alicates	pliers (pair of)
un nivel	a level
un escoplo; un formón	a chisel (wood)
un cincel	a chisel (stone)



un cortafrío	a cold chisel
un taladro	a drill
una broca	a drill bit
Escuadra, una	a square
unos cortaalambres	wirecutters
unas tenazas	pincers
un metro	a metre rule
una regla	a ruler
un calibrador	a pair of callipers
un cepillo de carpintero	a plane
un torno de banco	a vice
un cárcel	a clamp
una escoba	a broom
una hacha	an axe
una carraca	a ratchet
un encaje	a socket
un pincel	a paintbrush (small)
una brocha	a paintbrush (large)
un soldador	a soldering-iron
una espátula	a scraper
un soplete	a blowtorch
un destornillador de estrella	a Phillips head screwdriver
un granete	a center punch
un cúter	a Stanley knife
Algunos verbos	
Español	Inglés
cortar	to cut
destornillar	to unscrew
martillar	to hammer
golpear	to hit
barnizar	to varnish

pintar	to paint
serrar	to saw

## Football in Spanish

SPANISH	ENGLISH
partido que se juega fuera de casa	away game
equipo visitante	away team
derrotar / vencer	beat
banquillo	bench
círculo central	centre circle
campeonato	championship
vestuarios	changing rooms
saque de esquina. corner	corner kick
pase cruzado	cross
travesaño	crossbar
recopa	cup-winners cup
defensa	defender
un empate	draw
balón a tierra	dropped ball (when restarting play)
la igualada	equaliser
tiempo suplementario	extra time
prórroga	extra-time
copa del rey	F.A cup
marcación del terreno	field markings
terreno de juego	field of play
primer tiempo	first half
en forma / sano	fit
encuentro	fixture
programa de encuentros	fixture list
banderines	flagposts

delantero	forward
falta	foul
tiro libre (directo/indirecto)	free kick (direct/indirect)
partido amistoso	friendly game
área de meta	goal / penalty area /the box
promedio de goles	goal average
saque de puerta / portería /meta	goal kick
línea de meta.	goal line
goleador	goal scorer
portero / guardameta / golero	goalkeeper
poste, palo de la portería	goalpost
intervalo del medio tiempo / descanso	half time interval
línea media	halfway line.
¡mano!	handball!
cabezazo	header
cara o cruz	heads or tails
en casa	home
gamberro	hooligan
un jugador lesionado	injured player
descuento	injury time
patada	kick
dar una patada	kick
saque de salida	kick-off
reglas de juego	laws of the game
liga	league
juez de línea	linesman
enfrentamiento de dos equipos vecinos	local derby

entrenador	manager
partido	match
centrocampista	midfield player
jugada	move
(la) selección	national team
equipo adversario	opposing team
propia meta	own goal
pasar	pass
tiro penal / penalti	penalty kick
punto penal	penalty spot
jugador	player
tarjeta roja	red card
árbitro	referee
repetición	replay
reanudación del juego	restart of play
marcar tres goles (en un partido)	score a hat trick
un empate a cero	score draw
marcador	scoreboard
temporada	season
segundo tiempo	second half
expulsar un jugador	send a player off
canillera/espinillera	shinguard
pantalones cortos	shorts
equipo	side
espectador	spectator
estadio	stadium / ground
los colores del equipo (uniforme?)	strip
tacos	studs
sustituto.	substitute
hinchas / seguidores	supporter

líbero / barredor	sweeper
internada	tackle
equipo	team
grada	terrace
balón	the ball
el entrenador	the coach
el resultado final	the final score
el máximo goleador de esta temporada	the highest goal scorer this season
la red	the net
el campo	the pitch
saque de banda	throw-in
revendedor de entradas	ticket tout
amonestar un jugador	to book a player
jugar de guardameta / de portero	to keep goal
marcar / meter un gol	to score a goal
tirar a puerta / al arco; disparar	to shoot at goal
línea de banda	touch line
torneo	tournament
torniquete / molinete / puerta	turnstile
el que tiene menos posibilidades	underdog
conducta antideportiva	unsporting behaviour
perdida de tiempo	wasting time
¿cómo terminó el partido?	what was the score?
¿cómo van? / ¿cómo va el marcador?	what's the score?
silbato pitido	whistle
extremo	winger

mundial	world cup
tarjeta amarilla	yellow card

## ESSENTIAL PHRASAL VERBS

**AGREE WITH** - estar de acuerdo - "All women are bad drivers." "I don't agree with you."

**BE ABOUT TO** - estar a punto de - I was about to leave the house when my friends arrived.

**BE BACK** - regresar - I'm working late at the office tonight so I won't be back until 10.

**BE OUT OF** - quedarse sin - We're out of eggs so we can't make a tortilla.

**BE OVER** - terminarse - When the football match was over, we went to the pub.

**BE UP** - estar levantado - "Phil isn't up yet: he's still in bed. Phone again in ten minutes."

**BLOW UP** - estallar (una bomba) - The bomb blew up killing six people.

**BLOW UP** - inflar - We blew up at least a hundred balloons for the Christmas party.

**BREAK DOWN** - averiarse - My car broke down on the way to Motril.

**CALL BACK** - volver a llamar - "I'm afraid the manager isn't here at the moment. Could you call back later?"

**CARRY ON** - seguir, continuar - I'm sorry if I interrupted you. Please carry on.

**CARRY OUT** - cumplir (una promesa) - The President carried out his promise to reduce taxation.

**CARRY OUT** - llevar a cabo - The execution was carried out at seven o'clock in the morning.

**CLEAR UP** - poner en orden - It took four hours to clear up after the party.

**COME ACROSS** - encontrar, dar con - I came across an old friend on the metro in Madrid.

**COME BACK** - regresar - I'm going to England for two weeks. I'm coming back on the fifth.

**COME IN** - entrar - "Good morning. Come in and sit down."

**COME ON** - ¡Vamos!, ¡Date prisa! - Come on. We're going to be late.

**CUT DOWN ON** - consumir menos - You must cut down on cholesterol or you'll have a heart attack.

**CUT OFF** - cortar, desconectar - When we didn't pay the bill, the

electricity was cut off.

**CUT UP** - cortar en pedazos - We cut up the birthday cake and gave everyone a slice.

**DO UP** - abrochar, atar - I was five before I knew how to do up my shoelaces.

**DO WITH** - tener algo que ver con, tener relación con - "What's MS DOS?" "It's got something to do with computers."

**DO WITHOUT** - pasarse sin, prescindir de - The shops are shut so we'll have to do without sugar.

**DRAW UP** - pararse - The car drew up at the zebra crossing.

**GET BACK** - volver, regresar - Cinderella had to get back by twelve o'clock.

**GET IN(TO)** - entrar - I lost my keys and so I couldn't get into the house.

**GET OFF** - bajar (de un autobus, tren) - You have to get off the bus at the next stop if you want the station.

**GET ON** - subir (a un autobus, tren, moto) - Quick! Get on the train, it's about to leave.

**GET UP** - levantarse - When I got up this morning it was still dark.

**GIVE BACK** - devolver - If you don't like the dress, the shop will give you your money back.

**GIVE UP** - perder la esperanza, rendirse - If you find phrasal verbs difficult, don't give up.

**GIVE UP** - dejar (de fumar, beber) - You'll get cancer if you don't give up smoking.

**GO AHEAD** - ¡Siga! - "Can I use the telephone?" "Yes, go ahead."

**GO AWAY** - irse, marcharse - Are you going away for Christmas, or are you staying at home.

**GO BACK** - volver, regresar - Although she's forty, she's going back to University to study French.

**GO DOWN** - bajar - The price of fruit goes down in the summer.

**GO OUT** - salir (por la calle) - I always go out and have a few drinks on Saturday night.

**GO UP** - subir - The price of cigarettes went up in January 1992.

**HANG ON/HOLD ON** - esperar - Hold on for a minute as Pablo will be back in five minute.

**HANG UP** - colgar (el teléfono) - My ex-girlfriend hung up when I phoned her.



**KEEP UP WITH** - mantenerse (a la altura de) - I can't keep up with my father when we go cycling as he goes too fast.

**KNOCK DOWN** - derribar, atropelar, demoler - My grandfather's old house was knocked down and a bank was built.

**LEAVE BEHIND** - olvidar, dejar - When I got to the airport, I realised I had left my passport behind.

**LET IN** - dejar entrar - She opened the door and let in the cat.

**LOOK AFTER** - cuidar - My mother looks after the children when we go away.

**LOOK FOR** - buscar - I spent two hours looking for my glasses before I found them.

**LOOK FORWARD TO** - esperar con ilusión - I'm looking forward to the Easter holidays.

**LOOK OUT** - tener cuidado, ¡Ojo! Look out! - There's a car coming.

**LOOK UP** - buscar algo (en un libro, diccionario) - If you don't understand the word, look it up in a dictionary.

**PUT IN** - meter, introducir - Put ten pence in the machine and you will get a cup of coffee.

**PUT ON** - encender - Put on the light, it's getting dark.

**PUT ON** - ponerse (la ropa) - Put your coat on or you'll get cold.

**RUN OUT OF** - quedars sin algo We ran out of petrol so we had to get the bus.

**SET OFF** - ponerse en camino - We set off to Madrid at five o'clock to avoid the traffic.

**TAKE AFTER** - parecerse a - Pablo takes after his mother: they are both optimistic.

**TAKE OFF** - despegar - The flight was delayed for two hours and the plane eventually took off at 6 p.m.

**TAKE OFF** - quitarse la ropa - Take off your coat and make yourself comfortable.

**TAKE OUT** - extraer, sacar - He took out a cigarette and lit it.

**THROW AWAY** - tirar (en la basura) - Don't throw these papers away: they're important.

**TURN DOWN** - bajar (el volumen) - Turn down the radio: it's too loud.

**TURN UP** - poner el volumen más fuerte - Turn up the radio. I can't hear it.

**TURN ON** - encender (televisión, luces etc.) - Turn on the television, please, I want to see the news.



---

## Spanish Lessons

---

Part 1  
**SPANISH SHORT STORIES**

## INTRODUCTION:

---

The Spanish language is wonderful, so rich in nuances and expressiveness. Not for nothing is one of the most popular languages; in fact, it is the third most spoken language in the world.

If you plan to learn this wonderful language or plan a trip to Spain (or other countries with official Spanish language), don't miss the opportunity to learn the basics of this fantastic language.

Getting closer to a new language is always something exciting:

New accents, new sounds, new words.

But the problems often come after this first period.

In the long term, grammar books become boring, and above all, do not give that sense of practicality that is needed.

Grammatical rules are important but cannot remain theoretical: it is essential to understand how to use rules and words to create sentences with complete meaning.

This is why it is important to start reading as soon as possible in the new language: it is often difficult to find books suited to your level, especially when you are a beginner.

Many of our students in the past found themselves stuck in this phase: they found only complicated books of Spanish literature, difficult to understand. You can imagine how frustrated and discouraged it is when you try to read sentences and can't understand the meaning at all.

For this reason, we have created this book.

Here you will find stories that are easy to read, interesting and fun: each story has been designed to bring you closer to grammatical rules and terms that are used in everyday conversations

In this way, you can learn the Spanish language faster, in a more effective and fun way.

Our goal is to help you improve the reading of texts and their understanding: in addition, with this method, you will more easily approach and memorize numerous everyday words.

How to best use this book

Each story is written using a varied vocabulary- and different grammatical structures.

At the same time, you will find commonly used terminologies; in this way, it will be easier for you to memorize the fundamental bases of Spanish.

The combination of grammar and vocabulary rules is carefully selected for beginner students (ACTFL: Novice - Intermediate, ILR: 0 -1, QCER:- A2).

Each story presents the text in English and its Spanish translation. Exercises with multiple answers and vocabulary glossary.

To achieve results in the fastest way, we strongly advise you to follow this approach:

Read the story in English:

You'll understand the general meaning of the story.

Read the translation in Spanish without focusing on precise terminologies.

Read the story in Spanish again. (this time with more attention) In this way, you can verify that you understand the story.

Answer the questions and check if you answered correctly.

The questions and answers are in Spanish and English as well, so that you can exercise further on understanding the texts.

Read the glossary of words:

Read the words in Spanish aloud to facilitate 'memorization'.

## **CHAPTER 1- EASY STORIES**

---

### **Story 1**

#### **English**

#### **THE CASTLE UNDER THE SEA**

Long ago, in Saint-Michel-en-Grève, there was a young man called Scouarn. He was a very handsome boy who passionately loved a local girl. She was beautiful, and her wealthy parents had no other children. Scouarn asked her to marry, but he was refused and expelled.

It was said in the country that a castle inhabited by a beautiful princess was retained at the bottom of the sea by evil spirits. The night of Saint-Jean, while the clock struck the twelve strokes of midnight, the sea opened, and the castle appeared to men bold enough to go on strike. If someone could have entered the castle and grabbed a magic wand that was in one of the apartments, they would have become the master of the princess and her riches. But if he didn't succeed, it was all over with him, he perished.

Scouarn resolved to attempt the adventure. On Saint-Jean night, he went on the shore. At the first stroke of midnight, the sea opened, and a beautiful castle lit by a thousand lights appeared to him. On the balcony was a beautiful princess who held out her arms to her and called her to help.

Without hesitation, he ran towards the castle. As he crossed the threshold, the sixth blow rang. The hard part was finding the wand. The princess called him in his sweetest voice, but he did not listen to her, and he continued his research. He put his hand on the wand when the vibrations of the last stroke of midnight were heard. With his wand, he ordered the sea to withdraw, and he drove out evil spirits from the castle. The princess was happy to be saved by such a handsome boy. They made a beautiful wedding to what is assured, and Scouarn, to thank Providence, had a chapel built at Saint-Michel. This chapel still exists.

#### **Spanish Translation**

#### **EL CASTILLO BAJO EL MAR**

Hace mucho tiempo, en Saint-Michel-en-Grève, había un joven llamado Scouarn. Era un chico muy guapo que amaba apasionadamente a una chica local. Era hermosa y sus ricos padres no tenían otros hijos.

Scouarn le pidió que se casara, pero fue rechazado y expulsado. A partir de ese momento no supo descansar más, y todos los días lo vimos dirigiendo la huelga de Saint-Michel.

Se dijo en el país que un castillo habitado por una bella princesa fue retenido en el fondo del mar por espíritus malignos. La noche de Saint-Jean, mientras el reloj daba las doce pinceladas de la medianoche, el mar se abrió y el castillo pareció a los hombres lo suficientemente valientes como para ir a la huelga. Si alguien pudiera haber entrado al castillo y agarrar una varita mágica que estaba en uno de los apartamentos, se habrían convertido en el amo de la princesa y sus riquezas. Pero si no tuvo éxito, todo terminó con él, pereció.

Scouarn resolvió intentar la aventura. En la noche de Saint-Jean fue a la orilla. Al primer golpe de medianoche, el mar se abrió y se le apareció un hermoso castillo iluminado por mil luces. En el balcón había una bella princesa que le tendió los brazos y la llamó para ayudarla.

Sin dudar, corrió hacia el castillo. Cuando cruzó el umbral, sonó el sexto golpe. Lo difícil fue encontrar la varita. La princesa lo llamó con su voz más dulce, pero él no lo escuchó y continuó su investigación. Puso su mano sobre la varita cuando se escucharon las vibraciones del último golpe de medianoche. Con su varita ordenó que se retirara el mar, y expulsó a los espíritus malignos del castillo. La princesa estaba feliz de ser salvada por un chico tan guapo. Hicieron una hermosa boda con lo que está asegurado, y Scouarn, para agradecer a Providence, hizo construir una capilla en Saint-Michel. Esta capilla aún existe.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

### **Spanish**

handsome

hermoso

rest

descanso

bottom



fondo  
clock  
reloj  
princess  
princesa  
shore  
apuntalar  
castle  
castillo  
vibration  
vibración  
boy  
chico  
wedding  
Boda

### **Questions**

- Did he get permission from the girl's parent to marry the girl he loved?
- What was the story behind the castle?
- What was the belief of people about the case "if anyone fails to enter the castle and grab the magic wand"?
- Did the boy get successful in entering and grabbing the magic wand?

### **Answer**

- Scouarn asked her to marry, but he was refused and expelled by the girl's parents.
- It was said in the country that a castle inhabited by a beautiful princess was retained at the bottom of the sea by evil spirits.
- If a person does not succeed then he will get caught into the castle
- Yes, he got successful and then married the princess.

### **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Obtuvo el permiso de los padres de la niña para casarse con la niña que amaba?
2. ¿Cuál fue la historia detrás del castillo?
3. ¿Qué creían las personas sobre el caso "si alguien no entra al castillo y agarra la varita mágica"?
4. ¿Tuvo éxito el niño al entrar y agarrar la varita mágica?

## **Answers Spanish**

1. Scouarn le pidió que se casara, pero los padres de la niña lo rechazaron y lo expulsaron.
2. Se dijo en el país que un castillo habitado por una bella princesa fue retenido en el fondo del mar por espíritus malignos.
3. Si una persona no tiene éxito, quedará atrapada en el castillo
4. Sí, tuvo éxito y luego se casó con la princesa.

## Story 2

### English

#### THE KING SUN - LOUIS XIV

King Louis XIV is too young to reign, so it is his mother, Anne of Austria, who becomes regent. She is assisted by Minister Jules Mazarin, a disciple of Cardinal de Richelieu. The nobles and the great of the time disapproved of Mazarin's influence and decided to rebel. They create an opposition movement which they will call La Fronde.

Fearing the wrath of Parisians, Anne of Austria decides to flee in the middle of the night with the King and his minister. But the French will then realize how much they love their King and demand his return. It will return to the cheers of the people!

Mazarin was a great minister; he taught young Louis XIV the art of governing. The King is very attentive to his appearance. He likes to shine and therefore works a lot on his image: as he is small, he puts on very high heels and wears a huge wig... as he is clumsy, he brings in the greatest teachers and becomes a wonderful dancer! All this staging will earn him the nickname of Sun King.

He created a spectacular courtyard in Versailles. The number of its guests goes from a hundred to 10,000! All the nobles want to be part of the King's Court and comply with all its requirements for this. What a clever strategist on the part of the King! All the great lords, formerly so formidable, become faithful servants.

This time again, the King has surrounded himself with a very good minister: Colbert. This one will restore the financial and economic situation of the Kingdom, by intervening in all the fields: industrial, agricultural, commercial, maritime, artistic... Fortunately that this excellent manager is there to control the crazy expenses of the King!

Louis XIV will still be the instigator of cruel acts and bloody wars. He is, first of all, a devout Catholic and does not tolerate any other religion. He will revoke the Edict of Nantes and force the Protestants to convert. He will also throw the Kingdom into endless wars.

But over time, the people will forget the errors of the Sun King. And we remember him today by the grandeur of Versailles and the marvelous feasts

of the Court.

## **Spanish Translation**

### **EL REY SOL - LOUIS XIV**

El rey Luis XIV es demasiado joven para reinar, por lo que es su madre Anne de Austria quien se convierte en regente. Ella es asistida por su ministro Jules Mazarin, discípulo del cardenal de Richelieu. Los nobles y los grandes de la época desaprobaron la influencia de Mazarin y decidieron rebelarse. Crean un movimiento de oposición al que llamarán La Fronde.

Temiendo la ira de los parisinos, Ana de Austria decide huir en medio de la noche con el Rey y su ministro. Pero los franceses se darán cuenta de cuánto aman a su Rey y exigirán su regreso. ¡Volverá a los vítores de la gente!

Mazarin fue un gran ministro, le enseñó al joven Luis XIV el arte de gobernar. El rey está muy atento a su apariencia. le gusta brillar y, por lo tanto, trabaja mucho en su imagen: como es pequeño, se pone tacones muy altos y usa una gran peluca ... como es torpe, ¡trae a los mejores maestros y se convierte en un bailarín maravilloso! Toda esta puesta en escena le hará ganar el apodo de Rey Sol.

Creó un espectacular patio en Versalles. ¡El número de sus invitados va de cien a 10.000! Todos los nobles quieren ser parte de la Corte del Rey y cumplir con todos sus requisitos para esto. ¡Qué estrategia inteligente por parte del Rey! Todos los grandes señores, antes tan formidables, se convierten en fieles servidores.

Esta vez, el Rey se ha rodeado de un muy buen ministro: Colbert. Éste restablecerá la situación financiera y económica del Reino, interviniendo en todos los campos: industrial, agrícola, comercial, marítimo, artístico ... ¡Afortunadamente, este excelente gerente está allí para controlar los locos gastos del Rey!

Luis XIV seguirá siendo el instigador de actos crueles y guerras sangrientas. Es ante todo un católico devoto y no tolera ninguna otra religión. Revocará el Edicto de Nantes y obligará a los protestantes a convertirse. También lanzará el Reino a guerras interminables.

Pero con el tiempo la gente olvidará los errores del Rey Sol. Y hoy lo recordamos por la grandeza de Versalles y las maravillosas fiestas de la corte.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

## **Spanish**

Restore

Restaurar

Servants

Servicio

Financial

Financiero

Strategist

Estratega

Spectacular

Espectacular

Versailles

Versalles

Formidable

Versalles

Comply

Cumplir

Clumsy

Torpe

Demand

Demanda

## **Questions**

- What did Anne of Austria decide in fear?
- What was the appearance of the king?
- Where did he create the courtyard?
- What strategy did the king apply to gather all of the nobles in his court?

## **Answer**

- Anne of Austria decides to flee in the middle of the night with the King and his minister.
- He was short, so he puts on very high heels and wears a huge wig.
- He created a spectacular courtyard in Versailles.
- He created a courtyard, and the number of its guests goes from a hundred to 10,000! All the nobles want to be part of the King's Court and comply with all its requirements for this.

## **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Qué decidió Ana de Austria con miedo?
2. ¿Cuál fue la apariencia del rey?
3. ¿Dónde creó el patio?
4. ¿Qué estrategia aplicó el rey para reunir a todos los nobles en su corte?

### **Answers Spanish**

1. Ana de Austria decide huir en medio de la noche con el rey y su ministro.
2. Tenía poca altura, se pone tacones muy altos y usa una peluca enorme.
3. Creó un espectacular patio en Versalles.
4. ¡Él creó un patio y el número de sus invitados va de cien a 10,000! Todos los nobles quieren ser parte de la Corte del Rey y cumplir con todos sus requisitos para esto.

## **Story 3**

### **English**

#### **THE LITTLE STORY OF THOMAS PESQUET**

Thomas Pesquet is a French astronaut who carried out a mission on the international space station in orbit around earth.

He worked in the aerospace industry and at the European space agency, then he was an airline pilot in 2004. He was one of the 6 participants selected to form the 1st group of European astronauts taken by CNES. It is the 10th Frenchman to go into space. After 7 years of training, he left for space. On November 17, 2016, the shuttle took off from the Baikonur Cosmodrome in Russia. After six months in space on the international space station, Thomas Pesquet finished his mission and returned to Earth on June 2, 2017. The astronaut could no longer walk on Earth because of the difference in gravity. He will have to relearn how to get used to Earth's gravity. In addition to having successfully completed his mission, Thomas Pesquet published and brought back from the space station wonderful photos of our world seen from space, to discover on his blog and his Twitter account.

### **Spanish Translation**

#### **LA PEQUEÑA HISTORIA DEL PESQUET DE THOMAS**

Thomas Pesquet es un astronauta francés que realizó una misión en la estación espacial internacional en órbita alrededor de la tierra. Misión en la estación espacial internacional que orbita la tierra.

Trabajó en la industria aeroespacial y en la agencia espacial europea, luego fue piloto de línea aérea en 2004. Fue uno de los 6 participantes seleccionados para formar el primer grupo de astronautas europeos capturados por CNES. Es el décimo francés en ir al espacio. Después de 7 años de entrenamiento, se fue al espacio. En noviembre 17, 2016 el transbordador despegó del cosmódromo de Baikonur en Rusia. Después de seis meses en el espacio en la estación espacial internacional, Thomas Pesquet terminó su misión y regresó a la Tierra el 2 de junio de 2017. El astronauta ya no podía caminar en la Tierra debido a la diferencia de gravedad. Tendrá que volver a aprender cómo acostumbrarse a la gravedad de la Tierra. Además de haber completado con éxito su misión, Thomas Pesquet

publicó y trajo de la estación espacial maravillosas fotos de nuestro mundo vistas desde el espacio, para descubrir en su blog y su cuenta de Twitter.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

### **Spanish**

Aerospace

Aerospatiale

Agency

Agencia

Orbiting

Orbital

Difference

Diferencia

Published

Publicado

Discover

Descubrir

Relearn

Reaprender

Astronaut

Astronauta

Brought

Trajo

Shuttle

Lanzadera

## **Questions**

- What is Thomas Pasquet?
- What was his work experience?
- What was his biggest achievement?
- What extraordinary thing did he do when he came back from space?

## **Answer**

- Thomas Pesquet is a French astronaut who carried out a mission on the international space station in orbit around earth. He worked in the aerospace industry and at the European space agency, then he was an



airline pilot in 2004.

- He was one of the 6 participants selected to form the 1st group of European astronauts taken by CNES.
- Thomas Pesquet published and brought back from the space station, wonderful photos of our world seen from space, to discover on his blog and his Twitter account.

### **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Qué es Thomas Pasquet?
2. ¿Cuál fue su experiencia laboral?
3. ¿Cuál fue su mayor logro?
4. ¿Qué cosa extra ordinaria hizo cuando regresó del espacio?

### **Answers Spanish**

1. Thomas Pesquet es un astronauta francés que realizó una misión en la estación espacial internacional en órbita alrededor de la tierra. Misión en la estación espacial internacional que orbita la tierra.
2. Trabajó en la industria aeroespacial y en la agencia espacial europea, luego fue piloto de línea aérea en 2004.
3. Fue uno de los 6 participantes seleccionados para formar el primer grupo de astronautas europeos tomados por CNES.
4. Thomas Pesquet publicó y trajo de la estación espacial, fotos maravillosas de nuestro mundo vistas desde el espacio, para descubrir en su blog y su cuenta de Twitter.

### **Story 4**

### **BEARD RED**

#### **English**

Redbeard had married seven times and had successively lost his wives after a short cleaning time. He lived ten years on good terms with the eighth, of whom he had two daughters and a boy. But at that time Redbeard took his wife in such hatred that he resolved to get rid of her.

One Sunday, when she was coming back from mass, he said to her:

- Jeanne, it's today that I'm going to kill you.

- Allow me, replied the woman, to take my wedding clothes, those with which I was married to you.

- So go up to your room, and hurry up, because I'm in a hurry.

Before she began to dress, she opened the door of the house to her little dog, to whom she put a letter in her ear for her brothers who lived a few leagues away.

Redbeard, meanwhile, sharpened his saber, repeating: I sharpen, I sharpen my knife,

To kill my wife upstairs.

- Are you ready, Jeanne? He shouted.

- No, I have only put my cotillion on underneath.

A few moments later, her husband, while repeating:

I sharpen, I sharpen my knife,

To kill my wife upstairs, I asked her for the second time if she was dressed.

- No, she said, I'm putting on my stockings.

- Are you ready? He repeated after a quarter of an hour.

- No, I comb my hair.

Half an hour later, Redbeard exclaimed:

- My knife is well sharpened; come down, or I'll get you.

- Wait a little longer; I'm going to take my big headdress.

As she attached pins to it, she looked out the window and saw several men on horseback on the road, to whom she made signs.

- For this time, exclaimed Redbeard, I'm going to go upstairs and do your business.

- I only have one pin left, and I'm going down.

A minute later, she said:

- I am ready.

And she slowly started to go down the stairs. As she arrived at the bottom, there was a knock on the door, and Redbeard hid in the corridor; but the troop leaders discovered him and killed him.

Jeanne left the house with her children, and, at the end of her mourning, she married one of the soldiers who had delivered her.

## **Spanish Translation**

### **BARBA ROJA**

Barbanegra se había casado siete veces y había perdido sucesivamente a sus esposas después de un corto tiempo de limpieza. Vivió diez años en buenos términos con el octavo, de quien tuvo dos hijas y un niño. Pero en ese momento Barba Roja tomó a su esposa con tanto odio que decidió deshacerse

de ella. Un domingo, cuando ella regresaba de misa, él le dijo:

- Jeanne, es hoy que te voy a matar.

- Permíteme, respondió la mujer, llevarme la ropa de mi boda, aquellas con las que me casé contigo.

- Así que sube a tu habitación y date prisa, porque tengo prisa.

Antes de comenzar a vestirse, abrió la puerta de la casa a su perrito, a quien le puso una carta en el oído para sus hermanos que vivían a pocas leguas.

Redbeard, mientras tanto, afiló su sable, repitiendo: afilo, afilo mi cuchillo, Matar a mi esposa arriba.

- ¿Estás lista, Jeanne? él gritó.

- No, solo he puesto mi cotillón debajo.

Unos momentos después, su esposo, mientras repite:

Afilo, afilo mi cuchillo,

Para matar a mi esposa arriba,

le pregunté por segunda vez si estaba vestida.

- No, dijo ella, me estoy poniendo las medias.

- Estás listo ? repitió después de un cuarto de hora.

- No, me peino.

Media hora después, Redbear exclamó:

- Mi cuchillo está bien afilado; baja o te atraparé.

- Espere un poco más; Me voy a llevar mi gran tocado. Mientras le sujetaba alfileres, miró por la ventana y vio a varios hombres a caballo en el camino, a quienes les hizo señas.

- Por esta vez, exclamó Barbanegra, voy a subir y hacer tus asuntos.

- Solo me queda un pin, y me voy a caer.

Un minuto después, ella dijo:

- Estoy listo.

Y lentamente comenzó a bajar las escaleras. Cuando llegó al fondo, llamaron a la puerta y Barbanegra se escondió en el pasillo; pero los líderes de la tropa lo descubrieron y lo mataron.

Jeanne salió de la casa con sus hijos y, al final de su duelo, se casó con uno de los soldados que la habían entregado.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

### **Spanish**

married  
casado  
clean  
limpiar  
wife  
esposa  
sharp  
agudo  
knife  
cuchillo  
stair  
escalera  
repeat  
repetir  
stock  
valores  
hour  
hora  
dress  
vestir

### **Questions**

- How many times did Redbeard marry?
- What wish did his wife make?
- How did the wife inform her brothers?
- What is the end of the story?

### **Answers**

- He married 8 times and was living with his 8th wife alive.
- The wife requested to allow her, wearing her wedding dress before she dies.
- She put some letters in dog ears, and from there, she sent signs to her brothers.
- He was killed by the troops with the help of the girl's brothers.

### **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Cuántas veces se casó Redbeard?
2. ¿Qué deseo hizo su esposa?

3. ¿Cómo informó la esposa a sus hermanos?
4. ¿Cuál es el final de la historia?

### **Answers Spanish**

1. Se casó 8 veces y vivía con su octava esposa.
2. La esposa pidió que se lo permitieran, vistiendo su vestido de novia antes de morir.
3. Puso una carta en orejas de perro y desde allí envió señales a sus hermanos.
4. Fue asesinado por las tropas con la ayuda de los hermanos de las niñas.

### **Story 5**

#### **English**

#### **THE HOOD HAS GONE**

Christmas day was going very well until Santa discovered he no longer had his hood.

Santa Claus was confused; he didn't know what to do until his elf Rudolf told him what to do. The father did what Rudolf told him. So he went to see if it was stored in her room, but she was not there.

He looked everywhere except in his studio. It was a short break to reflect. He prepared his reindeer for the delivery of gifts. His red-nosed reindeer asked him what Santa Claus had.

Father Christmas replied:

- I can't find my hood anymore.
- What should I do?
- Did you look at your workshop?
- No, said Santa Claus.
- Wait, I'll help you, said the reindeer.

- Thank you, said Santa Claus.

The two then went to see where Santa's hood was, but they hadn't found anything until Santa remembered where he had put it.

- But that I am stupid, I put it in the cupboard which is in my workshop.

- I have a key for this wardrobe.

The reindeer was very proud to have found Santa's hood, and the story ends with the delivery of gifts.

## **Spanish Translation**

### **La capucha se ha ido**

El día de Navidad iba muy bien hasta que Santa descubrió que ya no tenía su capucha.

Santa Claus estaba confundido, no sabía qué hacer hasta que su elfo Rudolf le dijo qué hacer. El padre hizo lo que Rudolf le dijo. Entonces fue a ver si estaba guardado en su habitación, pero ella no estaba allí.

Miró a todas partes excepto en su estudio. Fue un breve descanso para reflexionar. Preparó a sus renos para la entrega de regalos. Su reno de nariz roja le preguntó qué tenía Santa Claus.

Papá Noel respondió:

- Ya no puedo encontrar mi capucha.

- Qué tengo que hacer ?

- ¿Buscaste en tu taller?

- No, dijo Papá Noel.

- Espera, te ayudaré, dijo el reno.

- Gracias, dijo Papá Noel.

Luego los dos fueron a ver dónde estaba la capucha de Santa, pero no habían encontrado nada hasta que Santa recordó dónde la había puesto.

- Pero que soy estúpido lo puse en el armario que está en mi taller.

- Tengo una llave para este armario.

El reno estaba muy orgulloso de haber encontrado la capucha de Santa y la historia termina con la entrega de regalos.

## **Vocabulary**

## **English**

### **Spanish**

confuse

confundir

father

padre

room

habitación

window

ventana

ride

paseo

road

la carretera

time

hora

knock

golpe

door

puerta

slowly

despacio

### **Questions**

- What did Santa misplace at Christmas?
- Who helped Santa in finding his hood?
- Where did he find the hood?

### **Answers**

- He misplaced his hood.
- Elf Rudolf helped Santa by telling him where to find his hood.
- He found his hood in the cupboard.

### **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Qué extravió Santa en Navidad?
2. ¿Quién ayudó a Santa a encontrar su capucha?
3. ¿Dónde encontró la capucha?

## **Answers Spanish**

1. Se extravió la capucha.
2. El elfo Rudolf ayudó a Santa diciéndole dónde encontrar su capucha.
3. Encontró su capucha en el armario.



## CHAPTER 2- INTERMEDIATE STORIES

---

e

### Story 1

#### English

#### THE MANGA

The manga is a Japanese comic strip. It is for Japan what comics are for Europe or comics for the United States. The manga is distinguished from other comics by its rate of production, which is faster, and by its direction of reading, which is the opposite of that of Western comics. Indeed we take the book upside down, we turn the pages from right to left, and we also read from right to left. This sense of reading is adapted to the basic language of the manga, Japanese, which can also be read in this sense. The word manga "漫画" already existed in the Japanese language in the 19th century: it then meant drawing or sketch. Mangas are very fashionable today, accounting for 22% of comic book purchases in France. They are also represented in the form of anime, which is to say, a cartoon with the drawing style of manga. They are found on major French TV channels but also online on the internet.

#### CHARACTERISTICS OF MANGA

The manga is in black and white and has a lot of plates (pages). They are traditionally read from right to left. They are different from European comics by dynamic drawings, very expressive faces, almost caricatured (big eyes, for example) and the use of codes and sounds to describe the story, we can also see it in the smileys : (> <' \_-> - <(O ^ O) °. ° \*). The framing is very worked, and the drawings are incredibly precise. Authors often hide small details

#### MANGA STYLES

There are different types of manga, depending on the story told. The most popular is Shonen. These are manga for young boys who aim to develop their sense of courage. We find, for example, Dragon Ball, Bleach, Naruto, One Piece, Death Note, GTO, Attack on Titan, One Punch Man...

The Shojo is a manga aimed at young girls. It is the equivalent of Shonen but is intended for a more female audience. We tackle themes like school, music,

sport, and fashion with very often love stories. The best known are Tokyo Mew Mew, Fruit Basket, Nana.

The Komodo are them for an audience of young children with, for example, Astro Boy, Pokemon, Hamtaro... The anime also has its place in the world of manga. This is the case, for example, of the films by Hayao Miyazaki with the Castle in the Sky, Princess Mononoke, the voyage of Chihiro. We also find Ghost in the Shell. The anime uses the same drawings and the same codes as the manga, but it takes place in the film.

There are many other styles of manga, for all genres and all audiences.

#### EXAMPLES OF FAMOUS MANGAS

One of the most famous manga is called Dragon Ball; it traces the story of a Saiyan (human with a monkey tail), a phenomenal force, and an extraordinary naivety: Son Goku.

This one lives full of adventures (based on martial arts) and fights with "super villains" all as surprising as each other: a little alien all white and pink with multiple transformations named "Freezer" or even a rapidly changing organic cyborg (which is not a machine) named "Cell," aliens from its planet, a pink demon named "Boo," etc. Dragon Ball is a good series for beginners in manga who want to learn to read from right to left.

Detective Conan (Meitantei Konan) is a manga from Gōshō Aoyama. It is one of the most famous manga in Japan and Asia.

It tells the story of a high school detective Shinichi Kudô, he is an intelligent and very gifted young man who has solved many difficult investigations for the police. One day, when he goes out with his best friend, Ran Mouri, in an amusement park, he notices the strange behavior of two men who dress entirely in black. Out of curiosity and intuition, he follows them and discovers their illegal trade. However, one of the men finds out and forces him to drink poison. They believe that Shinichi is dead and leave. When Shinichi wakes up, he realizes that his body becomes that of a child. To find the men in black and become Shinichi Kudô again, he gave himself another name, Conan Edogawa, and took refuge with Ran, whose father is also a detective. The adventures begin.

The only people who know his true identity are Professor Agasa, Aï Haibara, and Heiji.

#### **Spanish Translation**

#### **EL MANGA**

El manga es una tira cómica japonesa. Es para Japón lo que los cómics son para Europa o los cómics para Estados Unidos. El manga se distingue de otros cómics por su velocidad de producción, que es más rápida, y por su dirección de lectura, que es lo opuesto a la de los cómics occidentales. De hecho, tomamos el libro al revés, pasamos las páginas de derecha a izquierda y también leemos de derecha a la izquierda. Este sentido de lectura se adapta al idioma básico del manga, japonés, que también se puede leer en este sentido. La palabra manga " 漫画 " ya existía en el idioma japonés en el siglo XIX: significaba dibujo o boceto. Los mangas están muy de moda hoy, representando el 22% de las compras de cómics en Francia. También están representados en forma de anime, es decir, dibujos animados con el estilo de dibujo del manga. Se encuentran en los principales canales de televisión franceses, pero también en línea en Internet. .

### CARACTERÍSTICAS DEL MANGA

Los manga son en blanco y negro y tienen muchas placas (páginas). Se leen tradicionalmente de derecha a izquierda. Son diferentes de los cómics europeos por dibujos dinámicos, caras muy expresivas, casi caricaturescas (ojos grandes, por ejemplo) y el uso de códigos y sonidos para describir la historia, también podemos verlo en los emoticonos: (> <' \_ -> - <(O ^ O) °. ° \*). El encuadre está muy trabajado y los dibujos son increíblemente precisos. Los autores a menudo esconden pequeños detalles

### ESTILOS DE MANGA

Hay diferentes tipos de manga dependiendo de la historia contada. El más popular es el Shonen. Estos son manga para niños que buscan desarrollar su sentido de coraje. Encontramos, por ejemplo, Dragon Ball, Bleach, Naruto, One Piece, Death Note, GTO, Attack on Titan, One Punch Man ...

El Shojo es un manga dirigido a chicas jóvenes. Es el equivalente de Shonen, pero está destinado a un público más femenino. Abordamos temas como la escuela, la música, el deporte, la moda con muy a menudo historias de amor. Los más conocidos son Tokyo Mew Mew, Fruit Basket, Nana ...

Los Komodo son para una audiencia de niños pequeños con, por ejemplo, Astro Boy, Pokemon, Hamtaro ... El anime también tiene Su lugar en el mundo del manga. Este es el caso, por ejemplo, de las películas de Hayao Miyazaki con el Castillo en el cielo, la princesa Mononoke, el viaje de Chihiro. También encontramos Ghost in the Shell. El anime usa los mismos dibujos y los mismos códigos que el manga, pero tiene lugar en la película.

Hay muchos otros estilos de manga, para todos los géneros y todos los

públicos.

## EJEMPLOS DE MANGAS FAMOSOS

Uno de los manga más famosos se llama Dragon Ball; Traza la historia de un Saiyan (humano con cola de mono), una fuerza fenomenal y una ingenuidad extraordinaria: Son Goku.

Este vive lleno de aventuras (basadas en artes marciales) y peleas con "súper villanos", todo tan sorprendente como el otro: un pequeño alienígena todo blanco y rosa con múltiples transformaciones llamado "Congelador" o incluso un cyborg orgánico que cambia rápidamente (que es no una máquina) llamada "Cell", extraterrestres de su planeta, un demonio rosa llamado "Boo", etc. Dragon Ball es una buena serie para principiantes en manga que quieren aprender a leer de derecha a izquierda.

El detective Conan (Meitantei Konan) es un manga de Gōshō Aoyama. Es uno de los manga más famosos de Japón y Asia.

Cuenta la historia del detective de la escuela secundaria Shinichi Kudō, él es un joven inteligente y muy talentoso que ha resuelto muchas investigaciones difíciles para la policía. Un día, cuando sale con su mejor amigo, Ran Mouri, en un parque de diversiones, nota el extraño comportamiento de dos hombres que se visten completamente de negro. Por curiosidad e intuición, los sigue y descubre su comercio ilegal. Sin embargo, uno de los hombres se entera y lo obliga a beber veneno. Creen que Shinichi está muerto y se van. Cuando Shinichi se despierta, se da cuenta de que su cuerpo se convierte en el de un niño. Para encontrar a los hombres de negro y volver a ser Shinichi Kudō, se dio otro nombre, Conan Edogawa, y se refugió con Ran, cuyo padre también es detective. Las aventuras comienzan .....

Las únicas personas que conocen su verdadera identidad son: el profesor Agasa, Aï Haibara y Heiji.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

### **Spanish**

Distinguished

Distinguido

Production

Producción

Accounting

Contabilidad  
Purchases  
Compras  
Drawing  
Dibujo  
Fashionable  
De moda  
Represented  
Representado  
Expressive  
Expresivo  
Caricatured  
Caricaturizado  
Framing  
Enmarcado

### **Questions**

- What is the difference between manga and comics
- What are the characteristics of Manga?
- Which manga styles are mentioned above?

### **Answers**

- The manga is distinguished from other comics by its rate of production, which is faster, and by its direction of reading, which is the opposite of that of Western comics.
- The manga is in black and white and has a lot of plates (pages). They are traditionally read from right to left. They are different from European comics by dynamic drawings, very expressive faces, almost caricatured
- There are different types of manga, depending on the story told. The most popular is Shonen.

### **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Cuál es la diferencia entre manga y comics?
2. ¿Cuáles son las características del manga?
3. ¿Qué estilos de manga se mencionan anteriormente?

### **Answers Spanish**

1. El manga se distingue de otros cómics por su velocidad de producción, que

es más rápida, y por su dirección de lectura, que es lo opuesto a la de los cómics occidentales.

2. Los manga son en blanco y negro y tienen muchas placas (páginas). Se leen tradicionalmente de derecha a izquierda. Son diferentes de los cómics europeos por dibujos dinámicos, caras muy expresivas, casi caricaturizadas.

3. Existen diferentes tipos de manga dependiendo de la historia contada. El más popular es el Shonen.

## **Story 2**

### **English**

#### **THE LITTLE GIRL WITH MATCHES**

It was frightfully cold; it had been snowing since morning; it was already dark; the evening was approaching, the evening of the last day of the year. In the midst of the gusts, in this freezing cold, a poor little girl was walking in the street: she had nothing on her head, she was barefoot. When she left the house in the morning, she had old slippers that were far too big for her. So she lost them when she had to flee before a line of cars; cars are gone, she searched after her shoes; a bad kid ran away carrying one of the slippers laughing; the other had been completely crushed.

Here is the unhappy child having nothing left to shelter her poor little feet. In her old apron, she carried matches: she held a packet in her hand. But, this day, on New Year's Eve, everyone was busy; in this dreadful weather, no one stopped to consider the pleading look of the pitying little girl. The day was ending, and she hadn't sold a single pack of matches yet. Trembling with cold and hunger, she dragged herself from street to street.

Snowflakes covered her long blond hair. Lights shone from all the windows: from almost all the houses came a delicious smell, that of the goose, which was roasted for the evening feast: it was New Year's Eve. That, yes, that made him stop his wandering steps.

Finally, after having offered his packet of matches for the last time in vain, the child saw a corner between two houses, one of which protruded slightly from the other. Harassed, she sits there and huddles there, pulling her little feet to herself: but she shivers and shivers even more than before, and yet she dares not go home. She would not bring back the smallest change, and her

father would beat her.

The child had his little handcuffs all frozen. "If I took a match, she said to herself, only one to warm my fingers?" That is what she did. What a wonderful flame it was! Suddenly it seemed to the little girl that she was in front of a large cast-iron stove, decorated with copper ornaments. The little girl was going to extend her feet to warm them, when the little flame went out suddenly: the stove disappeared, and the child remained there, holding in his hand a small piece of half-burnt wood. She struck a second match: the light was projected on the wall, which became transparent. Behind, the table was set: it was covered with a beautiful white tablecloth, on which shone superb porcelain crockery. In the middle was a magnificent roast goose, surrounded by applesauce: and now the beast sets in motion and, with a knife and a fork fixed in its chest, comes to present itself before the poor little one. And then nothing: the flame goes out.

The child takes the third match, and she is transported near a splendid Christmas tree. A thousand colored candles shone on its green branches: a multitude of wonders hung from all sides. The little girl stretched out her hand to grasp the less beautiful: the match goes out. The tree seems to rise towards the sky, and its candles become stars: there is one who detaches and which descends towards the earth, leaving a trail of fire.

"Here is someone who is going to die," said the little girl to herself. Her old grandmother, the only being who had loved and cherished her, and who had died not long ago, had told her that when you see a star that flies, on the other hand, a soul rises towards paradise. She struck a match again: a great light spread, and before the child stood the old grandmother.

- Grandmother cried the little one, grandmother, take me. Oh! You will leave me when the match is out: you will pass out like the stove so hot, the superb roast goose, the splendid Christmas tree. Stay, please, or take me away.

And the child lit a new match, and then another, and finally the whole package, to see the good grandmother as long as possible. The grandmother took the little one in her arms, and she carried her high, in a place where there was no longer any cold, no hunger, and no sorrow: it was before the throne of God. The next morning, however, the passers-by found the little girl's body in the corner; her cheeks were red; she seemed to smile; she had died of cold during the night, which had brought so many joys and pleasures. She held in her little hand, stiffened, the burnt remains of a bundle of matches.

- What nonsense! Said a heartless. How could she believe it would warm her

up? Others shed tears on the child; is that they did not know all the beautiful things she had seen on New Year's Eve, it is that they did not know that, if she had suffered well, she was now tasting in the arms of her grand- sweetest mother congratulated.

### **Spanish Translation**

## **LA NIÑA CON LOS PARTIDOS**

Hacía mucho frío; había estado nevando desde la mañana; ya estaba oscuro; se acercaba la tarde, la tarde del último día del año. En medio de las ráfagas, en este frío helado, una pobre niña caminaba por la calle: no tenía nada en la cabeza, estaba descalza. Cuando salió de la casa por la mañana, tenía unas zapatillas viejas que eran demasiado grandes para ella. Entonces los perdió cuando tuvo que huir ante una fila de autos; los autos se fueron, ella buscó sus zapatos; un niño malo se escapó con una de las zapatillas riéndose; el otro había sido completamente aplastado.

Aquí está la niña infeliz a la que no le queda nada para proteger a sus pobres pies. En su viejo delantal, llevaba fósforos: sostenía un paquete en la mano. Pero, este día, en la víspera de Año Nuevo, todos estaban ocupados; En este clima terrible, nadie se detuvo a considerar la mirada suplicante de la niña compasiva. El día estaba terminando y todavía no había vendido un solo paquete de fósforos. Temblando de frío y hambre, se arrastró de calle en calle.

Los copos de nieve cubrían su largo cabello rubio. Las luces brillaban desde todas las ventanas: de casi todas las casas llegaba un olor delicioso, el del ganso, que fue asado para la fiesta de la noche: era la víspera de Año Nuevo. Eso, sí, eso lo hizo detener sus pasos errantes.

Finalmente, después de haber ofrecido su paquete de fósforos por última vez en vano, el niño vio una esquina entre dos casas, una de las cuales sobresalía ligeramente de la otra. Acosada, se sienta allí y se acurruca allí, tirando de sus pequeños pies para sí misma: pero tiembla y tiembla aún más que antes y, sin embargo, no se atreve a irse a casa. Ella no traería el cambio más pequeño, y su padre la golpearía.

El niño tenía sus esposas congeladas. "Si tomo una cerilla, se dijo, ¿solo una para calentar mis dedos?" Eso es lo que ella hizo. ¡Qué llama tan maravillosa! De repente, a la niña le pareció que estaba frente a una gran estufa de hierro fundido, decorada con adornos de cobre. La niña iba a extender los pies para calentarlos, cuando la pequeña llama se apagó de repente: la estufa



desapareció y el niño permaneció allí, sosteniendo en su mano un pequeño pedazo de madera medio quemada. Encendió un segundo fósforo: la luz se proyectó en la pared que se volvió transparente. Detrás, la mesa estaba puesta: estaba cubierta con un hermoso mantel blanco, sobre el cual brillaba una soberbia vajilla de porcelana. En el medio había un magnífico ganso asado, rodeado de puré de manzana: y ahora la bestia se pone en movimiento y, con un cuchillo y un tenedor en su pecho, se presenta ante el pobre pequeño. Y luego nada: la llama se apaga.

La niña toma un tercer fósforo y es transportada cerca de un espléndido árbol de Navidad. Mil velas de colores brillaban Sus ramas verdes: una multitud de maravillas colgaban de todos lados. La niña extendió la mano para agarrar a la menos bella: se apaga el fósforo. El árbol parece elevarse hacia el cielo y sus velas se convierten en estrellas: hay una que se desprende y desciende hacia la tierra, dejando un rastro de fuego.

"Aquí hay alguien que va a morir", se dijo la niña. Su vieja abuela, el único ser que la había amado y apreciado, y que había muerto hace poco, le había dicho que cuando ve una estrella que vuela, por otro lado, un alma se eleva hacia el paraíso. Encendió una cerilla de nuevo: una gran luz se extendió y antes de que el niño se parara la abuela.

- Abuela, gritó la pequeña, abuela, llévame. Oh! me dejarás cuando termine el partido: te desmayarás como la estufa tan caliente, el magnífico ganso asado, el espléndido árbol de Navidad. Quédate, por favor, o llévame lejos.

Y el niño encendió un nuevo fósforo, y luego otro, y finalmente todo el paquete, para ver a la abuela el mayor tiempo posible. La abuela tomó a la pequeña en sus brazos y la llevó en alto, en un lugar donde ya no había frío, hambre ni pena: estaba ante el trono de Dios. A la mañana siguiente, sin embargo, los transeúntes encontraron el cuerpo de la niña en la esquina; sus mejillas estaban rojas, parecía sonreír; ella había muerto de frío, durante la noche que había traído tantas alegrías y placeres. Sostuvo en su manita, rígida, los restos quemados de un fajo de fósforos.

- ¡Qué absurdo! dijo un despiadado. ¿Cómo podía creer que eso la calentaría? Otros derraman lágrimas sobre el niño; es que no sabían todas las cosas hermosas que había visto en la víspera de Año Nuevo, es que no sabían que, si ella había sufrido bien, ahora estaba saboreando en los brazos de su más dulce madre felicitada.

## **Vocabulary**

## **English**

### **Spanish**

Possible

Posible

Whole

Todo

Hunger

Hambre

Sorrow

Dolor

Seemed

Parecía

Roast

Parecía

Stove

Estufa

Suffered

Sufrido

Tasting

Saboreo

Stiffened

Rigido

### **Questions**

- What time of the day is being discussed in the story?
- What was the little girl doing?
- What happened to the girl at the end of the story?

### **Answers**

- It was frightfully cold; it had been snowing since morning; it was already dark; the evening was approaching, the evening of the last day of the year.
- She was selling matches, but no one purchased from her till the end of the day.
- She died of cold in the end.

### **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿A qué hora del día se discute en la historia?
2. ¿Qué estaba haciendo la niña?
3. ¿Qué le pasó a la niña al final de la historia?

### **Answers Spanish**

1. Hacía mucho frío; había estado nevando desde la mañana; ya estaba oscuro; se acercaba la tarde, la tarde del último día del año.
2. Estaba vendiendo fósforos pero nadie le compró hasta el final del día.
3. Ella murió de frío al final.

### Story 3

#### English

#### **THE FLY WHO WANTED TO BE A BUTTERFLY**

Once upon a time, there was a little fly that lived with its family in a moldy apple at the foot of a large apple tree. The little fly had never gone far from her home because she was happy with her family.

It must be said that there was never anyone passing by this apple tree, perhaps from time to time, an ant or two who were too busy working to take the time to greet the Mouche family.

On a beautiful summer day, the little fly was basking in the sun on the top of its rotten apple, watching the clouds move slowly in the blue sky. When suddenly, "Flip! Flap!". Now the little fly would have sworn to hear something.

Flip! Flap! It was a beautiful butterfly; she had never seen a fly in her life.

The butterfly was of all colors; its wings were huge and golden, dotted with red, turquoise blue, and purple spots. Each wing was adorned in its center with a large intense black circle, itself surrounded by brilliant green.

The little fly couldn't believe its faceted eyes; this newcomer was so beautiful! She did not think that wings could have colors; she had always thought that all the other flying animals of the earth had wings like hers, small, thin, and transparent.

The butterfly then spoke to him: "Hello," he said, "I think I got lost under this apple tree, could you tell me the direction of the forest?"

The little fly had certainly never left her home, but she knew the direction of the forest well, having often seen her parents take it. Without saying a word, she pointed the way to the butterfly. She would have liked to ask him tons of Questions Spanish to know how he had done to have such pretty wings, but she was so dazzled by the beauty of the butterfly that she couldn't speak anymore

The butterfly thanked her and took off for a light flight towards the forest. The little fly told her family nothing about this experience, and a few days passed. However, she couldn't forget the butterfly. To tell the truth, she thought about it constantly, from morning to evening, and even at night.

How ugly she felt when she thought of him, with her golden wings that

sparkled in the summer sun!

So one fine morning, she decided to leave to become a butterfly. She naturally took the path to the forest.

Unfortunately, it is not easy for a little fly to become a butterfly; it is even impossible. And she noticed it very quickly. All the animals she met repeated to her the same thing: it was impossible.

So she thought she could find a way to become as beautiful as he was.

She had arrived in the forest without even realizing it.

On the edge of a path, she found a blueberry bush. She chose a very juicy one, which she crushed on her wings to give them a bluish tint. The result pleased him very much! But she still had the image of the butterfly in mind, and one color was not enough! So she continued on her way.

Further on, a few carefully selected poppies served her to add a pretty bright red on the edge of her wings, which she completed with the golden yellow of different pollens.

For green, she rolled in the fresh grass. All these beautiful colors made her happy, but it did not match those of the butterfly, she needed something else.

Hours passed, and the little fly was constantly finding other colors to add. Pink, purple, orange, dark blue ... In the end, it was no longer just his wings, but also his whole body and head that were adorned with all the colors of the rainbow. But one detail was missing; she was not fully satisfied.

Then she remembered the flickering of the butterfly. That was it; he needed a color that shines, that sparkles in the light!

She continued on her way and ended up reaching a pretty river. This is where he needed it.

On the shore, she could distinguish tons of small stones. The smallest was not the size of a grain of salt, and all were silver and shone brightly.

Very happy, the little fly reached the shore and rolled happily in the silver dust. When she was finished, she was impatient to fly over the treetops to admire the result in full sun; she knew it would be great!

But ... the little fly had not thought for a moment that the weight of all these colors on its fragile wings would become very bulky. And when it flew away, it lost its balance, swirled, and splashed, fell heavily into the river.

Fortunately, she did not drown. She woke up lying on a leaf; butterflies stood all around her and looked at her attentively. They were very numerous, and all with wings similar to the first she had met a few days earlier.

How disappointed she was when she saw that the water in the river had

removed all the pretty colors on her wings! So she started to cry. - Why are you crying? Asked one of the butterflies. We saved you from drowning; you don't risk anything now.

- My wings have lost all their beautiful colors, explained the little fly. I am so sad!

The butterfly looked very surprised; it seemed to not understand.

- But, he said, your wings are beautiful, we have never seen such! And many of us would like to have the same ones, look as the light passes through, they are so fine and elegant that they seem invisible! Our wings are opaque and heavy, and you never really know how to put them on when you're not using them! And to sleep, they are not practical; you must constantly be careful not to crease them because they are fragile. Ah, really, I envy you!

The little fly then looked at its wings in which the sun was reflecting. The light that passed through it was deflected and formed multitudes of small geometric designs next to it. The designs changed shape when it flapped its wings. She was happy not to have the heavy and bulky wings of butterflies, and she understood that her wings were also magnificent, but of a different beauty from those of butterflies.

And it was with a light heart that she went home to find her family, not only was she happy to be a little fly, but she had also discovered the world. She promised herself to go out of her house more often to discover new things, and she became very friendly with butterflies.

### **Spanish Translation**

#### **LA MOSCA QUE QUERÍA SER UNA MARIPOSA**

Érase una vez una pequeña mosca que vivía con su familia en una manzana mohosa al pie de un gran manzano. La pequeña mosca nunca se había alejado mucho de su hogar, porque estaba feliz con su familia.

Hay que decir que nunca había nadie pasando por este manzano, tal vez de vez en cuando una hormiga o dos que estaban demasiado ocupados trabajando para tomarse el tiempo de saludar a la familia Mouche.

En un hermoso día de verano, la pequeña mosca estaba tomando el sol en la cima de su manzana podrida, observando las nubes moverse lentamente en el cielo azul. Cuando de repente "Flip! Flap!". Ahora la pequeña mosca habría jurado escuchar algo.

¡Dar la vuelta! ¡Solapa! Era una hermosa mariposa, nunca había visto una mosca en su vida.

La mariposa era de todos los colores, sus alas eran enormes y doradas, salpicadas de manchas rojas, azul turquesa y moradas. Cada ala estaba adornada en su centro con un gran círculo negro intenso, rodeado de un verde brillante.

La pequeña mosca no podía creer sus ojos facetados, ¡esta recién llegada era tan hermosa! No creía que las alas pudieran tener colores, siempre había pensado que todos los demás animales voladores de la tierra tenían alas como las suyas, pequeñas, delgadas y transparentes.

La mariposa luego le habló: "Hola", dijo, "Creo que me perdí debajo de este manzano, ¿podría decirme la dirección del bosque?"

La pequeña mosca ciertamente nunca había salido de su casa, pero conocía bien la dirección del bosque, ya que a menudo había visto a sus padres tomarla. Sin decir una palabra, señaló el camino hacia la mariposa. Le hubiera gustado hacerle un montón de preguntas para saber cómo había hecho para tener alas tan bonitas, pero la belleza de la mariposa la deslumbró tanto que ya no pudo hablar más.

La mariposa le dio las gracias y emprendió un vuelo ligero hacia el bosque. La pequeña mosca no le dijo nada a su familia sobre esta experiencia, y pasaron unos días. Sin embargo, no podía olvidar a la mariposa. A decir verdad, lo pensaba constantemente, desde la mañana hasta la tarde, e incluso por la noche.

¡Qué fea se sentía cuando pensaba en él, con sus alas doradas que brillaban bajo el sol de verano!

Entonces, una buena mañana, decidió irse para convertirse en una mariposa. Ella naturalmente tomó el camino hacia el bosque.

Desafortunadamente, no es fácil para una pequeña mosca convertirse en mariposa, incluso es imposible. Y ella lo notó muy rápido. Todos los animales que conoció le repitieron lo mismo: era imposible.

Entonces pensó que podría encontrar una manera de volverse tan hermosa como él.

Había llegado al bosque sin siquiera darse cuenta.

Al borde de un camino, encontró un arbusto de arándanos. Ella eligió una muy jugosa que aplastó en sus alas para darles un tinte azulado. ¡El resultado lo complació mucho! Pero todavía tenía en mente la imagen de la mariposa, ¡y un color no era suficiente! Entonces ella continuó su camino.

Más adelante, algunas amapolas cuidadosamente seleccionadas le sirvieron para agregar un rojo bastante brillante en el borde de sus alas, que completó

con amarillo dorado de diferentes pólenes.

Para el verde, rodó en la hierba fresca. Todos estos hermosos colores la hacían feliz, pero no coincidía con los de la mariposa, ella necesitaba algo más.

Pasaron las horas y la pequeña mosca estaba constantemente encontrando otros colores para agregar. Rosa, morado, naranja, azul oscuro ... Al final, ya no eran solo sus alas, sino también todo su cuerpo y cabeza adornados con todos los colores del arcoíris. Pero faltaba un detalle, no estaba completamente satisfecha.

Entonces recordó el parpadeo de la mariposa. Eso fue todo, ¡necesitaba un color que brille, que brille en la luz!

Ella continuó su camino y terminó llegando a un hermoso río. Aquí es donde lo necesitaba.

En la orilla, podía distinguir toneladas de pequeñas piedras. Los más pequeños no eran del tamaño de un grano de sal, y todos eran plateados y brillaban intensamente.

Muy feliz, la pequeña mosca llegó a la orilla y rodó alegremente en el polvo plateado. Cuando terminó, estaba impaciente por volar sobre las copas de los árboles para admirar el resultado a pleno sol, ¡sabía que sería genial!

Pero ... la pequeña mosca no había pensado por un momento que el peso de todos estos colores en sus frágiles alas se volviera muy voluminoso. Y cuando se fue volando, perdió el equilibrio, se arremolinó y salpicó, cayó pesadamente al río.

Afortunadamente ella no se ahogó. Se despertó acostada sobre una hoja, las mariposas la rodeaban y la miraban atentamente. Eran muy numerosos, y todos con alas similares a la primera que había conocido unos días antes.

¡Qué decepcionada estaba cuando vio que el agua del río había eliminado todos los bonitos colores de sus alas! Entonces ella comenzó a llorar. - ¿Por qué estás llorando? preguntó una de las mariposas. Te salvamos de ahogarte, ahora no arriesgas nada.

- Mis alas han perdido todos sus hermosos colores, explicó la pequeña mosca, ¡estoy tan triste!

La mariposa parecía muy sorprendida, parecía no entender.

- Pero, dijo, tus alas son hermosas, ¡nunca las hemos visto! Y a muchos de nosotros nos gustaría tener los mismos, mira a medida que pasa la Luz, ¡son tan finos y elegantes que parecen invisibles! Nuestras alas son opacas y pesadas, ¡y nunca sabes cómo ponertelas cuando no las estás usando! Y para



dormir, no son prácticos, siempre debes tener cuidado de no arrugarlos, porque son frágiles. Ah, realmente te envidio!

La pequeña mosca miró entonces sus alas en las que se reflejaba el sol. La luz que lo atravesaba se desviaba y formaba multitudes de pequeños diseños geométricos a su lado. Los diseños cambiaron de forma cuando batió sus alas. Estaba feliz de no tener las alas pesadas y voluminosas de las mariposas, y entendió que sus alas también eran magníficas, pero de una belleza diferente a las de las mariposas.

Y fue con un corazón ligero que fue a su casa para encontrar a su familia, no solo estaba feliz de ser una pequeña mosca, sino que también había descubierto el mundo. Se prometió a sí misma salir de su casa más a menudo para descubrir cosas nuevas y se hizo muy amigable con las mariposas.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

#### **Spanish**

butterfly

mariposa

fly

mosca

color

color

satisfy

satisfacer

color

color

size

Talla

salt

sal

impatient

impaciente

heart

corazón

invisible

invisible

## Questions

- Where did fly live?
- What was the appearance of the butterfly?
- What did the butterfly ask from fly?

## Answers

- It lived with its family in a moldy apple at the foot of a large apple tree
- The butterfly was of all colors; its wings were huge and golden, dotted with red, turquoise blue, and purple spots. Each wing was adorned in its center with a large intense black circle, itself surrounded by brilliant green.
- Did butterfly ask for the direction of the forest?

## Questions Spanish

1. ¿Dónde vivió volar?
2. ¿Cuál era la apariencia de butterfly?
3. ¿Qué le pidió la mariposa a la mosca?

## Answers Spanish

1. Vivía con su familia en una manzana mohosa al pie de un gran manzano
2. La mariposa era de todos los colores, sus alas eran enormes y doradas, salpicadas de manchas rojas, azules turquesas y púrpuras. Cada ala estaba adornada en su centro con un gran círculo negro intenso, rodeado de un verde brillante.
3. ¿Butterfly preguntó por la dirección del bosque?

## Story 4

### English

#### A Brave Girl

A wealthy man had a wife who fell ill; and when she felt her imminent end, she called her only daughter to her bedside and said to her:

- Dear child, stay good and pious, and the good Lord will always help you, and I, from the sky, I will look at you and protect you.

Then she closed her eyes and died. The little girl went to her mother's grave every day, wept, and remained good and pious. When winter comes, snow covers the grave with a white carpet. But in the spring, when the sun had

melted it, the man took another woman.

The woman had brought with her two daughters, who were pretty and white in the face, but ugly and black in the heart. Then very bad days began for the poor daughter-in-law.

Should this little goose stay with us in the room? They said. Whoever wants to eat bread must earn it. Come on, slut!

They took off her beautiful clothes, dressed her in an old gray apron, and gave her wooden clogs. "Take a look at the proud princess, how she is dressed up!" They cried, laughing, and led her to the kitchen. So he had to do hard work from morning to evening, get up well before daylight, carry water, light the fire, cook, and do the laundry. In addition, the two sisters made her every imaginable misery, made fun of her, spilled peas and lentils in the ash, so that she had to start sorting them again. In the evening, when she was exhausted from work, she did not sleep in a bed but had to lie near the fireplace in the ashes. And because it always made her look dusty and dirty, they called her "Cinderella."

It happened that the father wanted to go to the fair one day; he asked his two daughters-in-law what he should bring them back.

- Nice clothes, said one. "Pearls and precious stones," said the second.

- And you, Cinderella, he asked, what do you want?

- Father, the first branch that will hit your hat on the way back, pick it for me.

So he bought fine clothes, pearls and precious stones for the two sisters, and, on the way back, crossing a green grove on horseback, a branch of hazelnut touched him and dropped his hat. So he picked up the twig and carried it away. When he got home, he gave his daughters-in-law what they wanted and Cinderella's branch of hazelnut. Cinderella thanked him, went to his mother's grave and planted the branch there, crying so hard that tears fell on it and watered it. However, it grew and became a beautiful tree. Cinderella went to cry and pray three times a day under her branches, and each time a little white bird landed on the tree. When she expressed a wish, the little bird threw her on the ground what she had wished.

Now it came to pass that the king gave a feast which was to last three days and to which all the pretty girls of the country were invited so that his son could choose a bride. When they learned that they were also going to attend, the two sisters were all happy; they called Cinderella and said to her -

- Comb our hair, brush our shoes, and adjust the buckles; we are going to the king's castle for the wedding. Cinderella obeyed but weeping because she

would have liked to accompany them, and she begged her mother-in-law to allow her.

- You, Cinderella, she said, but you are full of dust and dirt, and you want to go to the wedding? You have no clothes, no shoes, and you want to go dancing?

But as Cinderella kept begging her, she ended up saying to him:

- I spilled a dish of lentils in the ashes; if in two hours you have sorted them again, you can come with us.

The girl went to the garden by the back door and called:

"Small, docile pigeons, small doves and all of you little sky birds, come and help me sort the seeds:

The good ones in the potty,

The bad guys in your crop. "

Then two white pigeons entered through the kitchen window, then the turtledoves, and finally, by clouds, all the little birds of the sky came, fluttering, landing around the ashes. And lowering their little heads, all the pigeons started to peck: pic, pic, pic, pic, and the others started too: pic, pic, pic, pic, and they gathered all the good seeds in the dish. After barely an hour, they had already finished, and all flew away again. Then the young girl, all joyful at the idea that she would now be allowed to go to the wedding with the others, carried the dish to her stepmother. But she said to him:

- No, Cinderella, you have no clothes, and you can't dance: we would only laugh at you.

As Cinderella started to cry, she said to him: - If you can, in an hour of time, sort out two large lentil dishes from the ashes, you will accompany us. - Because she said to herself that she would never succeed.

When she had thrown the contents of the two lentil dishes into the ash, the girl went into the garden by the back door and called:

"Small, docile pigeons, small doves and all of you little sky birds, come and help me sort the seeds:

The good ones in the potty,

The bad guys in your crop. "

Then two white pigeons entered through the kitchen window, then the turtledoves, and finally, by clouds, all the little birds of the sky came, fluttering, landing around the ashes. And lowering their little heads, all the pigeons began to peck: peak, peak, peak, peak, and the others also started: peak, peak, peak, peak, and they picked up all the good seeds in the dishes.

And in less than half an hour, they had already finished, and all flew away again. Then the girl, very happy at the idea that now she would be allowed to go to the wedding with the others, took the two dishes to her stepmother. But she said to him:

Throw gold and silver at me. "Then the bird threw him a robe of gold and silver, as well as slippers embroidered with silk and silver. She hastily put on the dress and went to the party. Neither her sisters nor her stepmother recognized her and thought that she must have been the daughter of a foreign king, so beautiful was she in this golden robe. They did not think of Cinderella in the least and believed her in the house, sitting in the dirt, to remove the lenses from the ashes. The king's son came to meet him, took her by the hand, and danced with her. He did not even want to dance with anyone else so that he never let go of his hand, and when another dancer came to invite him, he said to him: "She is my rider."

She danced until evening and then wanted to go back. The king's son said to him, "I am going with you and accompanying you" because he wanted to see what family this beautiful girl belonged to. But she escaped him and jumped into the dovecote. Then the prince waited for the father's arrival and told him that the young stranger had jumped into the dovecote. "Could it be Cinderella?" Wondered the old man and had to bring him an ax and a pickaxe so that he could demolish the dovecote. But there was no one inside. And when they entered the house. Cinderella was lying in the ashes with her dirty clothes, and a small oil lamp burned faintly in the fireplace; for Cinderella had quickly jumped from the dovecote from behind and ran to the hazel tree; there she had taken off her fine clothes, placed them on the grave, and the bird had won them; then she went with her ugly gray apron to put herself in the ashes of the kitchen.

The next day, as the party started again and her parents and sisters had left again, Cinderella went under the hazel tree and said:

"Little tree, shake, shake,

Throw gold and silver at me. " entered the kitchen, Then the bird threw him a dress even more splendid than that of the day before. And when she appeared at the party in this toilet, everyone was struck by her beauty. The son of you, who had waited for his arrival, immediately took her by the hand and only danced with her. When others came to invite him, he told them felled the tree, but there was no one on it. And when they: "She's my rider. When evening came, she wanted to leave, and the king's son followed her to see what house

she was entering, but she escaped him and jumped into the garden behind her house. There was a big and beautiful tree there that carried the most exquisite pearls, she climbed between its branches as nimbly as a squirrel, and the prince did not know where she had gone. However, he waited for the father's arrival and said to him:

- The unknown girl escaped me, and I think she jumped on the pear tree.

"Could it be Cinderella?" Thought the father who sent for the ax and Cinderella was lying in the ash, as usual, because she had jumped down the tree from the other side, brought the beautiful clothes to the bird of the hazel tree, and put on his ugly gray apron. On the third day, when her parents and sisters were gone, Cinderella returned to her mother's grave and said to the hazelnut tree:

"Little tree, shake, shake,

Throw gold and silver at me. "

Then the bird threw her a robe, which was so sumptuous and so dazzling that she had never seen it before, and the slippers were all gold. When she arrived at the wedding in this set, everyone was forbidden to admire. Only the king's son danced with her, and if anyone invited her, he would say, "She is my rider. " When it was evening, Cinderella wanted to leave, and the prince wanted to accompany her, but she escaped him so quickly that he could not follow her. Now the king's son had resorted to a trick: he had plastered the whole staircase with pitch so that by jumping to descend, the girl had left her sticky left slipper in it. The prince picked it up; it was small and cute and all gold.

The next morning, he came to find the old man with the slipper and said to him:

- No one will be my wife except the one whose foot will put on this golden shoe.

Then the two sisters rejoiced because they had pretty feet. The eldest went to her room to try on the shoe with her mother. But she couldn't get the big toe in because the shoe was too small for her; then his mother handed him a knife, saying to him:

- Cut that finger off; when you are queen, you will no longer need to go on foot.

Then the young girl cut her toe, forced her foot into the shoe, and, containing her pain, went to find the king's son. He took her as a bride, put her on his horse, and left with her. But they had to pass by the grave; the two little

pigeons were there, perched on the hazel tree, and they shouted:

"Roucou-cou, roucou-cou and see there,

In the slipper, there is blood:

Far too small was the shoe;

Still at home, the real bride. "

Then he looked at the foot and saw that blood was shed. He turned his horse around, brought the fake bride home, and said it was not the real girl and that the other sister had to try on the shoe. She went to her room, brought in the toe, but her heel was too large. Then his mother handed him a knife saying:

- Cut off a piece of heel; when you are queen, you will no longer need to go on foot.

The girl cut off a piece of the heel, forced her foot into the shoe, and, containing her pain, went to find the king's son. So he took her for a bride, put her on his horse and left with her. When they passed the hazel tree, the two little pigeons were perched there and shouted:

"Roucou-cou, roucou-cou and see there,

In the slipper, there is blood:

Far too small was the shoe;

Still at home, the real bride. "

The prince looked at the foot and saw that blood flowed from the shoe and dyed the white stockings all red. So he turned his horse around and brought the fake bride home.

- It's still not the right one, he said, don't you have another daughter?

- No, said the father, there is only the daughter of my late wife, a miserable, Cinderella, messy, it is impossible that she is the bride you are looking for.

The king's son said that she should be brought, but the mother replied:

- Oh no! the poor girl is way too dirty to show herself.

But he insisted on it, and we had to call Cinderella. So she first washed her hands and face, then she bowed before the king's son, who handed him the golden shoe. She sat on a stepladder, removed his foot from the heavy wooden shoe, and put him in the slipper that fit him like a glove. And when she straightened up, and the king's son saw her face, he recognized the beautiful girl with whom he had danced and exclaimed:

- This is the real bride!

The mother-in-law and the two sisters were overcome with fear and became pale with rage. As for the prince, he took Cinderella on his horse and set off with her. When they passed the hazel tree, the two little white pigeons cried

out:

"Roucou-cou, Roucou-cou and see there,  
In the slipper, no more blood will see  
Point too small was the shoe,  
At home, he leads the real fiancée. "

And after this cooing, they both flew away and went down to rest on Cinderella's shoulders, one on the right, and the other on the left and remained perched there.

The day when we were to celebrate his marriage to the king's son, his two perfidious sisters went there with the intention of insinuating themselves into his good graces and of sharing in his happiness. While the fiancés were going to the church, the eldest walked on their right and the youngest on their left: then the pigeons caught a glance at each one. Then, when they came back from the church, the eldest was walking on their left and the youngest on their right: then the pigeons caught each other's eye. And so it was that in punishment for their wickedness and treachery, they were blind for the rest of their lives.

## **Spanish Translation**

### **Una valiente chica**

Un hombre rico tenía una esposa que enfermó; y cuando sintió su inminente final, llamó a su única hija a su lado y le dijo:

- Querido hijo, mantente bueno y piadoso, y el buen Señor siempre te ayudará, y yo, desde el cielo, te miraré y te protegeré.

Luego cerró los ojos y murió. La niña iba a la tumba de su madre todos los días, lloraba y seguía siendo buena y piadosa. Cuando llega el invierno, la nieve cubre la tumba con una alfombra blanca. Pero en la primavera, cuando el sol se derritió, el hombre tomó a otra mujer.

La mujer había traído con ella a sus dos hijas que eran bonitas y de cara blanca, pero feas y de corazón negro. Entonces comenzaron días muy malos para la pobre nuera.

¿Debería quedarse este pequeño ganso con nosotros en la habitación? ellos dijeron. Quien quiera comer pan debe ganárselo. ¡Vamos, zorra!

Le quitaron su hermosa ropa, la vistieron con un viejo delantal gris y le dieron zuecos de madera. "¡Mira a la orgullosa princesa, cómo está vestida!"

Lloraron, riendo y la llevaron a la cocina. Así que tuvo que hacer un trabajo duro desde la mañana hasta la tarde, levantarse mucho antes del amanecer,



cargar agua, encender el fuego, cocinar y lavar la ropa. Además, las dos hermanas le hicieron toda la miseria imaginable, se burlaron de ella, derramaron guisantes y lentejas en la ceniza, por lo que tuvo que comenzar a ordenarlos nuevamente. Por la noche, cuando estaba exhausta del trabajo, no dormía en una cama, sino que tenía que acostarse cerca de la chimenea en las cenizas. Y porque siempre lo hacía ver polvoriento y sucio, la llamaron "Cenicienta". Sucedió que el padre quería ir a la feria un día; le preguntó a sus dos nueras qué debería traerles de vuelta.

- Buena ropa, dijo uno. "Perlas y piedras preciosas", dijo el segundo.

- Y tú, Cenicienta, preguntó, ¿qué quieres?

- Padre, la primera rama que golpeará tu sombrero en el camino de regreso, elígemela.

Así que compró ropa fina, perlas y piedras preciosas para las dos hermanas y, en el camino de regreso, cruzando un bosque verde a caballo, una rama de avellana lo tocó y dejó caer su sombrero. Entonces recogió la ramita y se la llevó. Cuando llegó a casa, le dio a sus nueras lo que querían y la rama de avellana de Cenicienta. Cenicienta le agradeció, fue a la tumba de su madre y plantó la rama allí, llorando tanto que las lágrimas cayeron sobre ella y la regaron. Sin embargo, creció y se convirtió en un hermoso árbol. Cenicienta fue a llorar y rezar tres veces al día debajo de sus ramas, y cada vez un pequeño pájaro blanco aterrizó en el árbol. Cuando expresó un deseo, el pajarito la arrojó al suelo lo que había deseado.

Y sucedió que el rey ofreció una fiesta que duraría tres días y a la que fueron invitadas todas las muchachas bonitas del país, para que su hijo pudiera elegir una novia. Cuando supieron que también iban a asistir, las dos hermanas estaban felices; llamaron a Cenicienta y le dijeron:

- Peina nuestro cabello, cepilla nuestros zapatos y ajusta las hebillas, iremos al castillo del rey para la boda. Cenicienta obedeció, pero llorando, porque le hubiera gustado acompañarlos, y le rogó a su suegra que la permitiera. - Tú, Cenicienta, dijo ella, ¿pero estás llena de polvo y suciedad y quieres ir a la boda? ¿No tienes ropa ni zapatos y quieres ir a bailar?

Pero mientras Cenicienta le rogaba, ella terminó diciéndole:

- Derramé un plato de lentejas en las cenizas; Si en dos horas los ha ordenado nuevamente, puede venir con nosotros.

La niña fue al jardín por la puerta de atrás y llamó:

"Pequeñas palomas dóciles, pequeñas palomas y todos ustedes pequeños pájaros del cielo, vengan a ayudarme a clasificar las semillas:

Los buenos en el baño,  
Los malos de tu cosecha. "

Luego, dos palomas blancas entraron por la ventana de la cocina, luego las tórtolas y, finalmente, por las nubes, llegaron todas las pajaritas del cielo, revoloteando, aterrizando alrededor de las cenizas. Y bajando sus cabecitas, todas las palomas comenzaron a picotear: pic, pic, pic, pic, y las otras también comenzaron: pic, pic, pic, pic, y reunieron todas las semillas buenas en el plato. Después de apenas una hora, ya habían terminado y todos volvieron a volar. Luego, la joven, toda alegre con la idea de que ahora se le permitiría ir a la boda con los demás, le llevó el plato a su madrastra. Pero ella le dijo:

- No, Cenicienta, no tienes ropa y no puedes bailar: solo nos reiríamos de ti. Cuando Cenicienta comenzó a llorar, ella le dijo: - Si puedes, en una hora, separar dos platos grandes de lentejas de las cenizas, nos acompañarás. - Porque se dijo a sí misma que nunca tendría éxito. Cuando arrojó el contenido de los dos platos de lentejas a la ceniza, la niña salió al jardín por la puerta trasera y llamó:

"Pequeñas palomas dóciles, pequeñas palomas y todos ustedes pequeños pájaros del cielo, vengan a ayudarme a clasificar las semillas:

Los buenos en el baño,  
Los malos de tu cosecha. "

Luego, dos palomas blancas entraron por la ventana de la cocina, luego las tórtolas y, finalmente, por las nubes, llegaron todas las pajaritas del cielo, revoloteando, aterrizando alrededor de las cenizas. Y bajando sus pequeñas cabezas, todas las palomas comenzaron a picotear: pico, pico, pico, pico, y las otras también comenzaron: pico, pico, pico, pico, y recogieron todas las semillas buenas en los platos. Y en menos de media hora, ya habían terminado, y todos volvieron a volar. Entonces la niña, muy feliz por la idea de que ahora se le permitiría ir a la boda con los demás, le llevó los dos platos a su madrastra. Pero ella le dijo:

- Es una pérdida de tiempo, no vendrás con nosotros, porque no tienes ropa y no puedes bailar; Nos avergonzaríamos de ti.

Entonces ella le dio la espalda y se apresuró con sus dos hijas magníficamente vestidas.

Cuando no quedaba nadie en casa, Cenicienta fue debajo del avellano plantado en la tumba de su madre y gritó

"Arbolito, sacudir, sacudir,

Tírame oro y plata. "Entonces el pájaro le arrojó una túnica de oro y plata, así como unas zapatillas bordadas con seda y plata. Se apresuró a ponerse el vestido y fue a la fiesta. Ni sus hermanas ni su madrastra la reconocieron, y Pensaba que debía haber sido la hija de un rey extranjero, tan hermosa era con esta túnica dorada. No pensaron en Cinderella en lo más mínimo y la creyeron en la casa, sentada en la tierra, para quitar las lentes de las cenizas. El hijo del rey vino a su encuentro, la tomó de la mano y bailó con ella. Ni siquiera quería bailar con nadie más, por lo que nunca soltó su mano y cuando otro bailarín vino a invitarlo, le dijo: "Ella es mi jinete".

Bailó hasta la noche y luego quiso volver. El hijo del rey le dijo: "Voy contigo y te acompaño", porque quería ver a qué familia pertenecía esta hermosa niña. Pero ella escapó de él y saltó al palomar. Entonces el príncipe esperó la llegada del padre y le dijo que el joven desconocido había saltado al palomar. "¿Podría ser Cenicienta?" Se preguntó el anciano y tuvo que traerle un hacha y un pico para que pudiera demoler el palomar. Pero no había nadie adentro. Y cuando entraron en la casa. Cenicienta yacía en las cenizas con su ropa sucia, y una pequeña lámpara de aceite ardía débilmente en la chimenea; porque Cenicienta saltó rápidamente del palomar desde atrás y corrió hacia el avellano; allí se había quitado la fina ropa, la había colocado sobre la tumba y el pájaro se la había ganado; luego fue con su feo delantal gris para meterse en las cenizas de la cocina.

Al día siguiente, cuando la fiesta comenzó de nuevo y sus padres y hermanas se habían ido de nuevo, Cenicienta fue debajo del avellano y dijo:

"Arbolito, sacudir, sacudir,

Tírame oro y plata. "Entró a la cocina, luego el pájaro le arrojó un vestido aún más espléndido que el del día anterior. Y cuando ella apareció en la fiesta en este baño, todos quedaron impresionados por su belleza. El hijo de ustedes, que había Esperó su llegada, inmediatamente la tomó de la mano y solo bailó con ella. Cuando otros vinieron a invitarlo, les dijo que talaran el árbol, pero que no había nadie. Y cuando ellos: "Ella es mi jinete. Cuando llegó la noche, ella quería irse, y el hijo del rey la siguió, para ver en qué casa estaba entrando, pero ella escapó de él y saltó al jardín detrás de su casa. Había un gran y hermoso árbol que llevaba las peras más exquisitas, ella trepaba entre sus ramas tan ágilmente como una ardilla, y el príncipe no sabía a dónde había ido. Sin embargo, esperó la llegada del padre y le dijo:

- La chica desconocida se me escapó, y creo que saltó sobre el peral.

"¿Podría ser Cenicienta?" Pensé que el padre que envió el hacha y Cenicienta

yacía en la ceniza, como siempre, porque ella había saltado del árbol desde el otro lado, trajo la hermosa ropa al pájaro del avellano y se puso su feo delantal gris. Al tercer día, cuando sus padres y hermanas se fueron, Cenicienta regresó a la tumba de su madre y le dijo al avellano:

"Arbolito, sacudir, sacudir,  
Tírame oro y plata. "

Entonces el pájaro le arrojó una túnica que era tan suntuosa y deslumbrante que nunca la había visto antes, y las zapatillas eran todas de oro. Cuando llegó a la boda en este set, a todos se les prohibió admirar. Solo el hijo del rey bailaba con ella, y si alguien la invitaba, él decía: "Ella es mi jinete". Cuando era de noche, Cenicienta quería irse, y el príncipe quería acompañarla, pero ella se le escapó tan rápido que no podía seguirla. Ahora el hijo del rey había recurrido a un truco: había enyesado toda la escalera con brea, de modo que al saltar para descender, la niña la había dejado pegajosa. zapatilla izquierda en el mismo. El príncipe lo recogió, era pequeño, lindo y todo dorado.

A la mañana siguiente, vino a buscar al anciano con la zapatilla y le dijo:

- Nadie será mi esposa, excepto aquel cuyo pie se pondrá este zapato dorado.

Entonces las dos hermanas se regocijaron, porque tenían unos pies bonitos. La mayor fue a su habitación para probarse el zapato con su madre. Pero no podía meter el dedo gordo porque el zapato era demasiado pequeño para ella; Entonces su madre le entregó un cuchillo y le dijo:

- Corta ese dedo; cuando seas reina, ya no necesitarás ir a pie.

Luego la joven se cortó el dedo del pie, forzó su pie en el zapato y, conteniendo su dolor, fue a buscar al hijo del rey. La tomó como novia, la puso en su caballo y se fue con ella. Pero tuvieron que pasar por la tumba; Las dos palomas estaban allí, encaramadas en el avellano, y gritaron:

"Roucou-cou, roucou-cou y mira allí,

En la zapatilla, hay sangre:

Demasiado pequeño era el zapato;

Todavía en casa la verdadera novia. "

Luego miró el pie y vio que se derramaba sangre. Dio la vuelta a su caballo, trajo a la novia falsa a casa, dijo que no era la chica real y que la otra hermana tenía que probarse el zapato. Ella fue a su habitación, trajo el dedo del pie, pero su talón era demasiado grande. Entonces su madre le entregó un cuchillo diciendo:

- Cortar un trozo de tacón; cuando seas reina, ya no necesitarás ir a pie. La niña cortó un trozo de tacón, forzó su pie en el zapato y, conteniendo su

dolor, fue a buscar al hijo del rey. Entonces la tomó por novia, la puso en su caballo y se fue con ella. Cuando pasaron junto al avellano, las dos palomas se posaron allí y gritaron:

"Roucou-cou, roucou-cou y mira allí,

En la zapatilla, hay sangre:

Demasiado pequeño era el zapato;

Todavía en casa la verdadera novia. "

El príncipe miró el pie y vio que la sangre fluía del zapato y tiñó las medias blancas de rojo. Entonces giró su caballo y trajo a la falsa novia a casa.

- Todavía no es la correcta, dijo, ¿no tienes otra hija?

- No, dijo el padre, solo queda la hija de mi difunta esposa, una miserable, Cenicienta, desordenada, es imposible que ella sea la novia que estás buscando.

El hijo del rey dijo que debería ser traída, pero la madre respondió:

- Oh no ! La pobre muchacha está demasiado sucia para mostrarse.

Pero él insistió y tuvimos que llamar a Cenicienta. Así que primero se lavó las manos y la cara, luego se inclinó ante el hijo del rey, quien le entregó el zapato dorado. Se sentó en una escalera de mano, quitó el pie del pesado zapato de madera y lo puso en la zapatilla que le quedaba como un guante. Y cuando ella se enderezó y el hijo del rey vio su rostro, reconoció a la hermosa niña con la que había bailado y exclamó:

- Esta es la verdadera novia! La suegra y las dos hermanas fueron abrumadas por el miedo y palidecieron de ira. En cuanto al príncipe, tomó a Cenicienta en su caballo y se fue con ella. Cuando pasaron junto al avellano, las dos palomas blancas gritaron:

"Roucou-cou, Roucou-cou y ver allí,

En la zapatilla, no verá más sangre

Punto demasiado pequeño era el zapato,

En casa, lidera a la verdadera novia. "

Y después de este arrullo, ambos se fueron volando y se posaron sobre los hombros de Cenicienta, uno a la derecha, el otro a la izquierda y permanecieron encaramados allí.

El día en que debíamos celebrar su matrimonio con el hijo del rey, sus dos pérfidas hermanas fueron allí con la intención de insinuarse en sus buenas gracias y compartir su felicidad. Mientras los novios iban a la iglesia, los mayores caminaban a su derecha y los más jóvenes a su izquierda: luego las palomas echaron un vistazo a cada uno. Luego, cuando regresaron de la

iglesia, el mayor caminaba a su izquierda y el más joven a su derecha: luego las palomas se llamaron la atención. Y así fue que, en castigo por su maldad y traición, fueron ciegos por el resto de sus vidas.

## **Vocabulary**

### **English**

#### **Spanish**

Wedding

Boda

Throws

Arroja

Slipper

Zapatilla

Golden

Dorada

Containing

Que contiene

Appeared

Aparecido

Except

Excepto

Exclaimed

Exclamado

Splendid

Esplendido

Fake

Falso

### **Questions**

- What did the mother say to her daughter while breathing her last?
- What did father bring for Cindrella

### **Answers**

- She said, “Dear child, stay good and pious, and the good Lord will always help you, and I, from the sky, I will look at you and protect you.”
- He brought a branch of hazelnut for her.

## **Questions Spanish**

1. ¿Qué le dijo la madre a su hija mientras respiraba por última vez?
2. ¿Qué trajo el padre para Cindrella?

## **Answers Spanish**

1. Ella dijo: "Querido hijo, mantente bueno y piadoso, y el buen Señor siempre te ayudará, y yo, desde el cielo, te miraré y te protegeré".
2. Le trajo una rama de avellana.

## CHAPTER 3- DIFFICULT STORIES

---

### Story 1

#### English

#### THE FORTY THIEVES

There was once, in a city in Persia, two brothers named Kassim and Ali-Baba. Kassim was rich while Ali-Baba was poor. To make a living for himself and his children, he cut wood in the nearby forest and take it back to town to sell it, loaded onto three donkeys that made up his entire fortune.

One day Ali-Baba was finishing cutting his load of wood when he saw a troop of horsemen advancing in his direction. Fearing to deal with thieves, he abandoned his donkeys and climbed a large, bushy tree.

The riders dismounted, there were forty of them. The chief of the band went to a rock near the big tree where Ali-Baba had taken refuge, pushed aside the brushwood and said:

“Open Sesame! Immediately a door opened, the brigands rushed in, the chief entered last, and the door closed on him.

After a while, the door opened, giving way to the forty thieves. When they had all paraded, the chief said solemnly: "Sesame, shut up!" And the door closed.

With that, each mounted his horse, and the band disappeared. Ali-Baba immediately left his hiding place, pushed aside the brushwood, and discovered a door. He remembered the magic phrase:

“Open Sesame! He said. Instantly, the door opened, and Ali-Baba saw a huge cave, filled with goods and especially gold and silver coins stacked in large leather bags. Without wasting time, he gathered as many bags of gold as his three donkeys could carry. When they were charged, he said the magic formula:

"Sesame, shut up!" "And the door obeys.

Happy with his windfall, Ali-Baba returned home and, in front of his wife, emptied the contents of the bags, which made a large pile of gold. The latter, wishing to assess this treasure, went to ask Kassim's wife to lend her a



measure; but the latter, eager to know what sort of grain Ali-Baba's wife intended to measure, coated the underside of the measure with a light layer of tallow.

On returning home, Ali-Baba's wife placed the measure on the heap of gold, which she began to assess, then returned it to her sister-in-law. The first care of Kassim's wife was to look at the underside of the measure; and what was his surprise when he saw a gold coin attached to the layer of tallow. Her husband was not sooner with her than she informed him of her discovery. Immediately Kassim went to find his brother who, yielding to his good natures, instructed him in words essential to enter and exit the cave.

The next morning, early in the morning, Kassim left his house with a whole troop of mules laden with large chests to grab the treasure. "Open Sesame!" He said when he found the door. It opened, then closed as soon as it entered. Kassim fell in deep admiration, facing the riches accumulated in this place. Then grabbing as many bags of minted gold as he could carry, he went to the door to get out, but he couldn't remember the exact sentence and said: "Barley, open up!" "The door did not open. Kassim was so terrified that it was impossible for him to find the magic word. Suddenly he heard the sound of a galloping horse. He advanced very close to the door and, as soon as it opened, went out so abruptly that he knocked over the chief of the thieves; but the brigands threw themselves on him and exterminated him without pity. They then entered their lair and replaced the bags abandoned by Kassim, without noticing that there were others missing. Then they quartered the corpse and returned to their exploits.

However, at nightfall, Kassim's wife, not seeing her husband return, became alarmed and went to Ali-Baba's house, which immediately left with her three donkeys. Arriving near the rock, he saw a large stain of blood outside the door. He spoke the miraculous words, the door opened, and he saw the body of his frightfully dismembered brother. He gathered his remains into two packages, which he loaded onto one of his donkeys, hiding them with wood. On the other two animals, he put bags full of gold and set off for the city.

He left it to his wife to unload the two donkeys carrying the gold and led the third to his sister-in-law's. He was received by Morgaine, a skillful and ingenious slave.

"Morgaine," he said to him, "these two packages contain your master's body, and yet we must have him buried as if he had died of his beautiful death."

The slave immediately went to an apothecary, to look for a certain tablet with

sovereign power in the most dangerous illnesses.

- Who is suffering from your master? Asked the apothecary. - Alas, she replied, sighing deeply, it's my good master, Kassim himself, he no longer speaks, no longer eats, and no one understands anything about his illness!

The next day, Morgaine returned to the same apothecary and asked for a remedy that is given only to the dying. On the other hand, Ali-Baba and his wife were seen coming and going from their house to the house of Kassim, and their attitude revealed a great affliction. We were therefore not overly surprised, towards evening, when we heard the lamentable cries of Kassim's wife and especially of Morgaine, which thus made known the death of their master.

At dawn the next day, the slave went to find an old cobbler, Baba-Mustafa, whose shop was always open before all the others, and took him to Kassim's house, after having blindfolded him halfway. She only removed the handkerchief in the room where the remains of his master.

- Baba-Mustafa, she said then, I brought you here to sew the four pieces here. Hurry up, when you're done, I'll give you three gold coins.

When the work was finished, she recommended Baba-Mustafa to keep it secret, looked back at him, and accompanied him to the place where she had put the handkerchief while bringing it. There she took off the blindfold and let the old mango.

Kassim's body was buried with the usual ceremonial and, a few days later, Ali-Baba settled in his brother's house.

"The thief we chastised was not the only one who knew our secret," said the head of the brigands. Must, therefore, that after executing one, we execute the other. The strange death of the one we exterminated must not have gone unnoticed in the city, so we should collect the rumors circulating on this subject, know the name of our victim and know his home. Whoever takes care of this delicate task will have to undergo the death penalty, in case he makes a mistake capable of causing our ruin at all. When the forty thieves returned to their lair, they were unpleasantly surprised when they noticed that Kassim's body had disappeared and that the number of their bags had significantly decreased.

Immediately one of the brigands stepped forward and declared himself ready to undertake this investigation. He disguised himself and went to the city, where he entered at dawn. Only one shop was open, that of Baba-Mustafa; he appeared there at any chance.

- Good man, he said after wishing him good morning, you get to work very early ... However, your eyes should no longer be good enough for you to be able to sew!

- Not long ago, replied the cobbler, I sewed a dead man in a place where it was not much lighter than at the moment!

Convinced that he was on the right track, the thief drew a gold coin from his pocket and, handing it to Baba-Mustafa, begged him to indicate to him in which house he had sewn the dead man.

- It is impossible for me, said Baba-Mustafa, for the good reason that I was blindfolded at a certain place on the way; from there, I was taken into the house and brought back in the same way.

"Listen," replied the thief; come with me to the place where you were blindfolded. I will bandage them in my turn, and no doubt, you will remember the turns and detours that you were made to take. Here is already another gold coin.

Baba-Mustafa could not resist the temptation and led the thief to Kassim's house, which now belonged to Ali-Baba. The brigand hastily traced a chalk mark on the door, then, removing the handkerchief which blindfolded the cobbler:

- Do you know who lives in this house?

- I am not from the neighborhood, replied Baba-Mustafa, and therefore cannot inform you.

The thief thanked the old man, and they parted. Almost immediately, Morgaine left the home of Ali-Baba. She saw the mark on the door.

- What does that mean? She thought. What was the purpose of this brand? In any case, we cannot take too many precautions.

Always advised, she marked in the same way and in the same place, with chalk, the two or three doors which preceded and followed that of the house of Ali-Baba, and which were absolutely similar. She neither spoke to her master nor to her mistress.

Meanwhile, the thief had joined his troop in the forest, and without wasting time, they entered the city. The chief thief, guided by the one who had directed the investigation, arrived at the first door marked by Morgaine.

- It's here! He said to his master. But as they continued to ride, so as not to draw attention to them, the chief pointed out to his deputy that the next four or five doors bore the same mark.

The enterprise having aborted, the forty thieves returned to the forest; while

the investigation was being conducted, his head was cut off. Immediately one of them proposed to take over the task of the one who had just perished, and he left for the city. Unfortunately, it is impossible for me to distinguish it from others.

Everything happened the same way as the first time: he corrupted Baba-Mustafa, who led him to the home of Ali-Baba. Like his predecessor, he made a mark at the door but, instead of using chalk, he traced it in red pencil and in a less visible place.

Like the day before, Morgaine left the house a few moments later, and, when she returned, the red mark struck her sight. She hastened to mark the neighboring doors.

The brigands' attempt failed again, and they withdrew into the forest where the thief who had committed the mistake suffered the same punishment as his comrade.

The band chief then resolved to conduct the investigation himself. When Baba-Mustafa brought him to Ali-Baba's house, he examined it so thoroughly that he was sure to recognize it.

His men were waiting for him in the cave. He instructed them to buy nineteen mules and thirty-eight wineskins, only one of which was filled with oil. In each of the thirty-seven empty wineskins rubbed with oil on the outside, so that no one doubts until they were full, the thief brought in one of the thieves and led the convoy straight to Ali-Baba's house. Precisely this one took the cool at his door, after dinner.

- Lord, he said to him, I come from far away with this load of oil that I will sell tomorrow at the market. It is late, I do not know where to stay, and I would be very obliged if you do not mind too much, to welcome me home!

- Come in! Replied Ali-Baba without hesitation, welcome.

He ordered one of his slaves to shelter the mules. Then he begged Morgaine to prepare supper for his host and even kept him company throughout the meal. When dinner was over, Ali-Baba went to the kitchen and said to Morgaine:

- Tomorrow I will go to the bath before daybreak, make me a good broth, which I will take on my return!

Meanwhile, the head of the brigands had slipped into the courtyard.

"When I throw small stones from the room where I am staying," he said softly to everyone, "you will make the skin from top to bottom with the knife with which you are armed." You will get out right away.

As for Morgaine, she put the stew to make the broth. She was in the process of skimming it when the lamp went out; she saw that her supply of oil had run out, as had the candle. She resolved to take a little oil from one of her master's guest's bottles.

She went into the courtyard and approached the first container, but she was dumbfounded when she heard a muffled voice asking:

"Is this the time?" "Morgaine noticed that this question started from inside the skin, and, without losing her presence of mind, she replied in a low voice: "No, not yet ... but soon! In each addition, she received the same question and made the same answer. When she was at last - the only one that was full of oil - she filled her vase and returned to the kitchen, convinced that her master had given refuge to thirty-eight thieves.

She turned on her lamp again, took a large boiler, and returned to the courtyard to fill it with oil in turn. Then she put it on a big fire, so that the liquid boiled quickly and, in each of the bottles containing a thief, she poured the boiling oil, thus taking their life without them having time to defend themselves.

She did this without making the slightest noise, after which she turned off her lamp and stood at the kitchen window to observe what was going to happen. She hadn't been there for a quarter of an hour since the chief thief gave the agreed signal by throwing small stones. Not perceiving any noise, he rushed into the courtyard, and, approaching the bottles, a smell of hot oil and burning seized his nostrils. He understood that his business had just failed once again and that he had only to flee.

Upon returning from the bath, Ali-Baba did not fail to be surprised when he saw the oil bottles in the courtyard. Morgaine then told her master what she had done during the night and informed him of the marks on the door.

- All of this, she said in conclusion, is the work of brigands in the forest ... What I can't explain is that there were two missing ... So you have to be wary again ...

- Morgaine, says Ali-Baba, I will never forget that I owe you my life ... And, in the meantime, I will free you from slavery! Helped by Morgaine, Ali-Baba dug at the end of his garden a huge pit, in which he buried the bodies of the thirty-seven thieves, so as not to arouse the attention of his neighbors; then he hid the bottles and the weapons and sold the mules on various markets.

However, the chief thief did not think he was beaten, and, returning to the cave, thought of the new means he was going to use to get rid of Ali-Baba.

The next day, he returned to the city and stayed in a khan (bazaar), where he transported rich fabrics and fine fabrics, which he found in his lair in the forest. Then he rented a shop opposite the one formerly occupied by Kassim and currently by the son of Ali-Baba.

The chief of the thieves who called himself Khodjah Houssain was not long in bonding with the young man. He went so far as to give her gifts and invitations. Ali-Baba's son naturally felt obliged to return his courtesies. He consulted his father, who told him to arrange to go for a walk the next day with Khodjah Houssain and, on his return, to invite him to take a seat at his table, which he did, but Houssain refused to stay for supper, claiming that he did not eat any salty food.

- Never mind, said Ali-Baba, I will give the necessary orders. And he dodged to give new orders to Morgaine.

She did not hide her dissatisfaction and promised herself well to know this man who did not eat salt. For this purpose, she helped Abdallah, Ali-Baba's slave, to carry the dishes on the table, and she immediately recognized, despite his disguise, the chief of the forty thieves, who hid a dagger under his coat.

I explain to myself, now, why the wretch does not want to eat salt with my master 1, he meditates some bad suddenly ... Fortunately, and I'm here to prevent him from accomplishing his purpose! Thought Morgaine.

She dressed in a dancer costume and tied a golden silver belt around her waist, where she passed a dagger and, accompanied by Abdallah with his Basque drum, entered the hall and performed several dances. Finally, she drew the dagger from her belt, and imagined figures of surprising diversity, pretending, in turn, to want to strike an invisible spectator.

Finally, she took with her left hand the Basque drum from Abdallah's hands and presented it to Khodjah while, in her right hand, she held the dagger. Khodjah Houssain had already drawn his purse and was preparing to open it when Morgaine, in possession of all her courage, stabbed her in the heart, so deep that death was instantaneous.

Unclipping the dress of Khodjah Houssain, she showed Ali-Baba the dagger with which he was armed.

- Do you understand now why your host refused to eat salt with you? And do you not recognize in him the false oil merchant, the leader of the forty thieves?

- Morgaine, replied Ali-Baba, I promised you a reward worthy of your

benefits: I choose you for a daughter-in-law! Ali-Baba's son willingly agreed to marry Morgaine, and their nuptials were celebrated a few days later.

The false Khodjah Houssain was secretly buried in the grave, which contained the bodies of his thirty-seven accomplices.

Ali-Baba, still unaware of what had become of the two thieves who completed the gang, took care not to return to the enchanted cave. However, after a year, he began the journey, surrounding himself with a thousand precautions. He appeared before the door and said: "Sesame, open yourself"; immediately, the door opened, and a glance was enough to realize that no one had entered since the death of the brigand chief.

And so, from father to son, in the family of Ali-Baba, we transmitted the secret of this fabulous treasure, thanks to which he and his descendants lived in luxury and splendor.

## **Spanish Translation**

### **Los cuarenta ladrones**

Hubo una vez, en una ciudad de Persia, dos hermanos llamados Kassim y Ali-Baba. Kassim era rico mientras que Ali-Baba era pobre. Para ganarse la vida para él y sus hijos, cortaría leña en el bosque cercano y la llevaría de vuelta al pueblo para venderla, cargada en tres burros que constituían toda su fortuna.

Un día, Ali-Baba estaba terminando de cortar su carga de madera cuando vio una tropa de jinetes avanzando en su dirección. Temiendo tratar con ladrones, abandonó sus burros y trepó a un árbol grande y tupido.

Los jinetes desmontaron, había cuarenta de ellos. El jefe de la banda fue a una roca cerca del gran árbol donde Ali-Baba se había refugiado, apartó la maleza y dijo:

"¡Ábrete sésamo! Inmediatamente se abrió una puerta, los bandidos se apresuraron, el jefe entró por última vez y la puerta se cerró sobre él.

Después de un rato, la puerta se abrió, dando paso a los cuarenta ladrones. Cuando todos desfilaron, el jefe dijo solemnemente: "¡Sésamo, cállate!" Y la puerta se cerró.

Con eso, cada uno montó su caballo, y la banda desapareció. Ali-Baba dejó inmediatamente su escondite, apartó la maleza y descubrió una puerta. Recordó la frase mágica:

"¡Abre el sésamo! Dijo. Al instante, la puerta se abrió y Ali-Baba vio una

enorme cueva, llena de bienes y especialmente monedas de oro y plata apiladas en grandes bolsas de cuero. Sin perder tiempo, reunió tantas bolsas de oro como sus tres burros podrían llevar. Cuando fueron cargados, dijo la fórmula mágica:

"¡Sésamo, cállate!" "Y la puerta obedece.

Feliz con su ganancia inesperada, Ali-Baba regresó a su casa y, frente a su esposa, vació el contenido de las bolsas, que formaban una gran pila de oro. Este último, deseando evaluar este tesoro, fue a pedirle a la esposa de Kassim que le prestara una medida; pero el último, ansioso por Sepa qué tipo de grano pretendía medir la esposa de Ali-Baba, cubrió la parte inferior de la medida con una ligera capa de sebo.

Al regresar a casa, la esposa de Ali-Baba colocó la medida en el montón de oro, que comenzó a evaluar, y luego se la devolvió a su cuñada. El primer cuidado de la esposa de Kassim fue mirar la parte inferior de la medida; y cuál fue su sorpresa cuando vio una moneda de oro unida a la capa de sebo. Su esposo no estuvo más pronto con ella que ella le informó de su descubrimiento. Inmediatamente, Kassim fue a buscar a su hermano que, cediendo a su buena naturaleza, le instruyó con las palabras esenciales para entrar y salir de la cueva.

A la mañana siguiente, temprano en la mañana, Kassim salió de su casa con toda una tropa de mulas cargadas con grandes cofres para agarrar el tesoro. "¡Abre el sésamo! Dijo cuando encontró la puerta. Se abrió, luego se cerró tan pronto como entró.

Kassim cayó en profunda admiración, enfrentando las riquezas acumuladas en este lugar. Luego, agarrando tantas bolsas de oro acuñado como pudo cargar, fue a la puerta para salir, pero no pudo recordar la frase exacta y dijo: "¡Cebada, abre!" "La puerta no se abrió. Kassim estaba tan aterrorizado que le fue imposible encontrar la palabra mágica. De repente escuchó el sonido de un caballo al galope. Avanzó muy cerca de la puerta y, tan pronto como se abrió, salió tan abruptamente que derribó al jefe de los ladrones, pero los bandidos se arrojaron sobre él y lo exterminaron sin piedad. Luego entraron en su guarida y reemplazaron las bolsas abandonadas por Kassim, sin darse cuenta de que faltaban otros. Luego descuartizaron el cadáver y volvió a sus hazañas.

Sin embargo, al caer la noche, la esposa de Kassim, al no ver regresar a su esposo, se alarmó y fue a la casa de Ali-Baba, que inmediatamente se fue con sus tres burros. Al llegar cerca de la roca, vio una gran mancha de sangre



afuera de la puerta. Habló el palabras milagrosas, la puerta se abrió y vio el cuerpo de su hermano terriblemente desmembrado. Reunió sus restos en dos paquetes, que cargó en uno de sus burros, ocultándolos con madera. En los otros dos animales, puso bolsas llenas de oro y se dirigió a la ciudad.

Le dejó a su esposa que descargara a los dos burros que llevaban el oro y condujo al tercero a la casa de su cuñada. Fue recibido por Morgiane, un Esclavo hábil e ingenioso.

"Morgiane", le dijo, "estos dos paquetes contienen el cuerpo de tu amo, y sin embargo debemos enterrarlo como si hubiera muerto de su hermosa muerte".

El esclavo fue inmediatamente a un boticario para buscar una tableta con poder soberano en las enfermedades más peligrosas.

- ¿Quién sufre de tu maestro? preguntó el boticario. - ¡Ay !, respondió ella, suspirando profundamente, es mi buen maestro, el propio Kassim, ya no habla, ya no come, ¡y nadie entiende nada sobre su enfermedad!

Al día siguiente, Morgiane regresó al mismo boticario y pidió un remedio que solo se da a los moribundos. Por otro lado, Ali-Baba y su esposa fueron vistos yendo y viniendo de su casa a la casa de Kassim, y su actitud reveló una gran aflicción. Por lo tanto, no nos sorprendimos demasiado, al anochecer, cuando escuchamos los lamentables gritos de la esposa de Kassim y especialmente de Morgiane, que dieron a conocer la muerte de su maestro.

Al amanecer del día siguiente, el esclavo fue a buscar a un viejo zapatero, Baba-Mustafa, cuya tienda siempre estaba abierta antes que todos los demás, y lo llevó a la casa de Kassim, después de vendarle los ojos. él a medio camino. Ella solo quitó el pañuelo en la habitación donde los restos de su maestro.

- Baba-Mustafa, dijo entonces, te traje aquí para coser las cuatro piezas aquí. Date prisa, cuando termines, te daré tres monedas de oro.

Cuando terminó el trabajo, ella recomendó a Baba-Mustafa que lo mantuviera en secreto, lo miró y lo acompañó al lugar donde había puesto el pañuelo mientras lo traía. Allí se quitó la venda y dejó ir al viejo.

El cuerpo de Kassim fue enterrado con el ceremonial habitual y, unos días después, Ali-Baba se instaló en la casa de su hermano.

"El ladrón que castigamos no fue el único que sabía nuestro secreto", dijo el jefe de los bandidos. Por lo tanto, después de ejecutar uno, debemos ejecutar el otro. La extraña muerte de la que exterminamos no debe haber pasado desapercibida en la ciudad, por lo que debemos recopilar los rumores que circulan sobre este tema, conocer el nombre de nuestra víctima y conocer su

hogar. Quien se encargue de esta delicada tarea tendrá que someterse a la pena de muerte, en caso de que cometa un error capaz de causar nuestra ruina. Cuando los cuarenta ladrones regresaron a su guarida, se sorprendieron desagradablemente cuando notaron que el cuerpo de Kassim había desaparecido y que el número de sus bolsas había disminuido significativamente.

Inmediatamente uno de los bandidos se adelantó y se declaró listo para emprender esta investigación. Se disfrazó y fue a la ciudad, donde entró al amanecer. Solo había una tienda abierta, la de Baba-Mustafa; él apareció allí a las cualquier oportunidad.

- Buen hombre, dijo después de desearle los buenos días, puedes ir a trabajar muy temprano ... Sin embargo, tus ojos ya no deberían ser lo suficientemente buenos para que puedas coser.

- No hace mucho, respondió el zapatero, cosí a un hombre muerto en un lugar donde no era mucho más ligero que en este momento.

Convencido de que estaba en el camino correcto, el ladrón sacó una moneda de oro de su bolsillo y, entregándosela a Baba-Mustafa, le rogó que le indicara en qué casa había cosido al hombre muerto.

"Es imposible para mí", dijo Baba-Mustafa, por la buena razón de que me vendaron los ojos, en cierto lugar en el camino; desde allí me llevaron a la casa y me llevaron de la misma manera.

"Escucha", respondió el ladrón; ven conmigo al lugar donde te vendaron los ojos. Los vendaré en mi turno, y sin duda recordarás los giros y desvíos que te hicieron tomar. Aquí ya hay otra moneda de oro.

Baba-Mustafa no pudo resistir la tentación y condujo al ladrón a la casa de Kassim, que ahora pertenecía a Ali-Baba. El bandolero trazó apresuradamente una marca de tiza en la puerta, luego, quitando el pañuelo que vendaba el zapatero:

- ¿Sabes quién vive en esta casa?

- No soy del vecindario, respondió Baba-Mustafa, y por lo tanto no puedo informarle ...

El ladrón agradeció al viejo y se separaron. Casi de inmediato, Morgiane dejó la casa de Ali-Baba. Ella vio la marca en la puerta. - Qué significa eso ? pensó. ¿Cuál fue el propósito de esta marca? En cualquier caso, no podemos tomar demasiadas precauciones.

Siempre aconsejada, marcó de la misma manera y en el mismo lugar, con tiza, las dos o tres puertas que precedieron y siguieron a la de la casa de Ali-

Baba, y que eran absolutamente similares. Ella no habló con su amo ni con su amante.

Mientras tanto, el ladrón se había unido a su tropa en el bosque y sin perdieron el tiempo entraron en la ciudad. El ladrón jefe, guiado por el que había dirigido la investigación, llegó a la primera puerta marcada por Morgiane.

- Esta aquí ! le dijo a su maestro. Pero a medida que continuaban cabalgando, para no llamar la atención sobre ellos, el jefe señaló a su adjunto que las siguientes cuatro o cinco puertas llevaban la misma marca.

Habiendo abortado la empresa, los cuarenta ladrones regresaron al bosque; Mientras se realizaba la investigación, le cortaron la cabeza. Inmediatamente uno de ellos propuso hacerse cargo de la tarea del que acababa de morir, y se fue a la ciudad. Desafortunadamente, es imposible para mí distinguirlo de los demás.

Todo sucedió de la misma manera que la primera vez: corrompió a Baba-Mustafa, quien lo llevó a la casa de Ali-Baba. Al igual que su predecesor, hizo una marca en la puerta pero, en lugar de usar tiza, la trazó con un lápiz rojo y en un lugar menos visible.

Como el día anterior, Morgiane salió de la casa unos momentos más tarde y, cuando regresó, la marca roja le llamó la atención. Se apresuró a marcar las puertas vecinas. El intento de los bandidos fracasó nuevamente, y se retiraron al bosque donde el ladrón que había cometido el error sufrió el mismo castigo que su compañero.

El jefe de la banda resolvió conducir la investigación él mismo. Cuando Baba-Mustafa lo trajo a la casa de Ali-Baba, lo examinó tan a fondo que estaba seguro de reconocerlo.

Sus hombres lo esperaban en la cueva. Les ordenó comprar diecinueve mulas y treinta y ocho odres, de los cuales solo uno estaba lleno de aceite. En cada uno de los treinta y siete odres vacíos frotados con aceite en el exterior, para que nadie dude hasta que estén llenos, el jefe trajo a uno de los ladrones y condujo el convoy directamente a la casa de Ali-Baba. Precisamente este se enfrió en su puerta, después de la cena.

- Señor, le dijo, vengo de muy lejos con esta carga de petróleo que venderé mañana en el mercado. Es tarde, no sé dónde quedarme y estaría muy agradecido si no te importa demasiado, ¡darme la bienvenida a casa!

- Adelante ! respondió Ali-Baba sin dudarle, bienvenido.

Ordenó a uno de sus esclavos que protegiera a las mulas. Luego le rogó a

Morgiane que preparara la cena para su anfitrión, e incluso lo acompañó durante toda la comida. Cuando terminó la cena, Ali-Baba fue a la cocina y le dijo a Morgiane:

- Mañana iré al baño antes del amanecer, ¡hazme un buen caldo, que llevaré a mi regreso!

Mientras tanto, el jefe de los bandidos se había deslizado hacia el patio.

"Cuando tire pequeñas piedras de la habitación donde me estoy quedando", dijo suavemente a todos, "harás la piel de arriba a abajo con el cuchillo con el que estás armado. "Saldrás de inmediato

En cuanto a Morgiane, ella puso el estofado para hacer el caldo. Estaba en el proceso de rozarla cuando se apagó la lámpara; ella vio que su suministro de petróleo se había agotado, al igual que la vela. Decidió tomar un poco de aceite de una de las botellas de invitados de su amo.

Salió al patio y se acercó al primer contenedor; pero se quedó atónita cuando escuchó una voz apagada que preguntaba:

"¿Es este el momento?" "Morgiane notó que esta pregunta comenzó desde el interior de la piel; y, sin perder su presencia mental, respondió en voz baja:" No, todavía no ... ¡pero pronto! En cada adición, recibió la misma pregunta e hizo la misma respuesta. Cuando terminó, la única que estaba llena de aceite, llenó su florero y regresó a la cocina, convencida de que su amo había dado refugio a treinta y ocho ladrones.

Encendió nuevamente la lámpara, tomó una caldera grande y regresó al patio para llenarla de aceite. Luego lo puso en un gran fuego, para que el líquido hirviera rápidamente y, en cada una de las botellas que contenían un ladrón, vertió el aceite hirviendo, quitándoles la vida sin que tuvieran tiempo de defenderse.

Ella hizo esto sin hacer el más mínimo ruido, después de lo cual apagó la lámpara y se paró en la ventana de la cocina para observar lo que iba a suceder. Ella no había estado allí durante un cuarto de hora desde que el ladrón jefe dio la señal acordada arrojando pequeñas piedras. Sin percibir ningún ruido, corrió hacia el patio y, acercándose a las botellas, un olor a aceite caliente y ardor se apoderó de sus fosas nasales. Comprendió que su negocio acababa de fallar una vez más y que solo tenía que huir. Al regresar del baño, Ali-Baba no dejó de sorprenderse cuando vio las botellas de aceite en el patio. Morgiane le contó a su amo lo que había hecho durante la noche y le informó de las marcas en la puerta.

- Todo esto, dijo en conclusión, es el trabajo de los bandidos en el bosque ...

Lo que no puedo explicar es que faltan dos ... Así que debes tener cuidado de nuevo ...

- Morgiane, dice Ali-Baba, nunca olvidaré que te debo mi vida ... ¡Y mientras tanto, te liberaré de la esclavitud! Ayudado por Morgiane, Ali-Baba cavó al final de su jardín un enorme hoyo, en el que enterró los cuerpos de los treinta y siete ladrones, para no llamar la atención de sus vecinos; luego escondió las botellas y las armas y vendió las mulas en varios mercados.

Sin embargo, el jefe de los ladrones no creía haber sido golpeado y, al regresar a la cueva, pensó en los nuevos medios que iba a utilizar para deshacerse de Ali-Baba. Al día siguiente, regresó a la ciudad y se quedó en un khan (bazar), donde transportó telas ricas y telas finas que encontró en su guarida en el bosque. Luego alquiló una tienda frente a la que antes ocupaba Kassim y actualmente el hijo de Ali-Baba.

El jefe de los ladrones que se hacía llamar Khodjah Houssain no tardó mucho en unirse con el joven. Él fue tan lejos como para darle regalos e invitaciones. El hijo de Ali-Baba, naturalmente, se sintió obligado a devolver sus cortesías. Consultó a su padre, quien le dijo que organizara un paseo al día siguiente con Khodjah Houssain y, a su regreso, que lo invitara a sentarse en su mesa, lo cual hizo, pero Houssain se negó a cenar, alegando que no comió ningún alimento salado.

- No importa, dijo Ali-Baba, daré las órdenes necesarias. Y esquivó dar nuevas órdenes a Morgiane. Ella no ocultó su insatisfacción y se prometió a sí misma conocer a este hombre que no comía sal. Con este propósito, ella ayudó a Abdallah, el esclavo de Ali-Baba, a llevar los platos sobre la mesa e inmediatamente reconoció, a pesar de su disfraz, al jefe de los cuarenta ladrones, que escondió una daga debajo de su abrigo.

Me explico a mí mismo, ahora, por qué el desgraciado no quiere comer sal con mi maestro 1, medita algo malo de repente ... ¡Afortunadamente, estoy aquí para evitar que cumpla su propósito! pensó Morgiane.

Se vistió con un traje de bailarina y se ató un cinturón dorado plateado alrededor de su cintura, donde pasó una daga y, acompañada por Abdallah con su tambor vasco, entró al salón y realizó varios bailes. Finalmente, sacó la daga de su cinturón e imaginó que las figuras de un sorprendente diversidad, pretendiendo a su vez querer golpear a un espectador invisible.

Finalmente, tomó con su mano izquierda el tambor vasco de las manos de Abdallah y se lo presentó a Khodjah mientras, en su mano derecha, sostenía la daga. Khodjah Houssain ya había sacado su bolso y se estaba preparando

para abrirlo cuando Morgiane, en posesión de todo su coraje, la apuñaló en el corazón, tan profundo que la muerte fue instantánea.

Soltando el vestido de Khodjah Houssain, le mostró a Ali-Baba la daga con la que estaba armado. - ¿Entiendes ahora por qué tu anfitrión se negó a comer sal contigo? ¿Y no reconoces en él al falso comerciante de petróleo, el líder de los cuarenta ladrones?

- Morgiane, respondió Ali-Baba, te prometí una recompensa digna de tus beneficios: ¡te elijo por nuera! El hijo de Ali-Baba accedió voluntariamente a casarse con Morgiane, y sus nupcias se celebraron unos días después.

El falso Khodjah Houssain fue enterrado en secreto en la tumba que contenía los cuerpos de sus treinta y siete cómplices.

Ali-Baba, aún ignorante de lo que había sido de los dos ladrones que completaron la pandilla, se aseguró de no regresar a la cueva encantada. Sin embargo, después de un año, comenzó el viaje, rodeándose de mil precauciones. Apareció ante la puerta y dijo: "Sésamo, ábrete"; Inmediatamente la puerta se abrió y una mirada fue suficiente para darse cuenta de que nadie había entrado desde la muerte del jefe de brigada.

Y así, de padre a hijo, en la familia de Ali-Baba, transmitimos el secreto de este fabuloso tesoro, gracias al cual él y sus descendientes vivieron en el lujo y el esplendor.

## Vocabulary

English	Spanish
Emptied	Vociado
Measure	Medida
Finishing	Refinamiento
Essential	Esencial
Grabbing	Agarrando
Arriving	Llegando
Recommended	Recomendado
Ceremonial	Ceremonial

Exploits	Exploits
Mounted	Montado

### Questions

- What was the source of earning of Ali-Baba?
- What happened to Kassim when he went to collect gold?
- Who brought back the body of Kassim?

### Answers

- To make a living for himself and his children, he cut wood in the nearby forest and take it back to town to sell it, loaded onto three donkeys that made up his entire fortune.
- He forgot the saying and was being murdered
- Ali-Baba brought back the body of his brother.

### Questions Spanish

1. ¿Cuál fue la fuente de ingresos de Ali-Baba?
2. ¿Qué le sucedió a Kassim cuando fue a recoger oro?
3. ¿Quién trajo de vuelta el cuerpo de Kassim?

### Answers Spanish

1. Para ganarse la vida para él y sus hijos, cortó leña en el bosque cercano y la llevó de vuelta al pueblo para venderla, cargada en tres burros que constituían toda su fortuna.
2. Olvidó el dicho y estaba siendo asesinado.
3. Ali-Baba trajo el cuerpo de su hermano.

### Story 2

#### English

#### **THE BEAUTY AND THE BEAST**

There was once a merchant who was extremely wealthy. He had six children, three boys, and three girls, and, as this merchant was a man of spirit, he spared nothing for the education of his children, and gave them all kinds of masters. His daughters were very beautiful; but the youngest, above all, was

admired, and they called her, when she was little, only. The beautiful child; so that the name remained to him, which gave a lot of jealousy to her sisters. This younger sister, who was more beautiful than her sisters, was as good as they were.

The two older girls were very proud because they were rich; they made ladies, and did not want to receive visits from the other daughters of merchants; they needed quality people for their company. They went to a ball, a comedy, a walk every day, and made fun of their younger sister, who spent most of her time reading good books. As it was known that these girls were very wealthy, several large merchants asked them to marry; but the two elders replied that they would never marry, unless they found a duke or at least a count. La Belle (because I told you it was the name of the youngest), La Belle, I say, thanked those who wished to marry her quite honestly; but she said to them: that she was too young, and that she wished to keep her father company for a few years. Suddenly the merchant lost his property, and he only had a small country house, far from the city.

He said in tears to his children that he had to go and stay in this house, and that by working like peasants, they could live there. Her two eldest daughters replied that they did not want to leave the city and that they had several friends who would be too happy to marry them, although they no longer had any fortune: the good ladies were mistaken; their lovers no longer wanted to look at them when they were poor. As nobody loved them because of their pride, they said: "They do not deserve to be pitied, we are very glad to see their pride lowered; let them go and make the ladies while keeping the sheep." But at the same time, everyone said: "for Beauty, we are very sorry for her misfortune; she is such a good girl; she spoke to poor people with such kindness; she was so sweet, so honest. " There were even several gentlemen who wanted to marry her, although she did not have a penny; but she said to them: that she could not bring herself to abandon her poor father in his misfortune, and that she would follow him to the countryside, to console him and help him to work. Poor Belle had been very distressed at first to lose her fortune, but she said to herself: when I cry very hard, my tears won't do me any good; you must try to be happy without a fortune.

When they arrived at their country house, the merchant and his three sons occupied themselves with plowing the land. Belle got up at four in the morning and hurried to clean the house and prepare dinner for the family. At first, she was very sad because she was not used to working as a servant, but



after two months, she became stronger, and fatigue gave her perfect health. When she had done her work, she read, she played the harpsichord, or she sang while spinning. His two sisters, on the contrary, were bored to death; they got up at ten in the morning, went for a walk all day, and amused themselves by regretting their fine clothes and the companies. See our younger sister, they said to each other, she has a low soul and is so stupid that she is happy with her unhappy situation. The good merchant did not think like his daughters. He knew that Belle was cleaner than his sisters in shining in companies. He admired the virtue of this young girl, and above all, her patience; for his sisters, not content with letting him do all the work in the house, insulted him at all times.

This family had been living in solitude for a year when the merchant received a letter, in which he was told that a ship, on which he had goods, had just arrived happily. This news thought to turn the head to its two elder, who thought that in the end, they could leave this campaign, where they were so bored; and when they saw their father ready to leave, they begged him to bring them dresses, palatines, hairstyles, and all sorts of trifles. La Belle asked him nothing, for she thought to herself that all the money from the merchandise would not be enough to buy what her sisters wanted. You're not asking me to buy you something, said her father. Since you have the kindness of think of me, she said, please bring me a rose, for it does not come here. It's not that Belle cared about a rose, but she did not want to condemn, by her example, the behavior of her sisters, who would have said that it was to distinguish herself that she asked for nothing. The good man left, but when he got there, he was tried for his wares, and after much trouble, he returned as poor as he was before. He had only thirty miles to reach his house, and he was already delighted at the pleasure of seeing his children; but, as it was necessary to pass a large wood, before finding his house, he lost himself. It was snowing horribly; the wind was so great that he threw him twice down from his horse, and, when night came, he thought that he would starve or die of cold, or that wolves would be eaten, that he heard howling around him.

Suddenly, looking at the end of a long alley of trees, he saw a great light, but which seemed far away. He walked over there and saw that this light came from a large palace, which was all lit up. The merchant thanked God for the help he was sending him and hastened to arrive at this castle, but he was very surprised to find no one in the courtyards. His horse, who followed him, seeing a large open stable, entered it, and, having found hay and oats, the

poor animal, which was dying of hunger, threw itself upon it with much greed. The merchant tied him in the stable, and walked towards the house, where he found no one; but, having entered a large room, he found a good fire there, and a table laden with meat, where there was only one cutlery. As the rain and the snow had wet him to the bone, he approached the fire to dry himself and said to himself: the master of the house or his servants will forgive me for the freedom I have taken, and no doubt they will come soon. He waited for a considerable time; but after eleven o'clock struck, without seeing anyone, he could not resist hunger, and took a chicken which he ate in two bites, and trembled. He also drank a few shots of wine, and, becoming more daring, he left the room, and crossed several large apartments, magnificently furnished. In the end, he found a room where there was a good bed, and as it was midnight past and he was tired, he decided to close the door and go to bed.

It was ten o'clock in the morning when he got up the next day, and he was very surprised to find a very clean coat in place of his, which was all spoiled. Certainly, he said, in itself, this palace belongs to some good Fairy who took pity on my situation. He looked out the window and saw no more snow, but cradles of flowers that enchanted the view. He returned to the large room where he had supped the day before and saw a small table where there was chocolate. Thank you, Madame la Fée, he said aloud, for having been kind enough to think of my lunch. The good man, after taking his chocolate, went out to get his horse, and, as he was passing under a cradle of roses, he remembered that Belle had asked him for it, and picked up a branch where there were several. At the same time, he heard a great noise and saw coming to him a Beast so horrible that he was quite ready to faint. "You are very ungrateful," said the Beast to him, in a terrible voice; I saved your life by receiving you in my castle, and, for my pain, and you steal my roses which I love better than all things in the world. One must die to repair this fault; I only give you a quarter of an hour to ask forgiveness from God.

The merchant threw himself on his knees, and said to the beast, clasping his hands: - Monseigneur, forgive me, I did not think I would offend you by picking a rose for one of my daughters, who had asked for it. "My name is not my lord," replied the monster, "but the Beast." I don't like compliments; I want people to say what they think; so do not think you touch me with your flatteries, but you told me that you had girls; I will forgive you, provided that one of your daughters comes voluntarily, to die in your place: do not reason

with me; leave, and if your daughters refuse to die for you, swear that you will return in three months. The good man had no intention of sacrificing one of his daughters to this ugly monster, but he thought, at least I'll have the pleasure of kissing them again. So he swore to come back, and the Beast told him that he could leave whenever he wanted, but, "she added," I don't want you to go away empty-handed. Go back to the room where you slept; you will find a large empty chest there; you can put anything you like in it; I'll have it brought to your house. At the same time, the Beast withdrew, and the good man said to himself; if I must die, I will have the consolation of leaving bread to my poor children.

He returned to the room where he had slept, and, having found a great number of gold coins there, he filled the large chest, of which the Beast had spoken to him, closed it, and, having taken again his horse which he found in the stable he left this palace with a sadness equal to the joy he had when he entered it. His horse took one of the forest roads by himself, and in a few hours, the good man arrived in his little house. His children gathered around him; but, instead of being sensitive to their caresses, the merchant began to cry as he looked at them. He held in his hand the branch of roses, which he brought to Belle: he gave it to her and said to her: Belle, take these roses; they will cost your unhappy father dearly, and immediately he told his family about the fatal adventure that had happened to him. At this tale, her two elders uttered great cries and said insults to the Beauty who did not cry. See what the pride of this little creature produces, they said, why didn't she ask for adjustments like us? But no, miss wanted to distinguish herself; she is going to cause the death of our father, and she is not crying. That would be very useless, replied Belle, why should I mourn the death of my father? He will not perish. Since the monster is willing to accept one of its daughters, I want to indulge in all its fury, and I find myself very happy since by dying, I will have the joy of saving my father and showing him my tenderness. No, my sister, said her three brothers, you will not die, we will go to find this monster, and we will perish under its blows if we cannot kill it. Don't hope so, my children, said the merchant to them, the power of this Beast is so great, that I have no hope of destroying it. I am charmed with Belle's good heart, but I don't want to expose her to death. I am old; I have little time left to live; thus, I will only lose a few years of life, which I regret only because of you, my dear children. I assure you, father, said La Belle, that you would not go to this palace without me; you can't help but follow you.

Although I am young, I am not very attached to life, and I prefer to be devoured by this monster than to die of the grief that your loss would give me. No matter how much one said, Belle wanted absolutely to leave for the beautiful palace, and her sisters were charmed by it because the virtues of this younger sister had inspired them with much jealousy. The merchant was so occupied with the pain of losing his daughter that he did not think of the chest he had filled with gold; but, as soon as he had shut himself up in his bedroom to go to bed, he was astonished to find him at the alley of his bed. He resolved not to tell his children that he had become so rich because his daughters would have liked to return to the city; that he was resolved to die in this campaign; but he confided this secret to Belle, who informed him that some gentlemen had come during his absence and that there were two who loved his sisters. She begged her father to marry them, for she was so good that she loved them and forgave them with all her heart for the harm they had done to her. These two nasty girls rubbed their eyes with an onion, to cry when Belle left with her father, but her brothers were crying, as well as the merchant: there was only Beauty who did not cry because she did not want to increase their pain. The horse took the road to the palace, and in the evening they saw it illuminated, as the first time. The horse was alone in the stable, and the good man entered with his daughter in the large room, where they found a table magnificently served, with two cutlery.

The merchant did not have the heart to eat, but Belle, trying to appear quiet, sat down at the table and served him; then, she said to herself: the Beast wants to fatten me before I eat since it makes me so dear. When they had supper, they heard a great noise, and the merchant said goodbye to his poor daughter, crying; because he thought it was the Beast. Belle couldn't help shuddering when she saw this horrible face, but she reassured herself as best she could, and the monster having asked her if she had come with a good heart; she said to him, trembling, that yes. You are very good, said the Beast, and I am much obliged to you. Good man, leave tomorrow morning, and never dare come back here. Farewell, Beauty. Farewell, the Beast, she replied, and immediately the monster withdrew. Ah! My daughter said the merchant, embracing Belle, I am half-dead with fright. Trust me, leave me here; no, my father, "said Belle firmly," you will leave tomorrow morning, and you will abandon me to the aid of heaven; perhaps he will have pity on me. They went to bed, and though they weren't sleeping all night, hardly were they in their beds when their eyes closed. While sleeping, Belle saw a lady

who said to her: "I am happy with your good heart, Belle; the good deed you do, by giving your life, to save that of your father, will not remain without reward." La Belle, on waking, related this dream to her father, and, although he consoled him a little, that did not prevent her from uttering great cries, when it was necessary to separate from her dear daughter; When he was gone, Belle sat down in the great hall, and began to cry too; but, as she had great courage, she recommended herself to God, and resolved not to grieve, for the short time she had to live; for she firmly believed that the Beast would eat her in the evening. She resolved to walk around while waiting and to visit this beautiful castle. She couldn't help but admire its beauty. But she was very surprised to find a door, on which there had been written: Appartement de la Belle.

She opened the door with haste, and she was dazzled by the magnificence which reigned there; but what struck her most was a large library, a harpsichord, and several music books. You don't want me to be bored; she said, quietly; she then thought, if I only had one day to stay here, I would not have been made such a provision. The thought revived her courage. She opened the library and saw a book in which there were written in gold letters: Wish, orders; you are here the queen and the mistress. Alas! She said, sighing, I wish nothing but to see my poor father, and to know what he is doing now: she had said that in herself. What was his surprise! Throwing his eyes on a large mirror, to see his house there, where his father arrived with an extremely sad face.

His sisters came to meet him, and, despite the grimaces they made to seem distressed, the joy they felt at the loss of their sister appeared on their faces. A moment later, all that disappeared, and Beauty could not help thinking that the Beast was very accommodating, that she had nothing to fear from her. At noon she found the table set, and during her dinner, she heard an excellent concert, although she saw no one. In the evening, as she was about to sit at the table, she heard the noise made by the Beast, and could not help shuddering. Beauty, said this monster to her, would you like me to see your supper? - You are the master, replied Belle in trembling. "No," replied the Beast, "there is no mistress here except you." You only have to tell me to go if I bore you; I will go out immediately. Tell me, don't you find me ugly? "That is true," said La Belle, "for I cannot lie, but I think you are very good." "You are right," said the monster, "but, besides being ugly, I have no mind: I know very well that I am only a Beast." "We are not stupid," replied Belle,

when we think we have no mind: a fool never knew that. "Eat then, Beauty," said the monster to her, and try not to be bored in your house, for all this is yours, and I would be sad if you weren't happy. "You are very kind," said Belle. I admit that I am very happy with your heart; when I think about it, you don't seem so ugly anymore. - Oh lady, yes, replied the Beast, my heart is good, but I am a monster. "There are many men who are more monsters than you," said Belle, and I love you better with your figure than those who, with the figure of men, hide a false, corrupt, ungrateful heart. "If I were witty," replied the Beast, "I would give you a big compliment to thank you, but I'm a fool, and all I can tell you is that I have to.

La Belle supped with a good appetite. She was almost no longer afraid of the monster, but she almost died of fright when he said to her: "La Belle, would you like to be my wife?" She was some time without answering: she was afraid of arousing the monster's anger, by refusing it: she said to him, however, trembling: no, the Beast. At that moment, this poor monster wanted to sigh, and he made a whistle so appalling that the whole palace sounded; but Belle was soon reassured, for the Beast having said to her sadly: Adieu, therefore, Belle, left the room, turning from time to time to look at her again. Belle, seeing herself alone, felt great compassion for this poor Beast: Alas! She said it's too bad she's so ugly, she's so good!

Belle spent three months in this palace with enough tranquility. Every evening, the Beast visited her, entertained her during supper, with enough common sense, but never with what is called spirit, in the world. Every day Belle discovered new kindnesses in this monster. The habit of seeing him had accustomed her to her ugliness, and, far from fearing the moment of her visit, she often looked at her watch to see if it was nearly nine o'clock, for the Beast never failed to come at this hour. There was only one thing that bothered the Beauty; it is that the monster, before going to bed, always asked her if she wanted to be his wife, and seemed penetrated with pain when she said to him that no. One day she said: "You grieve me, the Beast; I wish I could marry you, but I'm too sincere to make you believe that it will never happen. I will always be your friend; try to settle for that. "It must be," replied the Beast; I do myself, justice. I know that I am very horrible, but I love you very much; however, I am too happy that you are willing to stay here; promise me that you will never leave me". Belle blushed at these words.

She had seen in her mirror that her father was sick with grief at having lost her, and she wanted to see him again. "I could well promise you," she said to

the Beast, "that I will never leave you completely, but I want so much to see my father again, that I will die of pain if you refuse me this pleasure." "I prefer to die myself," said the monster "than to give you sorrow. I will send you to your father; you will stay there, and your poor Beast will die of pain. - No," said Belle, crying, "I love you too much to want to cause your death. I promise to come back in eight days. You made me see that my sisters are married and that my brothers left for the army. My father is alone, suffer me to stay with him for a week. "You will be there tomorrow morning," said the Beast, but remember your promise. You only have to put your ring on a table when you lie down when you want to come back. Farewell, Beauty".

The Beast sighed according to its custom, saying these words, and Beauty went to bed very sad to see her afflicted. When she woke up in the morning, she found herself in her father's house, and, having rung a bell which was beside her bed, she saw the servant coming, and who made a great cry when she saw her. The good man ran to this cry, and nearly died of joy when he saw his dear daughter, and they remained kissed for more than a quarter of an hour. La Belle, after the first transports, thought that she had no clothes to get up; but the servant said to her, that she had just found in the adjoining room a large chest full of dresses all of gold, trimmed with diamonds. Belle thanked the good Beast for her attentions; she took the least rich of these dresses, and told the servant to hug the others, which she wanted to present to her sisters; but hardly had she said these words when the safe disappeared. Her father told her that the Beast wanted her to keep it all for herself, and immediately the dresses and the trunk came back to the same place. La Belle got dressed, and during this time, they warned her sisters, who came running with their husbands; they were both very unhappy. The eldest had married a gentleman, handsome as day; but he was so in love with his own figure, that he was occupied only with that, from morning to evening, and despised the beauty of his wife. The second had married a man who had a lot of wits, but he only used it to make everyone angry, and his wife the first. The Belle's sisters almost died of pain when they saw her dressed like a princess, and more beautiful than the day. No matter how she stroked them, nothing could stifle their jealousy, which increased greatly when she told them how happy she was. These two jealous men went down to the garden to cry there quite at ease, and they said to themselves: "Why is this little creature happier than us?" Are we not more kind than she? - My sister said the elder; a thought comes to me; let us try to stop him here for more than eight days; his foolish

Beast will get angry that he has missed his word, and maybe she will devour it. "You are right, sister," replied the other. For this, he must make great caresses; and, having taken this resolution, they went back up, and made so much friendship to their sister, that Beauty cried with joy. When the eight days had passed, the two sisters tore off their hair and made them so distressed by her departure, that she promised to stay another eight days with her father.

However, Belle reproached herself for the sorrow she was going to give to her poor Beast, whom she loved with all her heart, and she was bored of not seeing her anymore. The tenth night that she spent with her father, she dreamed that she was in the garden of the palace and that she saw the Beast lying on the grass and almost dying, which reproached her for her ingratitude. La Belle awoke with a start and shed tears. "Am I not very mean," Said she, "of giving grief to a Beast who has so much indulgence for me?" Is it her fault if she is so ugly, and if she has a little spirit? It is good; it is better than anything else. Why didn't I want to marry her? I would be happier with her than my sisters with their husbands. It is neither the beauty nor the spirit of a husband that makes a woman content: it is the goodness of character, virtue, complacency, and the Beast has all these good qualities. I have no love for her, but I have esteem, friendship, and gratitude. Come on; you must not make her unhappy: I would reproach myself all my life for my ingratitude. At these words, Belle gets up, puts her ring on the table, and come back to bed. No sooner was she in bed than she fell asleep, and when she woke up in the morning, she saw with joy that she was in the palace of the Beast.

She dressed beautifully to please him, and was bored to death all day, waiting for nine o'clock in the evening; but the clock may sound, the Beast did not appear. Belle then feared that she had caused her death. She ran all over the palace, shouting loudly; she was in despair. After searching everywhere, she remembered her dream and ran into the garden towards the canal, where she had seen her while sleeping. She found poor Beast lying unconscious, and she thought she was dead. She threw herself on his body, without hating his face; and, feeling that her heart was still beating, she took water from the canal, and threw it on his head.

The beast opened its eyes and said to Beauty: "have forgotten your promise; the sorrow of having lost you made me resolve to let myself starve, but I die happy since it is my pleasure to see you again. "No, my dear Beast, you will not die," said Belle, "you will live to become my husband; from that moment,



I give you my hand, and I swear that I will be only yours. Alas! I thought I had nothing but friendship for you, but the pain that I feel makes me see that I could not live without seeing you. No sooner had Belle said these words than she saw the castle shining with light; fireworks, music, everything announced a party to him, but all these beauties did not stop her sight: she turned to her dear Beast, whose danger made her shudder. What was his surprise! The Beast had disappeared, and she saw no more at his feet than a prince more handsome than Love, who thanked her for having finished his enchantment. Although this prince deserved all her attention, she couldn't help asking him where the Beast was. "You see her at your feet," said the prince. A wicked fairy had condemned me to remain under this figure until a beautiful girl agreed to marry me, and she had forbidden me to make my spirit appear. So there was only you in the world, good enough to let you touch the goodness of my character, and, by offering you my crown, I cannot fulfill the obligations which I have for you. La Belle, pleasantly surprised, gave her hand to this handsome prince to get up. They went together to the chateau, and the Belle almost died of joy when she found, in the great hall, her father and all her family, which the lovely lady, who had appeared to her in a dream, had transported to the chateau. - Beautiful, said this lady who was a great fairy, come and receive the reward of your good choice: you preferred virtue to beauty and spirit, you deserve to find all these qualities united in one person. You will become a great queen: I hope that the throne will not de Story your virtues. - For you, ladies said the fairy to the two sisters of Belle; I know your heart and all the mischief it contains. Become two statues, but keep all your reason under the stone that will envelop you. You will remain at the door of your sister's palace, and I impose no pain on you except to witness her happiness. You cannot return to your first state until you recognize your faults, but I am afraid that you will not always remain statues. One corrects oneself for pride, anger, gluttony, and laziness: but it is a kind of miracle that the conversion of a wicked and envious heart. At the moment, the fairy gave a wand which transported all those who were in this room, to the kingdom of the prince. His subjects saw him with joy, and he married Beauty, who lived with him for a long time, and in perfect happiness because he was founded on virtue.

### **Spanish Tanslation**

### **LA BELLA Y LA BESTIA**

Había una vez un comerciante que era extremadamente rico. Tuvo seis hijos, tres niños y tres niñas; y, como este comerciante era un hombre de espíritu, no escatimó nada para la educación de sus hijos y les dio todo tipo de maestros. Sus hijas eran muy hermosas. pero la más joven, sobre todo, era admirada y la llamaron, cuando era pequeña, solo La niña hermosa; para que le quedara el nombre; lo que dio muchos celos a sus hermanas. Esta hermana menor, que era más hermosa que sus hermanas, era tan buena como ellas.

Las dos niñas mayores estaban muy orgullosas porque eran ricas; hicieron damas y no quisieron recibir visitas de las otras hijas de comerciantes; Necesitaban personas de calidad para su empresa. Asistieron a un baile, una comedia, una caminata todos los días y se burlaron de su hermana menor, que pasaba la mayor parte de su tiempo leyendo buenos libros. Como se sabía que estas chicas eran muy ricas, varios grandes comerciantes les pidieron que se casaran; pero los dos ancianos respondieron que nunca se casarían, a menos que encontraran un duque, o al menos un conde. La Belle (porque te dije que era el nombre del más joven), La Belle, digo, agradeció a quienes deseaban casarse con él con toda honestidad; pero ella les dijo: que era demasiado joven y que deseaba acompañar a su padre durante unos años. De repente, el comerciante perdió su propiedad y solo tenía una pequeña casa de campo, lejos de la ciudad.

Dijo llorando a sus hijos que tenía que irse y quedarse en esta casa, y que trabajando como campesinos, podían vivir allí. Sus dos hijas mayores respondieron que no querían salir de la ciudad, y que tenían varios amigos que estarían muy felices de casarse con ellos, aunque ya no tenían fortuna: las buenas damas estaban equivocadas; sus amantes ya no quería mirarlos cuando eran pobres. Como nadie los amaba por su orgullo, dijeron: “No merecen ser compadecidos, estamos muy contentos de ver que bajan su orgullo; déjalos ir y hacer las damas mientras guardas las ovejas ”. Pero al mismo tiempo, todos decían: “por Belleza, lamentamos mucho su desgracia; ella es una buena chica; ella habló a los pobres con tanta amabilidad; ella era tan dulce, tan honesta. "Incluso había varios caballeros que querían casarse con ella, aunque ella no tenía un centavo; pero ella les dijo: que no podía obligarse a abandonar a su pobre padre en su desgracia, y que lo seguiría al campo , para consolarlo y ayudarlo a trabajar. La pobre Belle había estado muy angustiada al principio por perder su fortuna; pero se dijo a sí misma: cuando lloro mucho, mis lágrimas no me harán ningún bien; debes tratar de ser feliz sin fortuna

Cuando llegaron a su casa de campo, el comerciante y sus tres hijos se dedicaron a arar la tierra. Belle se levantó a las cuatro de la mañana y se apresuró a limpiar la casa y preparar la cena para la familia. Al principio estaba muy triste porque no estaba acostumbrada a trabajar como sirvienta; pero después de dos meses se volvió más fuerte y la fatiga le dio una salud perfecta. Cuando había terminado su trabajo, leía, tocaba el clavicordio o cantaba mientras giraba. Sus dos hermanas, por el contrario, estaban aburridas hasta la muerte; se levantaban a las diez de la mañana, salían a caminar todo el día y se divertían lamentando su ropa fina y las compañías. Miren a nuestra hermana menor, se dijeron, ella tiene un alma baja y es tan estúpida que está feliz con su situación infeliz. El buen comerciante no pensaba como sus hijas. Sabía que Belle era más limpia que sus hermanas al brillar en las empresas. Admiraba la virtud de esta joven y, sobre todo, su paciencia; para sus hermanas, no contentas con dejarlo hacer todo el trabajo en la casa, lo insultó en todo momento. Esta familia había estado viviendo en soledad durante un año, cuando el comerciante recibió una carta, en la que le dijeron que un barco, en el que tenía mercancías, acababa de llegar felizmente. Esta noticia pensó en volver la cabeza a sus dos mayores, quienes pensaron que al final podrían abandonar esta campaña, donde estaban tan aburridos; y cuando vieron a su padre listo para partir, le rogaron que les trajera vestidos, palatinas, peinados y todo tipo de bagatelas. La Belle no le preguntó nada; porque pensó para sí misma que todo el dinero de la mercancía no sería suficiente para comprar lo que sus hermanas querían. No me estás pidiendo que te compre algo, dijo su padre. Como tienes la amabilidad de pensar en mí, dijo, por favor tráeme una rosa, porque no viene aquí. No es que a Belle le importara una rosa; pero ella no quiso condenar, con su ejemplo, el comportamiento de sus hermanas, que habrían dicho que era para distinguirse que no pedía nada. El buen hombre se fue; pero cuando llegó allí fue juzgado por sus mercancías, y después de muchos problemas regresó tan pobre como antes. Tenía solo treinta millas para llegar a su casa, y ya estaba encantado con el placer de ver a sus hijos; pero, como era necesario pasar un gran bosque, antes de encontrar su casa, se perdió. Estaba nevando horriblemente; el viento era tan fuerte que lo arrojó dos veces de su caballo y, cuando llegó la noche, pensó que moriría de hambre o moriría de frío, o que los lobos serían comidos, y oyó aullidos a su alrededor.

De repente, al mirar el final de un largo callejón de árboles, vio una gran luz, pero que parecía estar muy lejos. Caminó hasta allí y vio que esta luz

provenía de un gran palacio que estaba iluminado. El comerciante agradeció a Dios por la ayuda que le estaba enviando y se apresuró a llegar a este castillo; pero estaba muy sorprendido de no encontrar a nadie en los patios. Su caballo, que lo siguió, al ver un gran establo abierto, entró en él; y, al encontrar heno y avena, el pobre animal, que se estaba muriendo de hambre, se arrojó sobre él con mucha codicia. El comerciante lo ató en el establo, y caminó hacia la casa, donde no encontró a nadie; pero, al entrar en una habitación grande, encontró un buen fuego allí, y una mesa cargada de carne, donde solo había una cubertería. Como la lluvia y la nieve lo habían mojado hasta los huesos, se acercó al fuego para secarse, y se dijo a sí mismo: el dueño de la casa o sus sirvientes me perdonarán la libertad que he tomado, y sin duda vendrán pronto. Esperó un tiempo considerable; pero después de las once en punto, sin ver a nadie, no pudo resistir el hambre, tomó un pollo que comió en dos bocados y tembló. También bebió unos tragos de vino y, cada vez más atrevido, salió de la habitación y cruzó varios apartamentos grandes, magníficamente amueblados. Al final encontró una habitación donde había una buena cama, y como era medianoche y estaba cansado, decidió cerrar la puerta y acostarse.

Eran las diez de la mañana cuando se levantó al día siguiente, y estaba muy sorprendido de encontrar un abrigo muy limpio en su lugar, todo estropeado. Ciertamente, dijo, en sí mismo, este palacio pertenece a un buen Hada que se compadeció de mi situación. Miró por la ventana y no vio más nieve; pero cunas de flores que encantaron la vista. Regresó a la gran sala donde había cenado el día anterior, y vio una pequeña mesa donde había chocolate. Gracias, Madame la Fée, dijo en voz alta, por haber tenido la amabilidad de pensar en mi almuerzo. El buen hombre, después de tomar su chocolate, salió a buscar su caballo y, al pasar bajo una cuna de rosas, recordó que Belle se lo había pedido y recogió una rama donde había varias. Al mismo tiempo, escuchó un gran ruido y vio venir a él una Bestia tan horrible que estaba bastante listo para desmayarse. "Eres muy desagradecido", le dijo la Bestia con voz terrible; Te salvé la vida al recibirte en mi castillo y, por mi dolor, me robas las rosas que amo más que todas las cosas del mundo. Uno debe morir para reparar esta falla; Solo te doy un cuarto de hora para pedirle perdón a Dios El mercader se arrodilló y le dijo a la bestia, juntando sus manos: - Monseñor, perdóneme, no pensé que lo ofendería al elegir una rosa para una de mis hijas, que la había pedido. "Mi nombre no es mi señor", respondió el monstruo, "sino la Bestia". No me gustan los cumplidos, quiero

que la gente diga lo que piensa; así que no creas que me tocas con tus halagos; pero me dijiste que tenías chicas; Te perdonaré, siempre que una de tus hijas venga voluntariamente a morir en tu lugar: no razones conmigo; vete, y si tus hijas se niegan a morir por ti, jura que regresarás en tres meses. El buen hombre no tenía intención de sacrificar a una de sus hijas por este monstruo feo; pero pensó, al menos tendré el placer de besarlos de nuevo. Entonces juró regresar, y la Bestia le dijo que podía irse cuando quisiera; pero "agregó," no quiero que te vayas con las manos vacías. Regresa a la habitación donde dormiste, allí encontrarás un gran cofre vacío; puedes poner lo que quieras en ella; Lo llevaré a tu casa. Al mismo tiempo, la Bestia se retiró, y el buen hombre se dijo a sí mismo; si tengo que morir, tendré el consuelo de dejar pan a mis pobres hijos.

Regresó a la habitación donde había dormido y, después de encontrar allí una gran cantidad de monedas de oro, llenó el cofre grande, del cual la Bestia le había hablado, lo cerró y, una vez más, tomó su caballo que encontró En el establo salió de este palacio con una tristeza igual a la alegría que tenía cuando entró. Su caballo tomó uno de los caminos del bosque solo, y en pocas horas el buen hombre llegó a su casita. Sus hijos se reunieron a su alrededor; pero, en lugar de ser sensible a sus caricias, el comerciante comenzó a llorar mientras los miraba. Sostenía en su mano la rama de rosas, que le llevó a Belle: se la dio y le dijo: Belle, toma estas rosas; le costarán caro a tu infeliz padre; e inmediatamente le contó a su familia sobre la aventura fatal que le había sucedido. Ante este cuento, sus dos mayores lanzaron grandes gritos y le insultaron a la Bella que no lloraba. Mira lo que produce el orgullo de esta pequeña criatura, dijeron; ¿Por qué no pidió ajustes como nosotros? pero no, la señorita quería distinguirse; ella va a causar la muerte de nuestro padre y no está llorando. Eso sería muy inútil, respondió Belle, ¿por qué debería llorar la muerte de mi padre? Él no perecerá. Como el monstruo está dispuesto a aceptar a una de sus hijas, quiero disfrutar de toda su furia, y me encuentro muy feliz, ya que al morir tendré la alegría de salvar a mi padre y mostrarle mi ternura. No, mi hermana, dijeron sus tres hermanos, no morirás, iremos a buscar a este monstruo y pereceremos bajo sus golpes, si no podemos matarlo. No lo espero, hijos míos, les dijo el comerciante, el poder de esta Bestia es tan grande que no tengo esperanzas de destruirlo. Me encanta el buen corazón de Belle, pero no quiero exponerla a la muerte. Soy viejo, me queda poco tiempo de vida; por lo tanto, solo perderé algunos años de vida, lo cual lamento solo por ustedes, mis queridos

hijos. Le aseguro, padre, dijo La Belle, que no irá a este palacio sin mí; No puedes evitar seguirte.

Aunque soy joven, no estoy muy apegado a la vida, y prefiero ser devorado por este monstruo, que morir de la pena que me causaría su pérdida. No importa cuánto dijera uno, Belle quería irse al hermoso palacio, y sus hermanas quedaron encantadas con él, porque las virtudes de esta hermana menor los habían inspirado con muchos celos. El comerciante estaba tan ocupado con el dolor de perder a su hija que no pensó en el cofre que había llenado de oro; pero, tan pronto como se encerró en su habitación para acostarse, se sorprendió mucho de encontrarlo en el callejón de su cama. Decidió no decirles a sus hijos que se había vuelto tan rico porque a sus hijas les hubiera gustado volver a la ciudad; que estaba decidido a morir en esta campaña; pero le confió este secreto a Belle, quien le informó que algunos caballeros habían venido durante su ausencia, y que había dos que amaban a sus hermanas. Ella le rogó a su padre que se casara con ellos; porque era tan buena que los amaba y los perdonaba con todo su corazón por el daño que le habían hecho. Estas dos chicas desagradables se frotaron los ojos con una cebolla, para llorar cuando Belle se fue con su padre; pero sus hermanos estaban llorando, al igual que el comerciante: solo había Belle que no lloraba, porque no quería aumentar su dolor. El caballo tomó el camino hacia el palacio, y por la noche lo vieron iluminado, como la primera vez. El caballo estaba solo en el establo, y el buen hombre entró con su hija en la gran sala, donde encontraron una mesa magníficamente servida, con dos cubiertos.

El comerciante no tenía corazón para comer; pero Belle, tratando de parecer callada, se sentó a la mesa y le sirvió; entonces se dijo a sí misma: la Bestia quiere engordarme antes de comer, ya que me hace tan querida. Cuando cenaron, oyeron un gran ruido, y el comerciante se despidió de su pobre hija, llorando; porque pensó que era la Bestia. Belle no pudo evitar estremecerse cuando vio esta cara horrible; pero se tranquilizó lo mejor que pudo y el monstruo le preguntó si había venido con buen corazón; ella le dijo, temblando, que sí. Eres muy bueno, dijo la Bestia, y te lo agradezco mucho. Buen hombre, vete mañana por la mañana y nunca te atrevas a volver aquí. Adiós, belleza. Adiós, la Bestia, respondió ella, e inmediatamente el monstruo se retiró. Ah! Mi hija, dijo el comerciante, abrazando a Belle, estoy medio muerta de miedo. Confía en mí, déjame aquí; no, mi padre ", dijo Belle con firmeza, " te irás mañana por la mañana y me abandonarás en ayuda del cielo; tal vez tendrá piedad de mí. Se acostaron y pensaron que no estaban

durmiendo toda la noche; pero apenas estaban en sus camas cuando cerraron los ojos. Mientras dormía, Belle vio a una señora que le dijo: "Estoy feliz con tu buen corazón, Belle; la buena acción que haces al dar tu vida para salvar la de tu padre no quedará sin recompensa". La Bella, al despertar, le relató este sueño a su padre y, aunque lo consoló un poco, eso no le impidió lanzar grandes gritos cuando era necesario separarse de su querida hija; Cuando se fue, Belle se sentó en el gran pasillo, y comenzó a llorar también; pero, como tenía un gran coraje, se recomendó a Dios y decidió no llorar por el poco tiempo que tuvo que vivir; porque ella creía firmemente que la Bestia se la comería por la noche. Decidió caminar mientras esperaba y visitar este hermoso castillo. Ella no pudo evitar admirar su belleza. Pero se sorprendió mucho al encontrar una puerta, en la que había escrito: Appartement de la Belle.

Abrió la puerta apresuradamente, y la magnificencia que reinaba allí la deslumbró; pero lo que más le llamó la atención fue una gran biblioteca, un clavecín y varios libros de música. No quieres que me aburra, dijo en voz baja; Entonces pensó, si tan solo tuviera un día para quedarme aquí, no habría tenido esa disposición. La idea revivió su coraje. Abrió la biblioteca y vio un libro en el que estaban escritas en letras doradas: Deseo, orden; Estás aquí, la reina y la amante. ¡Pobre de mí! dijo, suspirando, no deseo nada más que ver a mi pobre padre y saber lo que está haciendo ahora: lo había dicho ella misma. ¡Cuál fue su sorpresa! Lanzando sus ojos en un gran espejo, para ver su casa allí, donde su padre llegó con una cara extremadamente triste.

Sus hermanas vinieron a su encuentro y, a pesar de las muecas que parecían angustiadas, la alegría que sintieron por la pérdida de su hermana apareció en sus rostros. Un momento después, todo eso desapareció, y Bella no pudo evitar pensar que la Bestia era muy complaciente, que no tenía nada que temer de ella. Al mediodía encontró la mesa puesta, y durante su cena escuchó un excelente concierto, aunque no vio a nadie. Por la noche, cuando estaba a punto de sentarse a la mesa, escuchó el ruido de la Bestia y no pudo evitar estremecerse. Bella, le dijo este monstruo, ¿quieres que te vea cenar? - Tú eres el maestro, respondió Belle temblando. "No", respondió la Bestia, "no hay amante aquí excepto tú". Solo tienes que decirme que vaya si te aburro; voy a salir dijo Belle. Admito que estoy muy feliz con tu corazón; cuando lo pienso, ya no pareces tan feo. - Oh señora, sí, respondió la Bestia, mi corazón es bueno, pero soy un monstruo. "Hay muchos hombres que son más monstruos que tú", dijo Belle; y te amo mejor con tu figura que aquellos

que, con la figura de los hombres, esconden un corazón falso, corrupto e ingrato. "Si fuera ingenioso", respondió la Bestia, "te daría un gran cumplido para agradecerte; pero soy un tonto, y todo lo que puedo decirte es que tengo que hacerlo".

La Belle suppa de buen apetito. Casi ya no le tenía miedo al monstruo; pero ella casi murió de miedo cuando él le dijo: "La Belle, ¿te gustaría ser mi esposa?" Estuvo un tiempo sin Answers Spanish: tenía miedo de despertar la ira del monstruo, al rechazarla: le dijo, sin embargo, temblando: no, la Bestia. En ese momento, este pobre monstruo quiso suspirar, e hizo un silbido tan terrible que sonó todo el palacio; pero Belle pronto se tranquilizó, ya que la Bestia le había dicho con tristeza: Adieu, por lo tanto, Belle, salió de la habitación, volviéndose de vez en cuando para mirarla de nuevo. Belle, al verse sola, sintió una gran compasión por esta pobre Bestia: ¡Ay! ella dijo, ¡qué pena que sea tan fea, que sea tan buena!

Belle pasó tres meses en este palacio con suficiente tranquilidad. Todas las noches, la Bestia lo visitaba, lo entretenía durante la cena, con suficiente sentido común, pero nunca con lo que se llama espíritu, en el mundo. Todos los días Belle descubrió nuevas bondades en Este monstruo. La costumbre de verlo tenía la acostumbró a su fealdad; y, lejos de temer el momento de su visita, a menudo miraba su reloj para ver si eran casi las nueve en punto; porque la Bestia nunca dejó de venir a esta hora. Solo había una cosa que molestaba a la Belleza, es que el monstruo, antes de acostarse, siempre le preguntaba si quería ser su esposa, y parecía penetrado por el dolor cuando ella le decía que no. Un día ella dijo: "Me entristeces, la Bestia; Desearía poder casarme contigo, pero soy demasiado sincero para hacerte creer que nunca sucederá. Siempre sere tu amigo; intenta conformarte con eso. "Debe ser", respondió la Bestia; Yo me hago justicia. Sé que soy muy horrible. pero yo te amo muchísimo; sin embargo, estoy muy feliz de que estés dispuesto a quedarte aquí; prométeme que nunca me dejarás ". Belle se sonrojó ante estas palabras.

Había visto en su espejo que su padre estaba enfermo de pena por haberla perdido; y ella quería volver a verlo. "Bien podría prometerte", le dijo a la Bestia, "que nunca te dejaré por completo; pero quiero tanto volver a ver a mi padre, que moriré de dolor si me rechazas este placer". Prefiero morirme ", dijo el monstruo," que darte pena. Te enviaré a tu padre; te quedarás allí, y tu pobre Bestia morirá de dolor. - No, dijo Belle, llorando, te amo demasiado como para querer causar tu muerte. Prometo volver en ocho días. Me hiciste



ver que mis hermanas están casadas y que mis hermanos se fueron al ejército. Mi padre está solo, haz que me quede con él una semana. "Estarás allí mañana por la mañana", dijo la Bestia; Pero recuerda tu promesa. Solo tienes que poner tu anillo en una mesa cuando te acuestas, cuando quieres volver. Adiós, belleza "

La Bestia suspiró de acuerdo con su costumbre, diciendo estas palabras, y Bella se fue a la cama muy triste al verla afligida. Cuando se despertó por la mañana, se encontró en la casa de su padre; y, habiendo tocado una campana que estaba al lado de su cama, vio el Habían pasado ocho días, las dos hermanas les arrancaron el pelo y la angustiaron tanto por su partida, que prometió quedarse otros ocho días con su padre.

Sin embargo, Belle se reprochó a sí misma la tristeza que le iba a dar a su pobre Bestia, a quien amaba con todo su corazón, y estaba aburrida de no volver a verla. La décima noche que pasó con su padre, soñó que estaba en el jardín del palacio, y que vio a la Bestia tirada en el pasto y casi muriendo, lo que le reprochó su ingratitud.

La Belle se despertó sobresaltada y derramó lágrimas. "¿No soy muy mala", dijo ella, "de dar pena a una Bestia que tiene tanta indulgencia para mí?" ¿Es su culpa si ella es tan fea y si tiene poco espíritu? Es bueno, es mejor que todo lo demás. ¿Por qué no quería casarme con ella? Sería más feliz con ella que mis hermanas con sus maridos. No es la belleza ni el espíritu de un marido lo que hace feliz a una mujer: es la bondad del carácter, la virtud, la complacencia; y la Bestia tiene todas estas buenas cualidades. No la amo, pero tengo estima, amistad, gratitud. Vamos, no debes hacerla infeliz: me reprocharía toda mi vida por mi ingratitud. Ante estas palabras, Belle se levanta, pone su anillo sobre la mesa y vuelve a la cama. En cuanto estuvo en la cama, se durmió; y cuando se despertó por la mañana, vio con alegría que estaba en el palacio de la Bestia.

Ella se vistió maravillosamente para complacerlo, y estuvo aburrida hasta la muerte todo el día, esperando las nueve de la noche; pero el reloj puede sonar, la Bestia no apareció. Belle entonces temió haber causado su muerte. Corrió por todo el palacio, gritando en voz alta; ella estaba desesperada. Después de buscar por todas partes, recordó su sueño y corrió hacia el jardín hacia el canal, donde la había visto mientras dormía. Encontró a la pobre Bestia inconsciente y pensó que estaba muerta. Ella se arrojó sobre su cuerpo, sin odiar su rostro; y, sintiendo que su corazón aún latía, tomó agua del canal y se la arrojó a la cabeza.

La Bestia abrió los ojos y le dijo a Bella: "Olvidé tu promesa; el dolor de haberte perdido me hizo decidir dejarme morir de hambre; pero muero feliz, ya que es un placer verte de nuevo. "No, mi querida Bestia, no morirás", dijo Belle, "vivirás para convertirte en mi esposo; desde ese momento te doy mi mano y juro que seré solo tuya. ¡Ay! Creí que tenía nada más que amistad para ti; pero el dolor que siento me hace ver que no podría vivir sin verte. Tan pronto como Belle dijo estas palabras, vio que el castillo brillaba con luz; fuegos artificiales, música, todo anunciaba una fiesta para él. ; pero todas estas bellezas no detuvieron su vista: se volvió hacia su querida Bestia, cuyo peligro la hizo estremecerse. ¡Cuál fue su sorpresa! La Bestia había desaparecido, y no vio a sus pies más que un príncipe más guapo que Amor. quien le agradeció por haber terminado su encanto. Aunque este príncipe merecía toda su atención, no pudo evitar preguntarle dónde estaba la Bestia. "La ves a tus pies", dijo el príncipe. Un hada malvada me había condenado a permanecer. bajo esta cifra, hasta que una hermosa niña acordó casarse conmigo y me había prohibido hacer mi espíritu aparece. Así que solo eras tú en el mundo, lo suficientemente bueno como para dejarte tocar la bondad de mi personaje; y, al ofrecerte mi corona, no puedo cumplir con las obligaciones que tengo para ti. La Belle, gratamente sorprendida, le dio la mano a este apuesto príncipe para que se levantara. Fueron juntos al castillo, y la Bella casi murió de alegría cuando encontró, en el gran salón, a su padre y a toda su familia, que la encantadora dama, que se le había aparecido en un sueño, había transportado al castillo. - Hermosa, dijo esta dama que era una gran hada, ven y recibe la recompensa de tu buena elección: preferiste la virtud a la belleza y el espíritu, mereces encontrar todas estas cualidades unidas en una sola persona. Te convertirás en un gran Reina: Espero que el trono no destruya tus virtudes. - Para ustedes, damas, dijo el hada a las dos hermanas de Belle, conozco su corazón y toda la travesura que contiene. Conviértete en dos estatuas; pero guarda toda tu razón debajo de la piedra que te envolverá. Permanecerás en la puerta del palacio de tu hermana, y no te impondré ningún dolor excepto ser testigo de su felicidad. No puede regresar a su primer estado hasta que reconozca sus fallas; pero me temo que no siempre serán estatuas. Uno se corrige por orgullo, ira, glotonería y pereza: pero es una especie de milagro que la conversión de un corazón malvado y envidioso. En el momento, el hada dio una varita que transportó a todos los que estaban en esta habitación, al reino del príncipe. Sus súbditos lo vieron con alegría, y se casó con Beauty, quien vivió con él durante mucho tiempo,

y en perfecta felicidad, porque se fundó en la virtud.

## Vocabulary

English	Spanish
ball	pelota
comedy	comedia
merchant	comerciante
book	libro
young	joven
house	casa
country	país
ask	pedir
insult	insulto
sheep	oveja

## Questions

- How many children did merchant has?
- What were the conditions of elder sisters to marry someone?
- What happened to the beauty at the end?

## Answers

- He had six children, three boys, and three girls
- The two elders sisters put conditions that they would never marry unless they found a duke or at least a count.
- She got married to the prince.

## Questions Spanish

1. ¿Cuántos hijos tuvo el comerciante?
2. ¿Cuáles fueron las condiciones de las hermanas mayores para casarse con alguien?

3. ¿Qué pasó con la belleza al final?

**Answers Spanish**

1. Tenía seis hijos, tres niños y tres niñas.
2. Las dos hermanas mayores ponen condiciones con las que nunca se casarán, a menos que encuentren un duque, o al menos un conde.
3. Ella se sintió mal por el precio.

Part 2  
**SPANISH CONVERSATIONS**

## CHAPTER#1: STARTING CONVERSATION AT SHOP/RESTAURANT

---

### Dialogue 1

#### English

##### 1. CHANGE MONEY

Client: Good morning. Excuse me; I'd like to change some money.

Employee: What do you want to change?

Client: I would like to exchange 1000 US dollars in Euros. What is your exchange rate?

Clerk: The exchange rate is 1.27 Dollars for one Euro. It's very convenient.

Customer: Are there any commissions?

Employee: The commission is equivalent to 2% of the sum to be changed.

Client: Okay, I want to change them.

Clerk: Wait a moment. I go to the safe and go back.

Customer: Okay.

Clerk: Then, 1000 US dollars is 787 euros. Here's to you.

Customer: Thanks a lot. Do you also have Japanese Yen?

Employee: Not currently, but we can order them. They will arrive here by Tuesday if in no hurry. Their exchange rate is 109 yen for one US dollar.

Customer: Thank you. I would like to buy Yens because I have to go to Tokyo for a business trip next week. I'll come on Tuesday then.

Clerk: Thank you very much!

Customer: Goodbye

#### Spanish

##### 1. CAMBIAR DINERO

Cliente: ¡Buenos días! Disculpe, ¿Me gustaría cambiar algo de dinero?

Empleado: ¿Cuánto quiere cambiar?

Cliente: Me gustaría cambiar 1000 dólares estadounidenses en euros. ¿Cuál es su tipo de cambio?

Empleado: El tipo de cambio es de 1,27 dólares por euro. Es muy conveniente.

Cliente: ¿Hay alguna comisión?

Empleado: La comisión es equivalente al 2% de la suma a cambiar.

Cliente: Bien, quiero cambiarlos.

Empleado: Espere un momento, voy a la caja fuerte y regreso.

Cliente: Ok.

Empleado: Entonces 1000 dólares estadounidenses son 787 euros. Aquí está para ti.

Cliente: Muchas gracias. ¿También tienes yenes japoneses?

Empleado: Por el momento no, pero podemos ordenarlos. Llegarán aquí el martes si no tienen prisa. Su tipo de cambio es de 109 yenes por un dólar estadounidense.

Cliente: gracias. Me gustaría comprar yenes porque tengo que ir a Tokio para un viaje de negocios la próxima semana. Vendré el martes entonces.

Empleado: ¡Muchas gracias!

Cliente: Adios

## **Dialogue 2**

### **English**

#### **2. REPAIR THE MACHINE**

Maria: Hello, excuse me, am I talking to the mechanic?

Mechanic: Yes, ready. Tell me.

Maria: Hi, my name is Maria. I am calling because my car stopped along the ring road in Milan. I don't know what the problem is, could you send a tow truck?

Mechanic: Tell me where you are, and I will send you a tow truck in an hour.

Maria: I'm at kilometer 20 of the ring road.

Mechanic: So, I checked the car. Unfortunately, the radiator has broken down. I can repair it, but it will take a few days.

Maria: Really? Because I would need the car immediately.

Mechanic: Don't worry, I can give you the courtesy car.

Maria: Thank you. When can I get the car back?

Mechanic: Come back next Tuesday after five.

Maria: Okay, thank you.

Spanish

## 2. REPARAR LA MÁQUINA

María: Hola disculpa, ¿Estoy hablando con el mecánico?

Mecánico: Sí, listo, dime.

María: Hola, me llamo María, llamo porque mi auto se detuvo en la circunvalación de Milán. No sé cuál es el problema, ¿Podría enviar una grúa?

Mecánico: Dime, donde estás y te enviaré una grúa en una hora.

María: Estoy en el kilómetro 20 de la carretera de circunvalación

Mecánico: No se preocupe ahí vamos.

-

Mecánico: Así que revisé su auto, desafortunadamente tiene un radiador roto. Puedo repararlo, pero llevará unos días.

María: ¿En serio? Porque necesitaría el auto de inmediato.

Mecánico: ¡No te preocupes! Puedo darte el auto de cortesía.

María: gracias. ¿Cuándo puedo tener al auto de regreso?

Mecánico: Vuelve el próximo martes después de las cinco.

María: Esta bien.

## Dialogue 3

English

## 3. MACHINE / BIKE RENTAL

Customer: Good morning, I would like to rent a car for three days.

Employee: Good morning. What kind of car do you want?

Customer: I would like an economy car that doesn't consume too much.

Employee: Then, we have two models for you to choose from. I show you the catalog.

Customer: Thanks, I think I'll take this Ford. How much is the rental cost?

Clerk: 70 euros per day plus the cost of gasoline.

Client: Thanks, then I'll take it.

Clerk: Please give me your license. I make a photocopy and bring it back.

Client: Here you go.

Employee: Thanks, then you can pick up the car in the garage. Good day.

Customer: Goodbye.

-

Employee: Good morning

Client: Good morning, I would like to rent a bike. How much?

Employee: It costs € 15 per day. Do you also want to rent a helmet?



Customer: Yes, thank you.

Employee: Come with me to choose the bike you prefer.

Customer: Thank you.

## **Spanish**

### **3. ALQUILER DE MAQUINAS / BICICLETAS**

Cliente: Buenos días, me gustaría alquilar un auto por tres días.

Empleado: Buenos días, ¿qué tipo de auto quieres?

Cliente: Me gustaría un automóvil económico que no consuma demasiado.

Empleado: Entonces tenemos dos modelos para que elijas. Te muestro el catálogo.

Cliente: Gracias, creo que me llevaré este Ford. ¿Cuánto cuesta el alquiler?

Empleado: 70 euros por día más el costo de la gasolina.

Cliente: Gracias, entonces lo tomaré.

Secretario: Por favor, dame tu licencia. Hago una fotocopia y la traigo de vuelta.

Cliente: Aquí tienes.

Empleado: Gracias, entonces puedes recoger el auto en el garaje. Que tengas un buen día.

Cliente: Adiós.

-

Empleado: Buenos días

Cliente: Buenos días, me gustaría alquilar una bicicleta. ¿Cuánto cuesta?

Empleado: cuesta 15 € por día. ¿También quieres alquilar un casco?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

Empleado: Ven conmigo para elegir la bicicleta que prefieras.

Cliente: Gracias.

## **Dialogue 4**

### **English**

#### **4. AT THE BAR**

Bartender: Good morning!

Client: Good morning.

Bartender: What do you want?

Client: I'd like a cappuccino and a croissant, please.

Bartender: What kind of croissant?

Client: With butter.

Bartender: Okay, two euros, please. Thanks so much.

-

Bartender: Good evening.

Client: Hi, my friends and I would like to have an aperitif.

Bartender: Please, take a seat, chose any table.

Customer: What do you recommend?

Bartender: I recommend the house aperitif. It consists of a glass of local prosecco, olives, peanuts, french fries, and pizzas.

Customer: Perfect, then bring us five home aperitifs. Is smoking allowed?

Bartender: Yes, smoking is allowed outside of the venue.

## **Spanish**

### **4. EN EL BAR**

Camarero: ¡Buenos días!

Cliente: ¡Buenos días!

Camarero: ¿Qué desea?

Cliente: Me gustaría un capuchino y un croissant.

Camarero: ¿Qué tipo de croissant?

Cliente: Con la mantequilla.

Camarero: De acuerdo. Son dos euros. Muchas gracias

-

Camarero: Buenas tardes.

Cliente: Hola, a mis amigos y a mí nos gustaría tomar un aperitivo.

Camarero: Por favor, tome asiento en las mesas.

Cliente: ¿Qué me recomiendan?

Camarero: Recomiendo el aperitivo de la casa. Consiste en un vaso de prosecco local, aceitunas, maní, papas fritas y pizzas.

Cliente: Perfecto, tráenos cinco aperitivos caseros. ¿Está permitido fumar?

Camarero: Sí, se permite fumar en las mesas de afuera.

## **Dialogue 5**

### **English**

#### **5. TAKE AWAY PIZZA**

Customer: Hello, Am I calling to Da Vincenzo pizzeria?

Waiter: Yes, hi, what would you like to order?.

Client: I'd like to order pizzas for tonight.

Waiter: What kind of pizzas do you want?

Client: I would like a Napoli pizza, a Margherita, and a capricciosa. I would also like a portion of french fries.

Waiter: Okay, for what time?

Client: By half-past eight. Do you do home delivery, or do I have to collect them?

Waiter: No, we can deliver them to you. Give me your name and address.

Client: I'm Claudio Rossi, and I live in via Amerigo Vespucci 134.

Waiter: Can I take a phone number?

Customer: Of course. My number is 334-4545670.

Waiter: Thank you.

Customer: Thanks and goodbye.

-

Customer: Hello, I'm calling to order pizzas.

Waiter: Yes, tell me ¿What pizzas you want?

Client: I'd like a Margherita pizza and a mushroom pizza.

Waiter: What time do you want to collect them?

Client: I'll go at 8:00.

Waiter: Thank you, see you later.

## **Spanish**

### **5. LLEVE LA PIZZA**

Cliente: Hola, ¿Hablo a la pizzería Da Vincenzo?

Camarero: Sí, hola dime.

Cliente: Me gustaría pedir pizzas para esta noche.

Camarero: ¿Qué tipo de pizzas quieres?

Cliente: Me gustaría una pizza Napoli, una margherita y una capricciosa. También me gustaría una porción de papas fritas.

Camarero: Bien, ¿A qué hora?

Cliente: A las ocho y media. ¿Hace entrega a domicilio o tengo que recogerlos?

Camarero: Si, tenemos entrega a domicilio. Dame tu nombre y dirección.

Cliente: Soy Claudio Rossi y vivo en Amerigo Vespucci 134.

Camarero: ¿Me puede dejar su número de teléfono?

Cliente: Por supuesto. Mi número es 334-4545670.

Camarero: Gracias.

Cliente: Gracias y adiós.

-

Cliente: Hola, llamo para pedir pizzas.

Camarero: Sí, dime qué pizzas quieres.

Cliente: Me gustaría una pizza margherita y una pizza de champiñones.

Camarero: ¿A qué hora quieres recogerlos?

Cliente: Voy a pasar por las ocho.

Camarero: Gracias, hasta luego.

## **Dialogue 6**

### **English**

#### **6. BOOK A RESTAURANT**

Customer: Is this Il Veliero restaurant?

Waiter: Yes, tell me.

Client: I'd like to book a table for six people tonight around half-past eight.

Waiter: Okay, give me your name.

Client: My name is Gianluca Tozzi. Excuse me, what's the dish of the day?

Waiter: The dish of the day is fresh fish soup.

Client: Thank you very much. See you later.

-

Client: Hi, I want to book a restaurant for my birthday party. We are around 50 people.

Waiter: Okay, tell me what day.

Client: For September 27th.

Waiter: Just give me a second, please, yes, September 27th is available.

Customer: Do you have set menus?

Waiter: Yes, generally, for birthdays, we have the € 20 set menu, including the cake.

Client: That's fine, so I'll book for 27.

Waiter: Of course, tell me your name.

Client: Greta Bianchi. Do I have to leave you a deposit?

Waiter: No, don't worry.

Customer: Goodbye.

### **Spanish**

#### **6. RESERVA UN RESTAURANTE**

Cliente: ¿Es el restaurante Il Veliero?

Camarero: Sí, dígame.

Cliente: Me gustaría reservar una mesa para seis personas esta noche

alrededor de las ocho y media.

Camarero: Bien, deme su nombre.

Cliente: Mi nombre es Gianluca Tozzi. Disculpe, ¿Cuál es el plato del día?

Camarero: El plato del día es la sopa de pescado fresco.

Cliente: Muchas gracias nos vemos más tarde.

-

Cliente: Hola, vine a reservar su restaurante para mi fiesta de cumpleaños. Somos alrededor de 50 personas.

Camarero: Bien, dime qué día.

Cliente: para el 27 de septiembre.

Camarero: Espera, deja checo si tenemos disponibilidad. Sí, el 27 de septiembre está disponible.

Cliente: ¿Tiene menús establecidos?

Camarero: Sí, generalmente para cumpleaños tenemos el menú fijo de 20 € que incluye el pastel.

Cliente: Está bien, así que reservaré para 27.

Camarero: Por supuesto, dime tu nombre.

Cliente: Greta Bianchi. ¿Tengo que dejarte un depósito?

Camarero: No, no te preocupes.

Cliente: Adios.

## **Dialogue 7**

### **English**

7. STREET FOOD (Two typical things that are sold in Spain ...)

Customer: Good morning. How much is a churro?

Seller: Two euros, white sugar and two euros fifty with chocolate.

Client: My daughter would like one with sugar, thanks.

Seller: Wait two minutes, please. Here, it's two euros.

Client: Excuse me, but are those churros hot?

Seller: Yes, they are hot.

Client: Then give me some of those too. How much is everything?

Seller: In total, it is 4 euros.

Client: Here you go.

Seller: Thanks. Goodbye.

-

Client: Good morning, will you give me a slice of Margherita pizza?

Seller: How do you want it? With the corner or without?

Client: Better without.

Seller: All right, give me a moment I will warm it up.

Customer: OK.

Seller: It's one euro and fifty cents. Thank you.

## **Spanish**

7. Comida callejera (dos cosas típicas que se venden en España...)

Cliente: Buenos días, ¿cuánto cuesta un churro?

Vendedor: Dos euros de azúcar blanco y dos euros cincuenta de color rosa o azul.

Cliente: A mi hija le gustaría el de azúcar, gracias.

Vendedor: Espere dos minutos para que lo prepare. Aquí, son dos euros y cincuenta centavos.

Cliente: Disculpe pero ¿están calientes esos churros?

Vendedor: Sí, están calientes.

Cliente: Entonces dame algunos de esos también. ¿Cuánto es?

Vendedor: En total son 4 euros.

Cliente: Aquí tienes.

Vendedor: gracias. Gracias, adiós.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, ¿me das una porción de pizza de margarita?

Vendedor: ¿Cuál quiere? ¿Con esquina o sin?

Cliente: Mejor sin.

Vendedor: Muy bien, un momento que la calentaré.

Cliente: Ok

Vendedor: Para usted, es un euro y cincuenta centavos, gracias.

## **Dialogue 8**

### **English**

#### **8. TO THE PUB**

Customer 1: In this new pub the beers are very good. I went there yesterday with a friend.

Customer 2: Really? What beer do you recommend?

Client 1: I recommend having a homemade beer.

Client 2: I will follow your advice. What are you taking?

Client 1: I have a dark beer. Waiter! Please bring us a house beer and a dark beer? Thank you.

-

Client: Good evening.

Waiter: Good evening, what do you want to order?

Client: What beers do you have this week?

Waiter: We have an excellent Belgian beer, not too strong—otherwise, a stronger German beer.

Client: The Belgian one is fine.

Waiter: And to eat?

Customer: A portion of french fries and a well-cooked hamburger.

Waiter: Is that enough?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

Waiter: I arrive immediately with orders.

## **Spanish**

### **8. AL PUB**

Cliente 1: En este nuevo pub las cervezas son muy buenas. Fui allí ayer con un amigo.

Cliente 2: ¿En serio? ¿Qué cerveza me recomiendan?

Cliente 1: Recomiendo tomar una cerveza casera.

Cliente 2: Seguiré tu consejo. Que estas tomando

Cliente 1: Yo una cerveza oscura. Camarero, Por favor tráenos una cerveza de la casa y una cerveza oscura, Gracias.

-

Cliente: Buenas tardes.

Camarero: Buenas tardes, ¿qué quieres pedir?

Cliente: ¿Qué cervezas tienes esta semana?

Camarero: Tenemos una excelente cerveza belga, no demasiado fuerte. De lo contrario, una cerveza alemana más fuerte.

Cliente: La belga está bien.

Camarero: ¿Y para comer?

Cliente: Una porción de papas fritas y una hamburguesa bien cocinada.

Camarero: ¿Sería todo?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

Camarero: Llego de inmediato con las órdenes.

## CHAPTER#2: CONVERSATIONS AT SCHOOL

---

### Dialogue 9

#### English

#### 9. RESEARCH OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE SCHOOL

Client: Hi, is this the Native language school?

Employee: Yes, hi, how can I help you?

Client: I'm looking for a language school in Madrid. I am English, and I will come to Madrid this summer to study SPANISH. I would like to stay from mid-June to the end of July. Do you have courses for that period?

Employee: Give me a moment I check ... no, sorry, there will be no new courses for that period because enrollments are every September.

Client: I understand. Can you tell me which school can I call?

Employee: You can call our office in Barcelona, surely there will be summer courses there.

Customer: Can you give me the phone number?

Employee: Yes, the number is 051/267822.

Customer: Thanks, see you soon.

...

Client: Hi, is this the Native Language School in Barcelona?

Clerk: Yes, tell me.

Client: I would like to know if there will be SPANISH summer courses.

Employee: Yes, there are courses in July, August, and September. The cost of a one-month course is 400 euros. You can register for the course on our website.

Customer: Thank you very much!

Clerk: Of course, goodbye.

#### Spanish

#### 9. INVESTIGACIÓN DE LA ESCUELA DE LENGUA SPANISHA



Cliente: Hola, ¿hablo con la escuela de idiomas nativos?

Empleado: Sí, hola, ¿en qué puedo ayudarlo?

Cliente: Estoy buscando una escuela de idiomas en Madrid. Soy inglés y vendré a Madrid este verano para estudiar SPANISH. Me gustaría quedarme desde mediados de junio hasta finales de julio. ¿Tienes cursos para ese período?

Empleado: Un momento que verifico... no, lo siento, no habrá nuevos cursos para ese período porque las inscripciones son pocas.

Cliente: entiendo. ¿Me puede decir a qué escuela puedo llamar?

Empleado: Puede llamar a nuestra oficina en Barcelona, seguramente habrá cursos de verano allí.

Cliente: ¿Me puede dar el número de teléfono?

Empleado: Sí, el número es 051/267822.

Cliente: Gracias, hasta pronto.

...

Cliente: Hola, ¿hablo a la escuela de lenguas de Barcelona?

Secretario: Sí, dime.

Cliente: Me gustaría saber si habrá cursos de verano de SPANISH.

Empleado: Sí, hay cursos en julio, agosto y septiembre. El costo de un curso de un mes es de 400 euros. Puede registrarse para el curso en nuestro sitio web.

Cliente: ¡Muchas gracias!

Empleado: Solo imagina, adiós.

## **Dialogue 10**

### **English**

#### 10. BOOKING OF AN SPANISH SCHOOL

Client: Hi, I have come to enroll in a SPANISH language course.

Clerk: What kind, of course, are you looking for?

Client: I would like to take an advanced conversation course.

Employee: Well, the course is on Tuesdays and Thursdays from 9 to 13.

Customer: How can I register?

Employee: You must fill in this registration form. You must write your name, surname, telephone number, and the type, of course, you want to do. Then sign it.

Client: Done, what is next?

Clerk: Now, you just have to pay. You must transfer to the school's bank

account and bring us the receipt. The account number is 130459039949999 and to the SPANISH Language School. You can make the transfer to any bank or on the internet.

Client: I understand, and then what?

Clerk: Then he can come and take our courses.

Customer: OK, thank you very much!

Clerk: Don't worry!

## **Spanish**

### 10. RESERVA DE UNA ESCUELA SPANISHA

Cliente: Hola, he venido para inscribirme en un curso de idioma SPANISH.

Empleado: ¿Qué tipo de curso estás buscando?

Cliente: Me gustaría tomar un curso avanzado de conversación.

Empleado: Bueno, el curso es los martes y jueves de 9 a 13.

Cliente: ¿Cómo puedo registrarme?

Empleado: debe completar este formulario de registro. Debe escribir su nombre, apellido, número de teléfono y el tipo de curso que desea hacer. Luego, al final, tiene que firmarlo.

Cliente: Listo, ¿después?

Empleado: Ahora solo tiene que pagar. Debe hacer una transferencia a la cuenta bancaria de la escuela y traernos el recibo. El número de cuenta es 130459039949999 y el titular es la escuela de Idiomas. Puede realizar la transferencia en cualquier banco o en Internet.

Cliente: Entiendo, ¿Y después?

Empleado: Entonces él puede venir y tomar nuestros cursos.

Cliente: OK, muchas gracias!

Empleado: ¡No te preocupes!

## **Dialogue 11**

### **English**

#### 11. SPANISH school: accommodation

Client: Hi, Is this the SPANISH school?

Employee: Yes, hi, I'm Giulia. How can I help you?

Client: So, I enrolled in your summer Spanish course. I wanted to know if you can help me find accommodation for those months.

Employee: Yes, don't worry; we also have a room search service. Do you prefer to stay in a single or double room?

Client: I prefer a single room. I don't want to share a room with someone I don't know.

Employee: I understand. Single rooms are generally more expensive. You can choose to stay in a single room inside the student residence of the school or stay with a Spanish family.

The price is around 350 euros per month for the student residence and 400 euros for staying with the family, as meals are also included. In the student residence, on the other hand, it can use the kitchen and do the shopping alone.

Client: I understand. So I prefer to be with the family to practice the language.

Employee: Then, I email you the form to ask for family accommodation. In the email, you will also find all the relevant information. All right?

Customer: Okay, thank you. Goodbye.

Employee: Ok, see you soon.

## **Spanish**

### 11. Escuela de Idiomas: Alojamiento

Cliente: Hola, ¿Hablo con la escuela de Idiomas?

Empleado: Sí, hola, soy Giulia, ¿Cómo puedo ayudarte?

Cliente: Me inscribí en tu curso de español de verano. Quería saber si puedes ayudarme a encontrar alojamiento para esos meses.

Empleado: Sí, no te preocupes, también tenemos un servicio de búsqueda de habitaciones. ¿Prefieres quedarte en una habitación individual o doble?

Cliente: Prefiero una habitación individual. No quiero compartir una habitación con alguien que no conozco.

Empleado: Lo entiendo, las habitaciones individuales son generalmente más caras. Puedes elegir quedarte en una habitación individual dentro de la residencia de estudiantes de la escuela o quedarte con una familia española.

El precio ronda los 350 euros mensuales para la residencia de estudiantes y 400 euros para alojarse con la familia, ya que las comidas también están incluidas. En la residencia de estudiantes, por otro lado, puede usar la cocina y hacer las compras solo.

Cliente: entiendo. Entonces prefiero estar con la familia para practicar el idioma.

Empleado: Luego le envió el formulario por correo electrónico para solicitar alojamiento familiar. En el correo electrónico también encontrará toda la información relevante. Ok?

Ciente: Bien, gracias. Adiós.

Empleado: Vamos, hasta pronto.

## **Dialogue 12**

### **English**

12. SPANISH school: homestay

Lukas: Hi, I just arrived from Germany. My name is Lukas, and I am a student of the summer courses. I chose to stay with a family.

Employee: Hi, I will check you in immediately. So, yes, Lukas, your host family is the Reds. They live not far from the center. I'll call them right away; they'll come and get you here to take you home.

-

Mrs. Rossi: Hi Lukas, I am Lucia, and this is my husband, Marco. I'll show you your room. As you can see, it is quite large, and there is also a wardrobe. The bathroom is at the far right.

Lukas: Thanks a lot.

Mrs. Rossi: So, we have dinner every night at half-past eight. Please let me know if you don't come for dinner. As for lunch?

Lukas: Thanks, but I will have lunch at the school canteen because I also have lessons in the afternoon.

Mrs. Rossi: So these are the house keys. If you need anything, please let us know, okay?

Lukas: One last question: how can I get to school by bus?

Mrs. Rossi: Then, go down the street to the end and then turn right. After 100 meters you will find the subway.

Lukas: Thanks.

### **Spanish**

12. Escuela de Idiomas: Estancia en casa

Lukas: Hola, acabo de llegar de Alemania. Mi nombre es Lukas y soy estudiante de los cursos de verano. Elegí quedarme con una familia.

Empleado: Hola bienvenido, deja tomo tus datos de inmediato. Entonces, sí Lukas, tu familia anfitriona son los Reds. Viven no muy lejos del centro. Los llamaré de inmediato, vendrán y te llevarán de aquí a su casa.

-

Sra. Rossi: Hola Lukas, soy Lucia y este es mi esposo Marco. Te mostraré tu habitación. Como puedes ver es bastante grande y también hay un armario. El

baño está afuera a la derecha.

Lukas: muchas gracias.

Sra. Rossi: Entonces, cenamos todas las noches a las ocho y media. Por favor avísame si no vienes a cenar. ¿En cuanto al almuerzo?

Lukas: Gracias, pero almorzaré en el comedor de la escuela porque también tengo clases por la tarde.

Sra. Rossi: Entonces estas son las llaves de la casa. Si necesitas algo, solo avísanos, ¿De acuerdo?

Lukas: Una última pregunta: ¿Cómo puedo llegar a la escuela en autobús?

Sra. Rossi: Ok, caminas por la calle hasta el final y luego gira a la derecha. Después de 100 metros encontrarás el metro.

Lukas: gracias.

### **Dialogue 13**

#### **English**

#### 13. Spanish school: first day in class

Teacher: Hello everyone, my name is Angela, and I am your SPANISH teacher. In the three months of conversation course that awaits us, we will talk about many topics. Since there are students from all over the world in the classroom, we will only speak SPANISH in class. Are there any questions?

Student: Excuse me, professor, will there also be grammar lessons?

Teacher: So this is a conversation course. But to speak a language well you must also know grammar, so every now and then we will take a grammar lesson.

Student: Are lessons always done in the classroom?

Teacher: Lessons are usually done in this classroom. But halfway through the course, I would like to take a lesson at the museum. On that occasion, you can listen to the guide and ask questions.

Student: Excuse me, but will there be an exam at the end of the course?

Teacher: At the end of the course you can decide whether to take the exam. I

recommend it ... So, if there are no other questions, let's start! I would say to start with the presentations. Each of you must stand up and introduce yourself to your classmates ...

## **Spanish**

13. Escuela de SPANISH: Primer día de clase.

Maestra: Hola a todos, mi nombre es Angela y soy tu maestra de español. En los tres meses de curso de conversación que nos esperan, hablaremos sobre muchos temas. Como hay estudiantes de todo el mundo en el aula, solo hablaremos SPANISH en clase. ¿Hay alguna pregunta?

Estudiante: Disculpe profesor, ¿Habrán también lecciones de gramática?

Maestro: ok, este es un curso de conversación. Pero para hablar bien un idioma también debes saber gramática, así que de vez en cuando tomaremos una lección de gramática.

Estudiante: ¿Las lecciones se hacen siempre en el aula?

Maestro: Las lecciones generalmente se hacen en este salón de clases. Pero a mitad del curso me gustaría tomar una lección en el museo. En esa ocasión puedes escuchar la guía y hacer preguntas.

Estudiante: Disculpe, pero ¿Habrán un examen al final del curso?

Profesor: Al final del curso puedes decidir si tomar el examen. Lo recomiendo... Entonces, si no hay otras preguntas, ¡comencemos! Yo diría que comiencen con las presentaciones. Cada uno de ustedes debe ponerse de pie y presentarse a sus compañeros...

## **Dialogue 14**

### **English**

14. SPANISH school: Ask for help

Student: Hi, I'm a student at your school. I have a problem, can I ask you?

Employee: Yes, tell me, I am the student manager.

Student: So, I am enrolled in the SPANISH summer course, but I have the impression that the level is too low for me, I would like to change.

Employee: Would you like to switch to a more difficult course?

Student: Yes, thank you.

Employee: Then, we need to talk to the course teacher about it. For sure, you will have to do an exam to see if the highest level is suitable, okay?

Student: Okay, when can I take this exam?

Employee: Tomorrow at three, the teacher will be in room 2. You can ask her. Her name is Gilda Rubino.

Student: Thanks.

-

Student: Excuse me, I have a problem with the timetable though ... I started a small part-time job, and I can't attend the morning classes anymore. Are there evening courses?

Employee: Of course. You can move on to evening classes, from 18 to 21. I have to check if there is room. Wait ... well, there are no problems. Fill in this question, and from next week you can follow the evening lessons.

Student: Thanks.

## **Spanish**

14. Escuela de Español: Pide ayuda

Estudiante: Hola, soy estudiante en tu escuela, tengo un problema, ¿puedo preguntarte?

Empleado: Sí, dime, soy el administrador de estudiantes.

Estudiante: Entonces, estoy inscrito en el curso de verano de SPANISHo, pero tengo la impresión de que el nivel es demasiado bajo para mí, me gustaría cambiar.

Empleado: ¿Le gustaría cambiar a un curso más difícil?

Estudiante: Sí, gracias.

Empleado: Entonces tenemos que hablar con el profesor del curso al respecto. Seguro que tendrás que hacer un pequeño examen de ingreso para ver si el nivel más alto es adecuado, ¿de acuerdo?

Estudiante: Bien, ¿cuándo puedo tomar este examen?

Empleado: Mañana a las tres, el profesor estará en la sala 2. Puedes preguntarle a ella. Se llama Gilda Rubino.

Estudiante: Gracias.

-

Estudiante: Disculpe, tengo un problema con el horario... Empecé un pequeño trabajo a tiempo parcial y ya no puedo asistir a las clases de la mañana. ¿Hay cursos nocturnos?

Empleado: Por supuesto. Puede pasar a clases nocturnas, de 18 a 21. Tengo que comprobar si hay espacio. Espera... bueno, no hay problema. Complete este formulario y desde la próxima semana podrá seguir las lecciones de la tarde.

Estudiante: Gracias.



## CHAPTER#3: INTERNET CONVERSATIONS

---

### Dialogue 15

#### English

15. Internet Café

Saleswoman: Good morning. Tell me.

Client: Good morning, I wanted to know if it was possible to use computers

Saleswoman: Of course, there is currently an empty seat. Do you have a card?

Client: No, it's the first time I've come.

Saleswoman: Then, you must fill in this form with your data and put a signature at the end.

Customer: OK.

Saleswoman: Well, this is your card. When he arrives at the computer, he must insert the card to go on the internet. As soon as you insert the card, you must create your account and enter a password.

Customer: Thanks. And how much does it cost to use the internet?

Saleswoman: It's 25 cents every 15 minutes. In practice, it costs 1 euro per hour.

Customer: Can I print documents?

Job: Yes, it is possible to print. The cost is twenty cents for a black and white print and fifty cents for a color print. Remember, if you download any document, delete it before leaving.

Client: I understand, thank you.

Saleswoman: You can sit at position two, at the end of the corridor on the left. For any problem, I am at your disposal.

Customer: Thanks a lot.

#### Spanish

15. cibercafé

Vendedora: Buenos días, dime.

Cliente: Buenos días, quería saber si era posible usar computadoras

Vendedora: Por supuesto, actualmente hay un asiento vacío. ¿Tienes una tarjeta?

Cliente: No, es la primera vez que vengo.

Vendedora: Luego, debe completar este formulario con sus datos y poner una firma al final.

Cliente: OK

Vendedora: Bueno, esta es tu tarjeta. Cuando llega a la computadora, debe insertar la tarjeta para conectarse a Internet. Tan pronto como inserte la tarjeta, debe crear su cuenta e ingresar una contraseña.

Cliente: gracias. ¿Y cuánto cuesta usar internet?

Vendedora: son 25 centavos cada 15 minutos. En la práctica cuesta 1 euro por hora.

Cliente: ¿Puedo imprimir documentos?

Trabajo: Sí, es posible imprimir. El costo es de veinte centavos para una impresión en blanco y negro y cincuenta centavos para una impresión en color. Recuerde, si descarga algún documento, elimínelo antes de salir.

Cliente: Entiendo, gracias.

Vendedora: Puede sentarse en la posición dos, al final del corredor a la izquierda. Para cualquier problema estoy a su disposición.

Cliente: Muchas gracias.

## **Dialogue 16**

### **English**

16. Post office (send / receive a parcel)

Client: Good morning. I found this notice in my mailbox. He says there is a package for me to pick up.

Employee: Good morning, show me the notice ... ok, are you Lucia Rossi?

Client: Yes, it is me.

Clerk: Can you give me an ID?

Client: Here it is.

Employee: Okay, thank you. Wait here ... here is your package. Please sign here for the receipt.

Customer: Done, thank you.

Clerk: Thanks to you.

-

Customer: Good morning. I should send this package.

Employee: Good morning, do you want to send it by priority mail or regular mail?

Customer: What difference is there?

Employee: With priority mail, the parcel arrives in three days, with the ordinary one in ten days.

Customer: Ah, I understand, so I choose priority mail.

Employee: Okay, so fill out these forms with the address. Meanwhile, give me the package. The weight is three kilos. Shipping costs 18 euros and 50.

Client: Here you go.

Employee: Thanks, here's the rest. Goodbye.

Customer: Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

16. Oficina de correos (enviar / recibir un paquete)

Cliente: Buenos días, encontré este aviso en mi buzón. Él dice que hay un paquete para que recoja.

Empleado: Buenos días, muéstrame el aviso... ok, ¿eres Lucia Rossi?

Cliente: Sí, soy yo.

Secretario: ¿Me puede dar una identificación?

Cliente: Aquí está.

Empleado: Bien, gracias, espera aquí... aquí está tu paquete. Por favor firme aquí para el recibo.

Cliente: Listo, gracias.

Empleado: Gracias a ti.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, debería enviar este paquete.

Empleado: Buenos días, ¿desea enviarlo por correo prioritario o correo ordinario?

Cliente: ¿Qué diferencia hay?

Empleado: con correo urgente, el paquete llega en tres días, con el ordinario en diez días.

Cliente: Ah, entiendo, así que elijo el correo prioritario.

Empleado: Bien, complete estos formularios con la dirección. Mientras tanto, dame el paquete. El peso es de tres kilos. El envío cuesta 18 euros y 50.

Cliente: Aquí tienes.

Empleado: Gracias, aquí está el resto, adiós.

Cliente: Adios.

## CHAPTER#4: TALKING ABOUT HEALTH ISSUES

---

### Dialogue 17

#### English

17. PROBLEMS: DOCTOR

Patient: Good morning

Doctor: Hi, what's the problem?

Patient: I don't feel well. I have a sore throat, headache, and cold. I slept badly tonight; I was always cold.

Doctor: Do you also have bone pain?

Patient: Yes, I feel sore.

Doctor: Wait till I visit her ... her throat is all red, and she also has a little fever. You have taken seasonal flu, and your tonsils are inflamed. I prescribe you medicines to be taken morning and evening. Then he must also use this throat spray. If the fever rises, take paracetamol. Otherwise, stay in bed and rest. It will heal in a few days.

Patient: Thanks. Goodbye.

-

Patient: Good morning, doctor.

Doctor: Hi, tell me.

Patient: I fell yesterday and hurt my ankle. Now it's all swollen, and it hurts me. I put ice on it, but it hasn't gone down.

Doctor: Let me see ... mmmh it's very swollen; it could be broken. He has to go to the emergency room to make an x-ray and see what happened.

Patient: Okay, thank you.

Doctor: Goodbye and let me know!

#### Spanish

17. PROBLEMAS: DOCTOR

Paciente: Buenos días.

Doctor: Hola, ¿cuál es el problema?

Paciente: No me siento bien. Tengo dolor de garganta, dolor de cabeza y resfriado. Dormí mal esta noche, tenía frío.

Doctor: ¿También tienes dolor en los huesos?

Paciente: Sí, me duele.

Doctor: Espere hasta que la visite... tiene la garganta roja y también tiene un poco de fiebre. Usted tiene gripe estacional y sus amígdalas están inflamadas. Te prescribo medicamentos para tomar mañana y tarde. Entonces también debe usar este spray para la garganta. Si la fiebre aumenta, tome paracetamol. De lo contrario, quédese en la cama y descanse. Sanará en unos días.

Paciente: Gracias, adiós.

-

Paciente: Buenos días doctor.

Doctor: Hola dime.

Paciente: Me caí ayer y me lastimé el tobillo. Ahora está todo hinchado y me duele. Le puse hielo pero no ha pasado.

Doctor: Déjame ver... mmm está muy hinchado, podría estar roto. Tiene que ir a la sala de emergencias para hacer un x-ray y ver qué pasó.

Paciente: Bien, gracias.

Doctor: ¡Adiós y hágamelo saber!

## **Dialogue 18**

### **English**

18. Problems, Dentist

Patient: Good morning, Doctor.

Dentist: Good morning. Tell me.

Patient: A tooth hurts a lot. I can't even eat.

Dentist: Sit in the chair and open your mouth, so I can check. So, well, you have an abscess. It's a bad infection; I'll have to operate it.

Patient: When can I come?

Dentist: May come early tomorrow.

Patient: Thanks.

-

Patient: Good morning, doctor.

Dentist: Good morning, Mrs. Carli. Are you here for the check? Sit down and open your mouth. So, it seems to me that almost everything is fine, but your tooth has a small decay, it would be good to fill it immediately.

Patient: Really? And when can I come?

Dentist: Make an appointment with the secretary when you prefer, there is no hurry. Also, it will take a little time.

Patient: Thank you, doctor, goodbye.

Dentist: Thanks to you.

## **Spanish**

18. Problemas, dentista

Paciente: Buenos días, doctor.

Dentista: Buenos días, dime.

Paciente: Me duele mucho un diente, ni siquiera puedo comer.

Dentista: siéntate en la silla y abre la boca, así que lo reviso. Entonces, bueno, tienes un absceso. Es una infección grave, tendré que operarla.

Paciente: ¿Cuándo puedo ir?

Dentista: puede llegar temprano mañana.

Paciente: gracias.

-

Paciente: Buenos días doctor.

Dentista: Buenos días, señora Carli. ¿Estás aquí para el chequeo? Siéntate y abre la boca. Entonces, me parece que casi todo está bien, pero tiene una pequeña caries en un diente, sería bueno curarlo de inmediato.

Paciente: ¿En serio? ¿Y cuándo puedo ir?

Dentista: haga una cita con la secretaria para cuando lo prefiera, no hay prisa. También llevará poco tiempo.

Paciente: Gracias doctor, adiós.

Dentista: Gracias a ti.

## CHAPTER#5: SHARING PROBLEMS

---

### Dialogue 19

#### English

19. Problems - Reporting a crime

Police: Pronto, police station of Madrid.

Lucia: Hello, I'm Lucia Rossi, I'm calling from Termini station. I wanted to tell you that two men robbed a woman and ran away! The woman fell to the ground and hurt herself; now, she has gone to the hospital.

Police: Did you see what happened?

Lucia: Yes, it happened in front of my eyes.

Police: Can you describe what thieves were like?

Lucia: The thieves were two men, a boy of about twenty years old and a man in his forties. They both wore dark jeans. The young man had a white coat and wore a black woolen hat. The other had a beard and long hair and wore a brown leather coat. They ran away to Via Marsala.

Police: How long ago did it happen?

Lucia: About ten minutes ago. A passerby tried to chase them to stop them.

Police: We have just informed our colleagues in Via Marsala, who will be going to the scene.

Lucia: I understand, thanks.

Police: Thanks to you.

#### Spanish

19. Problemas: contar un delito

Policía: Estación de policía de Madrid.

Lucia: Hola, soy Lucia Rossi, llamo desde la estación de Termini. ¡Quería decirle que dos hombres robaron a una mujer y huyeron! La mujer cayó al suelo y se lastimó, ahora se ha ido al hospital.

Policía: ¿Viste lo que pasó?

Lucia: Sí, sucedió frente mis ojos.



Policía: ¿Puedes describir cómo eran los ladrones?

Lucia: Los ladrones eran dos hombres, un niño de unos veinte años y un hombre de unos cuarenta años. Ambos llevaban jeans oscuros. El joven tenía una bata blanca y llevaba un sombrero de lana negro. El otro tenía barba y cabello largo y llevaba un abrigo de cuero marrón. Se escaparon a Via Marsala.

Policía: ¿Hace cuánto tiempo sucedió?

Lucia: Hace unos diez minutos. Un transeúnte intentó perseguirlos para detenerlos.

Policía: Acabamos de informar a nuestros colegas en Via Marsala, que irán a la escena.

Lucia: Entiendo, gracias.

Policía: gracias a ti.

## **Dialogue 20**

### **English**

20. Problems, Ask for help

Lukas: Good morning, ma'am. Excuse me, can you help me?

Lady: Yes, tell me.

Lukas: Hi, my name is Lukas. I'm a German student on vacation in SPAIN. I'm lost. I have to get to the square where my friends are, but I have gone the wrong way.

Lady: Which square should you go to?

Lukas: I don't remember well. I'd like to call them, but the phone ran out and turned off.

Lady: You can use my phone.

Lukas: Really? Thanks, you are very kind.

Lady: You are welcome.

-

Carla: Good morning. Excuse me, but my friend is not feeling well! Can anyone call a doctor?

Bartender: What's wrong?

Carla: She passed out, has now recovered a little, but is still weak.

Bartender: Bring this glass of water and then come with me. I will call an ambulance.

Carla: Thanks, I'm going right away.

### **Spanish**

20. Problemas, pide ayuda

Lukas: Buenos días señora, disculpe, ¿puede ayudarme?

Señora: Sí dime.

Lukas: Hola, mi nombre es Lukas, soy un estudiante alemán de vacaciones en Italia. Me perdí Tengo que llegar a la plaza donde están mis amigos, pero me he equivocado.

Señora: ¿A qué plaza deberías ir?

Lukas: No me acuerdo bien. Me gustaría llamarlos, pero el teléfono se apagó.

Señora: Puedes usar mi teléfono.

Lukas: ¿En serio? Gracias, muy amable.

Señora: De nada.

-

Carla: Buenos días. Disculpe pero mi amigo ¡No se siente bien! ¿Alguien puede llamar a un médico?

Camarero: ¿Qué pasa?

Carla: Se desmayó, ahora se ha recuperado un poco, pero todavía está débil.

Camarero: Trae este vaso de agua y luego ven conmigo. Llamaré a una ambulancia.

Carla: Gracias, ya me voy.

## **Dialogue 21**

### **English**

21. Problems, Losing baggage

Employee: Good morning, here in the office for lost luggage.

Mark: Good morning, I landed this morning at nine twenty on the AX345 flight from Vancouver, and it is now three in the afternoon, and I still haven't received my luggage.

Clerk: Strange, the baggage of flight AX345 arrived at 10.20. Tell me your name?

Mark: My name is Scott Mark.

Employee: I'm going to check in the warehouse if it arrived in another terminal, and nobody took it. Wait ... there is no baggage with your name in the warehouse. Your baggage must have been lost. So, you must make a report of loss. You must fill in this form.

Mark: I understand, but is it possible to find it?

Employee: Don't worry, we immediately ask the other airports to find out if he may have accidentally arrived in another city. Anyway, do you have

baggage insurance?

Mark: Yes, I took out insurance for theft and loss cases.

Employee: Very well, then you must contact your insurance. With the complaint form, you are entitled to a refund. However, you can leave us your contact details if we find it we will call you immediately.

Mark: Thanks.

## **Spanish**

### 21. Problemas, pérdida de equipaje

Empleado: Buenos días, aquí está la oficina para el equipaje perdido.

Mark: Buenos días, aterricé esta mañana a las nueve y veinte en el vuelo AX345 desde Vancouver y ahora son las tres de la tarde y todavía no he recibido mi equipaje.

Empleado: Extraño, el equipaje del vuelo AX345 llegó a las 10.20 ¿Me dice su nombre?

Mark: Mi nombre es Scott Mark.

Empleado: Voy a verificar en el almacén si llegó a otra terminal y nadie lo tomó. Espera... no hay equipaje con tu nombre en el almacén. Su equipaje debe haberse perdido. Por lo tanto, debe hacer un informe de pérdida. Debes completar este formulario.

Mark: Entiendo, pero ¿Es posible encontrarlo?

Empleado: No se preocupe, inmediatamente le pedimos a los otros aeropuertos que averigüen si puede haber llegado accidentalmente a otra ciudad. De todos modos, ¿tienes seguro de equipaje?

Mark: Sí, contraté un seguro para casos de robo y pérdida.

Empleado: Muy bien, entonces debe comunicarse con su seguro. Con el formulario de queja tiene derecho a un reembolso. Sin embargo, puede dejarnos sus datos de contacto, si lo encontramos, lo llamaremos de inmediato.

Mark: gracias.

## **Dialogue 22**

### **English**

### 22. Problems, Getting arrested

Agent: Good morning, security at Barcelona, will you show me your travel documents, please?

Luca: Hi, here's my passport.

Agent: Let's check ... sorry sir, but this is not your passport, this passport is

stolen. You must follow us to the center.

Luca: But how? What are you saying? I didn't steal anything! It is my passport! There must be a mistake!

Agent: Follow us.

...

Agent: So why did you show us a stolen document, Mr. Foschi?

Luca: But I'm not Mister Foschi! My name is Luca Pratesi. You can see it in my documents.

Agent: I'm sorry, but what he gave us is a passport without a photo, and it says that his name is Matteo Foschi.

Luca: It's not my passport!

Agent: So, whose is it? Why did you show it to us?

Luca: I only took the passport out of my bag.

Agent: Is this your bag?

Luca: Yes ... indeed no, my bag is similar to that, but it is not that, I must have exchanged it with that of the passenger next to me on the plane. They were both black bags, believe me!

Agent: Then you have to wait here until we do all the checks, sorry.

## **Spanish**

### 22. Problemas, ser arrestado

Agente: Buenos días, seguridad en el aeropuerto de Barcelona, ¿Puedo ver su pasaporte, por favor?

Luca: Hola, aquí está mi pasaporte.

Agente: Vamos a revisar, lo siento señor, pero este no es su pasaporte, este pasaporte es robado. Él debe seguirnos al centro.

Luca: ¿Pero cómo? Que dices ¡No robé nada! ¡Es mi pasaporte! Debe haber un error.

Agente: Síguenos.

...

Agente: Entonces, ¿por qué nos mostró un documento robado, Sr. Foschi?

Luca: ¡Pero no soy el señor Foschi! Me llamo Luca Pratesi. Puedes verlo en mis documentos.

Agente: Lo siento, pero lo que nos dio es un pasaporte sin foto y dice que se llama Matteo Foschi.

Luca: ¡No es mi pasaporte!

Agente: ¿De quién es? ¿Por qué nos lo enseñaste?

Luca: Solo saqué el pasaporte de mi bolso.

Agente: ¿Este es tu bolso?

Luca: Sí... de hecho no, mi bolso es similar a este, pero no es este, debo haberlo cambiado con el pasajero de al lado en el avión. Ambos eran bolsos negros, ¡créeme!

Agente: Entonces tiene que esperar aquí hasta que hagamos todos los controles, lo siento.

### **Dialogue 23**

#### **English**

23. Problems, Having a collapse

Carla: Hello Luisa, I'm Carla.

Luisa: Hi Carla, how are you?

Carla: I'm not well at all. Can you come here as soon as possible?

Luisa: Carla, do I have to worry?

Carla: I'm having a nervous breakdown. I need someone to talk to.

Luisa: I'm coming.

-

Luisa: Carla, how are you?

Carla: Hi Luisa, I'm very sick. At work I am very stressed, my boss treats me badly, and he is always nervous. I'm afraid he wants to fire me, so for the next meeting I have to bring a nice project to show that I am a good architect. I am really under pressure!

Luisa: I understand, it's a difficult situation ... how do you feel?

Carla: Very bad. I have great anxiety, I have a headache, and my hands are shaking.

Luisa: I understand Carla, it's really a nervous breakdown. So now you have to go to bed and try to rest. I'll make you a chamomile tea. After you have slept a little, we go out to have fun, so you get distracted, okay?

Carla: Okay, I'll try. Thanks, Luisa, you are a true friend.

Luisa: Don't worry. In these cases, a little rest is the most effective medicine. Go ahead and rest.

#### **Spanish**

23. Problemas, tener un colapso

Carla: Hola Luisa, soy Carla.

Luisa: Hola Carla, ¿cómo estás?

Carla: No estoy nada bien, ¿puedes venir aquí tan pronto como puedas?

Luisa: Carla, ¿tengo que preocuparme?

Carla: Estoy teniendo un ataque de nervios, necesito alguien con quien hablar.

Luisa: ya voy.

-

Luisa: Carla, ¿Cómo estás?

Carla: Hola Luisa, estoy muy enferma. En el trabajo estoy muy estresado, mi jefe me trata mal y siempre está nervioso. Me temo que quiere despedirme, así que para la próxima reunión tengo que traer un buen proyecto para demostrar que soy un buen arquitecto, ¡estoy realmente bajo presión!

Luisa: Entiendo, es una situación difícil... ¿Cómo te sientes?

Carla: muy mal. Tengo mucha ansiedad, me duele la cabeza y me tiemblan las manos.

Luisa: Entiendo Carla, es realmente un ataque de nervios. Así que ahora tienes que irte a la cama e intentar descansar. Te prepararé un té de manzanilla. Después de que hayas dormido un poco, salimos a divertirnos, así que te distraes, ¿de acuerdo?

Carla: Ok, lo intentaré. Gracias Luisa, eres una verdadera amiga.

Luisa: no te preocupes. En estos casos, descansar un poco es la medicina más efectiva. Adelante y descansa.

## **Dialogue 24**

### **English**

24. Problems, Getting involved in an accident

Fabio: Hello, can I talk to the urban police?

Watchful: Yes, readily tell me.

Fabio: Yes, well, I just had an accident. I'm on via Magliana. A girl didn't stop at the stop sign and took me in full. We need assistance. The two machines are completely destroyed, and we cannot remove them.

Watchful: I understand. Are there any injured?

Fabio: Yes, the girl.

Vigilant: Are you seriously injured?

Fabio: No, she hurt her leg. Maybe it's broken, the ambulance just arrived to take her to the hospital.

Watchful: How are you?

Fabio: I'm fine. But the cars in the middle of the street blocked the traffic. Should I call the tow truck?

Watchful: No, you don't have to move the cars. Wait. The position of the

machines is important for understanding who is right and who is wrong.

Fabio: I understand.

Vigilant: Wait, I'll call the nearest steering wheel, it will be with you very soon.

Fabio: Ok, thanks.

## **Spanish**

24. Problemas, involucrarse en un accidente

Fabio: Hola, ¿Puedo hablar con la policía urbana?

Vigilante: Sí, listo dime.

Fabio: Sí, bueno, tuve un accidente. Estoy en via Magliana. Una chica no se detuvo en la señal de alto y me llevó por completo. Necesitamos asistencia Las dos máquinas están completamente destruidas y no podemos eliminarlas.

Vigilante: entiendo. ¿Hay algún herido?

Fabio: Sí, la niña.

Vigilante: ¿Estás gravemente herido?

Fabio: No, se lastimó la pierna. Tal vez está roto, la ambulancia acaba de llegar para llevarla al hospital.

Vigilante: ¿Cómo estás?

Fabio: Estoy bien. Pero los autos en el medio de la calle bloquearon el tráfico. ¿Debo llamar a la grúa?

Vigilante: No, no tienes que mover los autos. Espera. La posición de las máquinas es importante para comprender quién tiene razón y quién está equivocado.

Fabio: Entiendo.

Vigilante: Espera, llamaré a La grúa más cercana, estará contigo muy pronto.

Fabio: Ok, gracias.

## **Dialogue 25**

### **English**

25. Problems, complaints

Customer: Hi, is this the railway complaints office?

Clerk: Yes, hi, tell me as well.

Client: I wanted to make a complaint. My train was more than two hours late today. So I also lost my connection, and now I can't go home. I'd like to refund the ticket.

Clerk: I understand what train was it?

Client: It was the 12.50 train from Rome to Florence. He was supposed to

arrive at 3 pm but arrived at 5 pm. The connection was at 4:30 pm.

Employee: Okay, you must fill out the complaint form. The refund will be made within ninety days.

Client: So much?

Clerk: Unfortunately, it's the company's rules. I'm sorry.

-

Customer: Hello, do I speak with Compra.it customer service?

Clerk: Yes, tell me.

Customer: Hi, I would like to make a complaint. The camera I bought on your site is not working.

Employee: Then you can send it back, and we will refund you the money. He must wrap the camera and send it back to us. As soon as it arrives, we will return the money to your credit card.

Client: I understand, thank you for hearing from you.

Clerk: Thanks to you.

## **Spanish**

25. Problemas, quejas

Cliente: Hola, ¿es esta la oficina de quejas ferroviarias?

Empleado: Sí, hola, dime también.

Cliente: quería presentar una queja. Mi tren llegó más de dos horas tarde hoy. Entonces también perdí mi conexión y ahora no puedo ir a casa. Me gustaría reembolsar el boleto.

Secretario: Entiendo, ¿Qué tren era?

Cliente: Era el tren de las 12.50 de Roma a Florencia. Se suponía que debía llegar a las 3 p.m., pero llegó a las 5 p.m. La conexión fue a las 4:30 pm.

Empleado: Bien, debe completar el formulario de queja. El reembolso se realizará dentro de los noventa días.

Cliente: ¿Tanto?

Secretario: Desafortunadamente, son las reglas de la compañía, lo siento.

-

Cliente: Hola, ¿hablo con el servicio al cliente de Compra.it?

Secretario: Sí, dime.

Cliente: Hola, me gustaría presentar una queja. La cámara que compré en su tienda no funciona.

Empleado: Luego puede devolverlo y le reembolsaremos el dinero. Debe envolver la cámara y enviárnosla. Tan pronto como llegue, le devolveremos el dinero a su tarjeta de crédito.



Cliente: Entiendo, gracias, saber de usted.

Empleado: Gracias a ti.

## CHAPTER#6: CONVERSATION WHILE SHOPPING

---

### Dialogue 26

#### English

26. Shopping - Buying a SIM and a smartphone

Employee: Good morning.

Customer: Hello, I would like to buy a phone.

Clerk: What kind of phone would you like? Do you prefer a new model or a simpler one to use?

Client: I would like a phone with a camera that also goes on the internet, but I don't want to spend too much.

Employee: Then, you can choose between these two models. The former is cheaper, the latter is more expensive but takes better pictures than the other.

Client: Then, I'll take the cheapest one. Also, I would like to buy a sim card.

Employee: So, you can choose between different telephone operators that have tariffs ... different tariffs. With operator A he can have calls and messages for only € 8, but he has no internet. With operator B, he has calls and internet for € 12.

Client: I prefer operator B. I want to have the internet.

Employee: Then give me your documents and proceed with the registration. Done. This is the sim. He has to put it on his phone. It will be active in three hours. All the passwords are written in this envelope, don't lose it.

Customer: Thank you very much. Then I put it on the phone at home. Can I pay by debit card?

Employee: Of course, enter the pin code here.

Customer: Done. Thank you.

Employee: Thanks. Goodbye.

#### Spanish

26. Compras: comprar una SIM y un teléfono inteligente

Empleado: Buenos días.

Cliente: Hola, me gustaría comprar un teléfono.

Empleado: ¿Qué tipo de teléfono le gustaría? ¿Prefieres un nuevo modelo o uno más simple de usar?

Cliente: Me gustaría un teléfono con cámara que también se conecte a Internet, pero no quiero gastar demasiado.

Empleado: luego puede elegir entre estos dos modelos. El primero es más barato, el último es más caro pero toma mejores fotos que el otro.

Cliente: Entonces tomaré el más barato. También me gustaría comprar una tarjeta SIM.

Empleado: Entonces, puede elegir entre diferentes operadores telefónicos que tienen tarifas... tarifas diferentes. Con el operador A puede recibir llamadas y mensajes por solo 8 € pero no tiene internet. Con el operador B tiene llamadas e internet por 12 €.

Cliente: Prefiero el operador B, quiero tener internet.

Empleado: luego deme sus documentos y proceda con el registro. Eso es todo Este es el sim. Tiene que ponerlo en su teléfono. Estará activo en tres horas. Todas las contraseñas están escritas en este sobre, no lo pierdas.

Cliente: Muchas gracias. Luego lo puse en el teléfono en casa. ¿Puedo pagar con tarjeta de débito?

Empleado: Por supuesto, ingrese el código PIN aquí.

Cliente: Listo. Gracias.

Empleado: Gracias, adiós.

## **Dialogue 27**

### **English**

27. Shopping: supermarket

Customer: Excuse me?

Saleswoman: Tell me.

Customer: Where is the shampoo on offer?

Saleswoman: At the end of the lane on the right.

Customer: Thank you. Can you also tell me where Vera Italia pasta is located?

Saleswoman: It is located in the second lane on the left.

Customer: Is that on offer too?

Saleswoman: No, I'm sorry, the offer on pasta ended on Wednesday.

Client: I understand. I have these discount coupons for milk, can I use them?

Order: You deliver them directly to the cashier.

Customer: Thanks.

-

Cashier: Good morning. Do you have a customer card?

Client: Yes, wait until I search for it... here it is. I also have these discount coupons for milk.

Cashier: Thanks. Do you want an envelope?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

Cashier: It is twelve euros and twenty cents.

Customer: Do you accept meal vouchers?

Cashier: No, unfortunately, not.

Client: Got it, here's to you.

Cashier: Do you collect points?

Customer: Yes.

Cashier: So here's your receipt and points.

## **Spanish**

27. Compras: supermercado

Cliente: ¡Disculpe!

Vendedora: Dime.

Cliente: ¿Dónde está el champú?

Vendedora: Al final del pasillo a la derecha.

Cliente: Gracias. ¿Me puede decir también dónde se encuentra la pasta Vera Italia?

Vendedora: se encuentra en el segundo pasillo a la izquierda.

Cliente: ¿También está en oferta?

Vendedora: No, lo siento, la oferta de pasta terminó el miércoles.

Cliente: Entiendo. Tengo estos cupones de descuento para la leche, ¿puedo usarlos?

Pedido: los entrega directamente al cajero.

Cliente: gracias.

-

Cajero: Buenos días, ¿Tiene una tarjeta de cliente?

Cliente: Sí, espere hasta que lo busque... aquí está. También tengo estos cupones de descuento para la leche.

Cajero: Gracias. ¿Quieres un sobre?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

Cajero: Son doce euros y veinte centavos.

Cliente: ¿Aceptan vales de comida?

Cajero: No, desafortunadamente no.

Cliente: Entendido, aquí está para ti.

Cajero: ¿Recibe puntos?

Cliente: Sí.

Cajero: Así que aquí tienes tu recibo y puntos.

## **Dialogue 28**

### **English**

28. Shopping, Clothes

Client: Good morning.

Salesman: Good morning, can I help you?

Client: I was looking for a shirt.

Salesman: What kind of shirt?

Client: I'm looking for a cotton shirt to go to work.

Salesman: I understand. Did you have a particular color in mind?

Client: I have a blue jacket, so I would like it in a color that fits well with the jacket.

Salesman: So, let's see, there would be this beautiful blue shirt, with the pocket, what do you think? Or, if you like fantasies, there is this blue and white checkered shirt.

Client: Both are pretty, but I prefer the plain color one.

Salesman: Okay. What size does it wear?

Client: A 46.

Shop assistant: Here you go.

Customer: Thanks.

-

Client: Hi, I was looking for a formal dress. Better if long, I have to go to a wedding in the evening. If possible dark-colored, blue, or black type.

Saleswoman: I understand. What about this?

Customer: Yes, very nice. I try it immediately, thanks. Where are the dressing rooms?

Saleswoman: At the bottom right.

### **Spanish**

28. Compras, ropa

Cliente: Buenos días.

Vendedor: Buenos días, ¿puedo ayudarlo?

Cliente: Estoy buscando una camisa.

Vendedor: ¿Qué tipo de camisa?

Cliente: Estoy buscando una camisa de algodón para ir a trabajar.

Vendedor: Entiendo. ¿Tenías un color particular en mente?

Cliente: Tengo una chaqueta azul, así que me gustaría en un color que combine bien con la chaqueta.

Asistente de la tienda: Entonces, veamos, habría una hermosa camisa azul, con el bolsillo, ¿qué te parece? O, si te gustan las fantasías, está esta camisa a cuadros azul y blanca.

Cliente: Ambos son bonitos, pero prefiero el color liso.

Vendedor: De acuerdo. ¿Qué talla lleva?

Client: A 46.

Ayudante de tienda: Aquí tienes.

Cliente: gracias.

-

Cliente: Hola, estaba buscando un vestido formal. Mejor si es largo, tengo que ir a una boda por la noche. Si es posible de color oscuro, azul o negro.

Vendedora: Entiendo. ¿Qué hay de esto?

Cliente: Sí, muy bien, lo intento de inmediato, gracias. ¿Dónde están los vestuarios?

Vendedora: en la parte inferior derecha.

## **Dialogue 29**

### **English**

29. Shopping, Butchery

Client: Good morning.

Butcher: Good morning, lady. What do you want?

Customer: Do you have minced meat?

Butcher: Yes, we have minced chicken, pork, and veal.

Customer: I have to make tortellini, which do you recommend?

Butcher: So take some pork and some veal. About three hundred grams of each.

Customer: Thanks. Then I would also like steaks.

Butcher: Beef or pork?

Customer: Beef, thank you. Do you also have skewers?

Butcher: Yes, madam, we have lamb skewers with peppers, beef skewers with vegetables and beef skewers with olives.

Client: Give me a dozen skewers with vegetables.

Butcher: That's it, do you need anything else?

Customer: Do you also have mortadella on offer?

Butcher: Yes, there is this one with pistachios, how long do I cook it for?

Client: Give it a couple of hours.

Butcher: Is that enough?

Customer: Yes, that's enough, how much is it?

Butcher: They are 18 euros and 50.

Client: Here you go. Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

29. Compras, carnicería

Cliente: Buenos días.

Carnicero: Buenos días, señora, ¿qué quieres?

Cliente: ¿Tienes carne picada?

Carnicero: Sí, tenemos el pollo picado, cerdo y ternera.

Cliente: Tengo que hacer tortellini, ¿qué me recomiendan?

Carnicero: Así que toma un poco de carne de cerdo y ternera. Alrededor de trescientos gramos de cada uno.

Cliente: Gracias. Entonces también me gustaría filetes.

Carnicero: ¿Carne de res o cerdo?

Cliente: Carne de res, gracias. ¿También tienes brochetas?

Carnicero: Sí señora, tenemos brochetas de cordero con pimientos, brochetas de ternera con verduras y brochetas de ternera con aceitunas.

Cliente: Dame una docena de brochetas con verduras.

Carnicero: Eso es, ¿necesitas algo más?

Cliente: ¿También tiene mortadela en oferta?

Carnicero: Sí, hay este con pistachos, ¿cuánto tiempo lo cocino?

Cliente: Dele un par de horas.

Carnicero: ¿Eso es suficiente?

Cliente: Sí, eso es suficiente, ¿cuánto es?

Carnicero: Son 18 euros y 50.

Cliente: Aquí tienes, adiós.

## **Dialogue 30**

### **English**

30. Shopping, fish market

Fishmonger: We serve number 48!

Customer: Here I am!

Fishmonger: Good evening. What would you want?

Customer: What are the sea bream on offer?

Fishmonger: These are these, look how beautiful. They are fresh fresh.

Customer: Are they sea or farmed?

Fishmonger: These are farmed and SPANISH, on offer at 9 euros and 90 per kilo. Those caught at sea instead cost about 15 euros per kilo.

Client: Then give me three of those on offer.

Fishmonger: Shall I clean them?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

Fishmonger: Do you need anything else?

Customer: Yes, at lunch I wanted to make a paste with seafood ... are those prawns I see fresh?

Fishmonger: No, sorry lady, those are defrosted. Only fresh prawns arrived this morning.

Client: Well, then give me a couple of ounces of shrimp. Then I would also need two nice big squids.

Fishmonger: Here you go. That's enough?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

Fishmonger: They are 14 euros and 45 cents.

Client: Here you go, thank you, and goodbye.

## **Spanish**

30. Compras, lonja

Pescadero: ¡Servimos al número 48!

Cliente: ¡Aquí estoy!

Pescadero: Buenas tardes, señora, ¿qué le doy?

Cliente: ¿Qué ofrece el besugo?

Pescadero: Estos son, mire qué hermoso. Son frescos.

Cliente: ¿Son marinos o cultivados?

Pescadería: Son de cultivo, se ofrecen a 9 euros y 90 por kilo. Los capturados en el mar cuestan alrededor de 15 euros por kilo.

Cliente: Entonces dame tres de esos en oferta.

Pescadero: ¿Debo limpiarlos?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

Pescadero: ¿Necesitas algo más?

Cliente: Sí, para el almuerzo quería hacer una pasta con mariscos... ¿Son esos langostinos que veo frescos?

Pescadero: No lo siento señora, esos están descongelados. Los langostinos



frescos llegaron esta mañana.

Cliente: Bueno, entonces dame un par de onzas de camarones. Entonces también necesitaría dos buenos calamares grandes.

Pescadero: Aquí tienes. ¿Es eso suficiente?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

Pescadería: son 14 euros y 45 centavos.

Cliente: Aquí tienes, gracias y adiós.

## **Dialogue 31**

### **English**

31. Shopping, wine shop

Shop assistant: Good evening.

Client: Good evening. Tonight I have a very important dinner, so I would like a wine to pair with food, which do you recommend?

Salesman: What are you cooking, meat or fish?

Client: As a first course, I thought of making a salmon pasta with lemon zest.

Shop assistant: So, to pair with the first, I recommend this Piedmontese white, which goes well with the first fish dishes. While for the second?

Client: Secondly, I thought of making sea bass with potatoes.

Salesman: Then I always recommend a white man, this time from Abruzzo. It has a slightly stronger taste.

Client: It seems perfect; I take them. Can you also recommend an aperitif prosecco?

Salesman: Of course. There is a prosecco always produced in Piedmont, on the border with France. It is fresh and light.

Customer: Okay. And for the dessert you recommend, a liqueur?

Salesman: I recommend a Passito di Pantelleria. It is a very sweet and alcoholic wine, to be drunk in small glasses. It is an excellent after-meal.

Client: Okay, then, I'll take them all.

Salesman: Thanks and goodbye.

### **Spanish**

31. Compras, tienda de vinos

Ayudante de tienda: Buenas tardes.

Cliente: Buenas tardes. Esta noche tengo una cena muy importante, así que me gustaría un vino para acompañar la comida, ¿qué me recomiendan?

Vendedor: ¿Qué cocina, carne o pescado?

Cliente: Como primer plato, pensé en hacer una pasta de salmón con

ralladura de limón.

Asistente de tienda: Entonces, para combinar con el primero, recomiendo este blanco piemontés, que combina bien con los primeros platos de pescado.

Mientras que para el segundo?

Cliente: En segundo lugar, pensé en hacer lubina con papas.

Vendedor: Entonces siempre recomiendo un hombre blanco, esta vez de Abruzzo. Tiene un sabor ligeramente más fuerte.

Cliente: Parece perfecto, los tomo. ¿Me puede recomendar también un aperitivo prosecco?

Vendedor: por supuesto. Siempre hay un prosecco producido en Piamonte, en la frontera con Francia. Es fresco y ligero.

Cliente: Ok. Y para el postre que recomiendas, ¿un licor?

Vendedor: Recomendando un Passito di Pantelleria. Es un vino muy dulce y alcohólico, para beber en vasos pequeños. Es un excelente después de la comida.

Cliente: Bien, entonces me los llevaré a todos.

Vendedor: Gracias y adiós.

## Dialogue 32

### English

32. Shopping, Greengrocer

Client: Good morning.

Greengrocer: Good morning, lady, what do I give you?

Client: Give me a kilo of green beans, but please give me these little ones.

Greengrocer: Now, lady, what else?

Customer: Yes, do you have courgettes?

Greengrocer: Yes, these courgettes are fresh; we grow them in our field.

Customer: Really? And how much do they cost per kilo?

Greengrocer: They cost 3 euros and 40.

Client: I'm a little expensive.

Greengrocer: But they are first fruits, lady. And then they are organic.

Client: Then give me three. Is the salad your production too?

Greengrocer: Yes, do you want some?

Client: Yes, give me that map. Then also give me a couple of pounds of apples.

Greengrocer: Which ones do you want? We have renette and golden apples.

Client: Le renette.

Greengrocer: Here you go, do you need anything else?

Customer: No, that's enough ... in fact, give me some smells.

Greengrocer: Here you go, it's 6 euros and 50.

Customer: Here, thanks.

Greengrocer: Goodbye.

### Spanish

32. Compras, frutería

Cliente: Buenos días.

Verdulero: Buenos días señora, ¿qué le doy?

Cliente: Dame un kilo de judías verdes, pero por favor dame estos pequeños.

Verdulero: Ahora señora, ¿qué más?

Cliente: Sí, ¿tienes calabacines?

Verdulero: Sí, estos calabacines son frescos, los cultivamos en nuestro campo.

Cliente: ¿En serio? ¿Y cuánto cuestan por kilo?

Frutería: cuestan 3 euros y 40.

Cliente: Es un poco caro.

Verdulero: Pero son de primera calidad, señora y son orgánicos.

Cliente: Entonces dame tres. ¿La ensalada es de la casa también?

Verdulero: Sí, ¿quieres un poco?

Cliente: Sí, dame ese mapa. Entonces también dame un par de manzanas.

Verdulero: ¿Cuáles quieres? Tenemos renette y manzanas doradas.

Cliente: Le renette.

Verdulero: Aquí tienes, ¿necesitas algo más?

Cliente: No, esto es suficiente...

Frutería: Aquí tienes 6 euros y 50.

Cliente: Aquí, gracias.

Frutería: Adiós.

### **Dialogue 33**

#### **English**

33. Shopping Bakery

Baker: Good morning.

Client: Good morning. I wanted a well-cooked strand.

Baker: Which do you prefer? We have the Ferrarese or the Apulian type of bread.

Client: Let me see, uh ... give me the one from Ferrara.

Baker: The loaf is one kilo, do I give it everything?

Client: No, give me about half of it.

Baker: Is that enough?

Customer: No, do you also have bread without salt?

Baker: Let me see ... there is only one sandwich left.

Client: Then give me that.

Baker: Well, do you need anything else?

Client: Yes, I would also like white pizza—the slightly more leavened one, which I can fill with sliced meat. Give me a piece, not too big.

Baker: Okay, so?

Customer: Yes, thank you. Then also give me some dry biscuits.

Baker: Which ones do you want? There are donuts with wine, biscuits with dried fruit, cat's tongues, and biscuits with chocolate chips.

Customer: Give me a little mixed.

Baker: Is that enough?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

## **Spanish**

### 33. Shopping Bakery

Baker: Buenos días.

Cliente: Buenos días. Quería un hilo bien cocido.

Baker: ¿Cuál prefieres? Tenemos el pan tipo Ferrarese o Apulian.

Cliente: Déjame ver, eh ... dame el de Ferrara.

Baker: El pan es de un kilo, ¿le doy todo?

Cliente: No, dame aproximadamente la mitad.

Baker: ¿Eso es suficiente?

Cliente: No, ¿también tienes pan sin sal?

Baker: Déjame ver... solo queda un sándwich.

Cliente: Entonces dame eso.

Baker: Bueno, ¿necesitas algo más?

Cliente: Sí, también me gustaría pizza blanca. El un poco más leudado, que puedo llenar con rodajas de carne. Dame una pieza no demasiado grande.

Baker: ¿De acuerdo?

Cliente: Sí, gracias. Entonces también dame unas galletas secas.

Baker: ¿Cuáles quieres? Hay rosquillas con vino, galletas con frutos secos, lenguas de gato y galletas con chispas de chocolate.

Cliente: Dame un poco mezclado.

Baker: ¿Eso es suficiente?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

## **Dialogue 34**

### **English**

#### 34. Shopping, Newsstand

Edicolante: Good morning.

Client: Hi, give me La Repubblica today.

Edicolante: Here you go, on Friday, there is also an annex.

Client: And what is it?

Newsstand: It is a weekly political study that comes out every Friday with La Repubblica.

Client: I understand. Do you also have The Riddles Week of the past week? I forgot to buy it last week; I would like to see the solutions to the crossword puzzles.

Newsstand: No, I'm sorry, we're done. We only have this week's issue. But I

can order it: it would arrive on Thursday.

Customer: Okay, order it as well, thanks.

-

Client: Good morning, the new issue of the comic about the professor has come out ...? I don't remember what it's called ... it's for my son.

Edicolante: I don't know, let me check ... Could it be "The Adventures of Professor Kurama"?

Client: Show me a moment... yes, that's exactly it!

Edicolante: Perfect! Here you are, it's 3 euros.

Customer: Thanks. Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

34. Compras, Kiosco

Edicolante: Buenos días.

Cliente: Hola, dame La Republica hoy.

Edicolante: Aquí tienes, el viernes también hay un anexo.

Cliente: ¿Y qué es eso?

Kiosco: es un estudio político semanal que sale todos los viernes con La Republica.

Cliente: entiendo. ¿También tienes The Riddles Week de la semana pasada? Olvidé comprarlo la semana pasada, me gustaría ver las soluciones a los crucigramas.

Kiosco: No, lo siento, hemos terminado. Solo tenemos el problema de esta semana. Pero puedo pedirlo: llegaría el jueves.

Cliente: Bien, pídale también, gracias.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, ¿Salió el nuevo número del cómic sobre el profesor? No recuerdo cómo se llama... es para mi hijo.

Edicolante: No sé, déjame comprobar... ¿Podría ser "Las aventuras del profesor Kurama"?

Cliente: Muéstreme un momento... ¡sí, eso es exactamente!

Edicolante: ¡Perfecto! Aquí tienes, son 3 euros.

Cliente: Gracias, adiós.

## **Dialogue 35**

### **English**

35. Shopping, Tobacconist

Client: Hi, I'd like a pack of cigarettes, please.

Tobacconist: Ten or twenty?

Customer: Twenty thanks. Then also give me a packet of chewing gum.

Tobacconist: 4 euros and 90 cents, please.

Customer: Thanks. Goodbye.

-

Client: Hi, I'd like a letter envelope and a stamp.

Tobacconist: The envelope of what size?

Client: Give me the big one like an A4 sheet.

Tobacconist: And how long does the stamp want it?

Customer: From 90 cents. Thank you.

-

Client: Good morning. I want a pack of twenty cigarettes and a scratch card.

Customer: Do you also have bus tickets?

Tobacconist: Yes, what ticket do you need?

Client: I would like an urban bus ticket.

Tobacconist: In total, it is eight euros.

Client: Here you go, thank you.

## **Spanish**

35. Compras, estanco

Cliente: Hola, me gustaría un paquete de cigarrillos, por favor.

Estancos: ¿Diez o veinte?

Cliente: Veinte gracias, también dame un paquete de chicles.

Estancos: Son 4 euros y 90 centavos.

Cliente: Gracias, adiós.

-

Cliente: Hola, me gustaría un sobre con una carta y un sello.

Estancos: ¿El sobre de qué tamaño?

Cliente: Dame el grande como una hoja A4.

Estanco: ¿Y cuánto tiempo lo quiere el sello?

Cliente: de 90 centavos. Gracias.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, quería un paquete de veinte cigarrillos y una tarjeta para rascar.

Cliente: dámelo por 2 euros. ¿También tienes boletos de autobús?

Estancos: Sí, ¿Qué boleto necesitas?

Cliente: Me gustaría un boleto de autobús urbano.

Estancos: En total son ocho euros.

Cliente: Aquí tienes, gracias.

## **Dialogue 36**

### **English**

36. Shopping, Hairdressers

Customer: Hi ...

Hairdresser: Hi, did you have an appointment?

Client: Yes, I had an appointment at 3:00.

Hairdresser: Take a seat here. What do you want to do?

Customer: I would like to cut my hair a bit and die my hair.

Hairdresser: How short do you want it?

Client: I would like to shorten it just a little bit and fix the bangs.

Hairdresser: And how do I dry it? Straight or curly?

Client: I would like them smooth.

Hairdresser: Do you like it?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

-

Client: Good morning. I wanted to cut my beard and hair.

Hairdresser: Hi, come in. How do you want me to cut them?

Client: I would like to shorten it on the temples and also fix the sideburns.

Nothing excessive.

Hairdresser: And the beard?

Client: I'd like a shaved beard and a slightly shortened mustache.

Hairdresser: Okay, I'll fix it right away.

### **Spanish**

36. Compras, Peluqueros

Cliente: Hola...

Peluquero: Hola, ¿tienes una cita?

Cliente: Sí, tengo una cita a las 3.

Peluquero: Toma asiento aquí. ¿Qué quieres hacer?

Cliente: Me gustaría cortarme un poco el cabello y retocar el color.

Peluquero: ¿Cómo quieres cortarlo?

Cliente: Me gustaría cortarlo un poco y arreglar el flequillo.

Peluquero: ¿Y cómo los seco? ¿Recto o rizado?

Cliente: Me gustaría que sean suaves.

Peluquero: Entonces también paso el plato. Está bien?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.



-  
Cliente: Buenos días, quiero cortarme la barba y el cabello.

Peluquero: Hola, pase. ¿Cómo quieres cortarlos?

Cliente: Me gustaría acortarlos en las sienes y también arreglar las patillas.  
Nada excesivo

Peluquero: ¿Y la barba?

Cliente: Me gustaría una barba afeitada y un bigote ligeramente acortado.

Peluquero: Bien, los arreglaré de inmediato.

### **Dialogue 37**

#### **English**

37. Shopping, Tattoo studio

Client: Hi, I would like to get a tattoo.

Tattoo Artist: Take a seat; what tattoo would you like?

Client: I was thinking of a butterfly with the initial of my boyfriend's name nearby.

Tattoo artist: The initial? You're brave. I warn you that the tattoo does not take off, think about it before tattooing your boyfriend's initial!

Client: Yes, I know it doesn't come off, but I'm convinced.

Tattoo artist: Ok, as far as the butterfly is concerned, I'll show you some in the catalog.

Client: Thanks, I like this one here.

Tattoo artist: Okay. Where do you want to do it?

Client: On the shoulder.

Tattoo artist: Well, then let's start ... you will feel a little pain.

Customer: Ouch, what a bad thing!

Tattoo artist: Hold on a little longer ... that's it. Do you like it?

Customer: It is beautiful!

Tattoo artist: So, you have to disinfect it every day and put this cream on for a week, okay?

Customer: Okay, thanks. How much do I owe you?

Tattoo artist: It is 70 euros.

Client: Here you go, thank you.

Tattoo artist: Thanks to you.

#### **Spanish**

37. Compras, estudio de tatuajes

Cliente: Hola, me gustaría hacerme un tatuaje.

Artista del tatuaje: siéntate, ¿Qué tatuaje te gustaría?

Cliente: Estaba pensando en una mariposa con la inicial del nombre de mi novio cerca.

Artista del tatuaje: ¿La inicial? Eres valiente Te advierto que el tatuaje no despega, ¡Piénsalo antes de tatuar la inicial de tu novio!

Cliente: Sí, sé que no sale, pero estoy convencido.

Artista del tatuaje: Ok, en lo que respecta a la mariposa, te mostraré algunos en el catálogo.

Cliente: Gracias, me gusta este aquí.

Artista del tatuaje: Ok. ¿Dónde quieres hacerlo?

Cliente: En el hombro.

Artista del tatuaje: Bueno, entonces comencemos... sentirás un poco de dolor.

Cliente: ¡Ay, qué cosa mala!

Artista del tatuaje: Espera un poco más... eso es todo. Te gusta

Cliente: ¡Es hermoso!

Artista del tatuaje: Entonces, debes desinfectarlo todos los días y ponerte esta crema durante una semana, ¿de acuerdo?

Cliente: Bien, gracias. ¿Cuánto te debo?

Artista del tatuaje: es de 70 euros.

Cliente: Aquí tienes, gracias.

Artista del tatuaje: Gracias a ti.

### **Dialogue 38**

#### **English**

38. Shopping, Bookshop

Client: Good morning.

Salesman: Hello Miss, can I help you?

Client: Yes, I was looking for a book to give to a friend's son. He's only seven. I would like to give him something nice, with drawings, but that he can always read.

Salesman: Yes, then I would recommend The Little Prince, by Antoine de Saint Exupéry. It is truly a classic, suitable for all ages. And then there are some beautiful designs, what do you think?

Client: I'd say it's perfect, thanks!

-

Client: Good morning. I'm looking for a book.

Salesman: What book?

Customer: I don't remember very well; a friend recommended it to me. I don't remember the plot well; it's about a murder that takes place on a train. In short, the culprit must be found on the train.

Salesman: Ah, but you're talking about Assassination on Agatha Christie's Orient Express! It's a classic! Her friend is right! He will keep you in suspense! Here, look, there is this edition in a special offer for only 6 euros and 99 cents.

Client: Thank you, that's exactly it.

## **Spanish**

38. Compras, librería

Cliente: Buenos días.

Vendedor: Hola señora, ¿Puedo ayudarla?

Cliente: Sí, estaba buscando un libro para regalarle al hijo de un amigo. El solo tiene siete años. Me gustaría darle algo lindo, con dibujos, pero que siempre pueda leer.

Vendedor: Sí, entonces recomendaría El Principito, de Antoine de Saint Exupéry. Es realmente un clásico, apto para todas las edades. Y luego hay algunos diseños hermosos, ¿qué te parece?

Cliente: Yo diría que es perfecto, ¡gracias!

-

Cliente: Buenos días, estoy buscando un libro.

Vendedor: ¿Qué libro?

Cliente: No recuerdo muy bien, un amigo me lo recomendó. No recuerdo bien la trama, se trata de un asesinato que tiene lugar en un tren. En resumen, el culpable debe ser encontrado en el tren.

Vendedor: ¡Ah, pero está hablando del asesinato en el Expreso de Oriente de Agatha Christie! Es un clásico! ¡Su amiga tiene razón! ¡Te mantendrá en suspenso! Aquí, mira, hay esta edición en oferta especial por solo 6 euros y 99 centavos.

Cliente: Gracias, eso es exactamente.

## **Dialogue 39**

### **English**

39. Shopping, Laundry

Saleswoman: Good morning.

Customer: Good morning, I wanted to know: do you also wash blankets and

duvets?

Saleswoman: Yes, madam, we also wash blankets and duvets; it takes about two days. The cost is 7 euros for a blanket and 10 for a duvet.

Customer: I understood thanks, so tomorrow I will bring the blankets to wash ... In the meantime, however, I would like to have this coat and shirts washed.

Saleswoman: Yes, give it to me. Do you want shirts to also be ironed?

Customer: Yes, thank you.

Saleswoman: Well, they'll be ready for tomorrow. This is the receipt with which you can collect clean linen.

Client: Thanks. See you tomorrow.

-

Saleswoman: Good morning, miss.

Customer: Hi, I would like to know if you also do dry cleaning here. Because I have this formal dress that can only be washed like this.

Saleswoman: Of course, we also do dry cleaning.

Customer: Do you also make repairs?

Saleswoman: Yes, but only small, tailoring jobs.

Customer: Well, because my jacket has lost a button, can you sew it on?

Saleswoman: Don't worry, your dress will be cleaned and repaired tomorrow.

Customer: Thanks a lot.

## **Spanish**

39. Compras, lavandería

Vendedora: Buenos días.

Cliente: Buenos días, quería saber: ¿También lava mantas y edredones?

Vendedora: Sí, señora, también lavamos mantas y edredones, lleva unos dos días. El costo es de 7 euros por una manta y 10 por un edredón.

Cliente: Entendí las gracias, así que mañana traeré las mantas para lavar ... Mientras tanto, sin embargo, me gustaría lavar este abrigo y las camisas.

Vendedora: Sí, démelos. ¿Quieres planchar también las camisas?

Cliente: Sí, gracias.

Vendedora: Bueno, estarán listas para mañana. Este es el recibo con el que puede recoger la ropa limpia.

Cliente: Gracias, hasta mañana.

-

Vendedora: Buenos días señora.

Cliente: Hola, me gustaría saber si también hace limpieza en seco aquí.

Porque tengo este vestido formal que solo se puede lavar así.

Vendedora: Por supuesto, también hacemos limpieza en seco.

Cliente: ¿También hace reparaciones?

Vendedora: Sí, pero solo pequeños trabajos de sastrería.

Cliente: Bueno, porque mi chaqueta ha perdido un botón, ¿puede coserla?

Vendedora: No se preocupe, su vestido será limpiado y reparado mañana.

Cliente: Muchas gracias.

## **Dialogue 40**

### **English**

40. Shopping, ice cream shop

Ice Cream Maker: Good morning.

Customer: Good morning, two ice cream cones, please.

Ice Cream Maker: Small, Medium, or Large?

Customer: Medi, thank you. What flavors are there?

Ice cream maker: There are classic flavors such as mozzarella, chocolate, cream, stracciatella, fruit ones, and more particular ones like biscuit or nougat.

Client: So, make me a cone with chocolate and cream, please.

Ice Cream Maker: with cream?

Customer: Yes, thank you. And another cone with strawberry, lemon, and mint, without cream.

Ice Cream Maker: Here you go, it's 5 euros.

-

Client: Good morning, I would like a granita.

Ice Cream Maker: What does it taste like?

Client: Mint. And then I would like a small cup for my daughter, with strawberry and chocolate, without cream.

Ice Cream Maker: Here you go.

Customer: Do you also make milkshakes here?

Ice Cream Maker: Yes, with the cream.

Customer: Then also a chocolate milkshake, thank you.

Ice Cream Maker: Here it is. I also give you a straw for the milkshake.

### **Spanish**

40. Compras, heladería

Heladera: Buenos días.

Cliente: Buenos días, dos conos de helado, por favor.

Fabricante de helados: ¿pequeño, mediano o grande?

Cliente: Medi, gracias. ¿Qué sabores hay?

Heladera: hay sabores clásicos como mozzarella, chocolate, crema, stracciatella, frutas y otros más particulares, como galletas o turrone.

Cliente: Entonces, hazme un cono con chocolate y crema por favor.

Ice Cream Maker: ¿Con crema?

Cliente: Sí, gracias. Y otro cono con fresa, limón y menta, sin crema.

Ice Cream Maker: Aquí tienes 5 euros.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, me gustaría una granita.

Ice Cream Maker: ¿A qué sabe?

Cliente: Menta. Y luego me gustaría una taza pequeña para mi hija, con fresa y chocolate. Sin crema

Ice Cream Maker: Aquí tienes.

Cliente: ¿También haces batidos aquí?

Ice Cream Maker: Sí, con la crema.

Cliente: Entonces también un batido de chocolate, gracias.

Ice Cream Maker: Aquí está. También te doy una pajita para el batido.

## **Dialogue 41**

### **English**

41. Shopping, Bargaining (at the flea market)

Seller: Come, gentlemen, come! Many beautiful things at a low price! Real antiques!

Customer: How much is this watch coming?

Seller: This, madam, is a very old piece; it is more than a hundred years old. Look how well preserved it is. I can give this to you for 100 euros.

Customer: It is too much! Not worth this price! I can give you half of it!

Seller: But no, I can't accept 50 euros. This is truly a valuable piece! I can give it to 90.

Customer: It is always too much. In my opinion, it is not worth them at most 55 euros for that watch.

Seller: No, sorry, madam, I really can't get you that price. 80 euros, what do you say? It's a great deal.

Customer: Mmmhhh ... we are not there yet. I can really find it somewhere else at a lower price. What about 65 euros?

Seller: I can drop to 75. Is this my last offer, what do you say?

Client: Go for 75.

Seller: Thanks, madam, good day.

Customer: Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

41. Compras, negociación (en el mercado de pulgas)

Vendedor: Ven señores, vengan! ¡Muchas cosas hermosas a bajo precio!  
Antigüedades de verdad!

Cliente: ¿Cuánto cuesta este reloj?

Vendedor: Esta, señora, es una pieza muy antigua, tiene más de cien años.  
Mira lo bien conservado que está. Te puedo dar esto por 100 euros.

Cliente: ¡Es demasiado! No vale la pena este precio! ¡Puedo darte la mitad!

Vendedor: Pero no, no puedo aceptar 50 euros. Esta es realmente una pieza  
valiosa! Puedo dárselo a 90.

Cliente: siempre es demasiado. En mi opinión no vale la pena. Como máximo  
55 euros por ese reloj.

Vendedor: No, lo siento señora, realmente no puedo conseguirle ese precio.  
80 euros, ¿qué dices? Es un buen trato.

Cliente: Mmmhhh... Todavía no estamos allí. Realmente puedo encontrarlo  
en otro lugar a un precio más bajo. ¿Qué hay de 65 euros?

Vendedor: Puedo bajar a 75. ¿Es esta mi última oferta, qué dice?

Cliente: Vaya por 75.

Vendedor: Gracias señora, buen día.

Cliente: Adios.

## **Dialogue 42**

### **English**

42. Shopping, Pharmacy

Pharmacist: Good morning.

Client: Hi, I have the flu. I would like something to get rid of this fever.

Pharmacist: Then, for fever and headache, you can take acetaminophen—one  
tablet in the morning and one in the evening.

Client: While for a sore throat?

Pharmacist: You can take this natural honey syrup, it will give you relief.

Customer: Thanks. And for this bad cold? I can hardly breathe ...

Pharmacist: For colds, there is this nasal spray. I recommend you do not use

it too much, because it can have unpleasant side effects.

Customer: Thanks. One last thing, can I have antibiotics?

Pharmacist: I'm sorry, but we can't sell you antibiotics without your doctor's prescription.

Client: I understand, goodbye.

-

Customer: Hi, I need a pain reliever. I have great back pain.

Pharmacist: Do you want Dolorex, or is generic medicine, okay?

Customer: What difference is there?

Pharmacist: There is no difference, only that the generic drug costs a little less.

Client: Then give me the generic drug, thanks. And then also an ointment to put on the back.

## **Spanish**

42. Compras, farmacia

Farmacéutico: Buenos días.

Cliente: Hola, tengo gripe, me gustaría algo para deshacerme de esta fiebre.

Farmacéutico: Luego, para la fiebre y el dolor de cabeza, puede tomar paracetamol. Una tableta por la mañana y otra por la tarde.

Cliente: ¿Mientras tiene dolor de garganta?

Farmacéutico: puede tomar este jarabe de miel natural, le dará alivio.

Cliente: gracias. ¿Y por este mal resfriado? Apenas puedo respirar...

Farmacéutico: Para los resfriados existe este aerosol nasal. Le recomiendo que no lo use demasiado, ya que puede tener efectos secundarios desagradables.

Cliente: gracias. Una última cosa, ¿Puedo tomar antibióticos?

Farmacéutico: Lo siento, pero no podemos venderle antibióticos sin la receta de su médico.

Cliente: Entiendo, adiós.

-

Cliente: Hola, necesito un analgésico. Tengo un gran dolor de espalda.

Farmacéutico: ¿Quiere Dolorex o está bien la medicina genérica?

Cliente: ¿Qué diferencia hay?

Farmacéutico: no hay diferencia, solo que el medicamento genérico cuesta un poco menos.

Cliente: Entonces dame el medicamento genérico, gracias. Y luego también



una pomada para poner en la espalda.

## **Dialogue 43**

### **English**

43. Shopping, Shoe store

Client: Good morning.

Saleswoman: Hi, can I help you?

Client: I was looking for a pair of shoes to work. I spend a lot of time on my feet, so it is important that they are comfortable.

Saleswoman: We have different models of sneakers. There is this model that is excellent for those who have to walk a lot, while the other is good because it keeps the foot comfortable and is breathable.

Client: Both are beautiful, but I was looking for something less sporty ...

Saleswoman: Then there are these moccasins in soft leather and leather. They are comfortable and soft.

Client: Are there also blacks?

Saleswoman: There are blacks, browns, and grays.

Client: I like blacks, can I try them?

Saleswoman: Of course! What number does it carry?

Client: 39.

Saleswoman: How are they?

Customer: They seem comfortable, but maybe I'm a little tight, can I try the 40?

Saleswoman: Yes, here it is.

Client: 40 is fine; I take these.

Saleswoman: Okay, you can pay at the checkout.

Customer: Thanks. Goodbye.

### **Spanish**

43. Compras, zapatería

Cliente: Buenos días.

Vendedora: Hola, ¿puedo ayudarlo?

Cliente: Estaba buscando un par de zapatos para trabajar. Paso mucho tiempo de pie, así que es importante que se sientan cómodos.

Vendedora: Tenemos diferentes modelos de zapatillas. Existe este modelo que es excelente para quienes tienen que caminar mucho, mientras que el otro es bueno porque mantiene el pie cómodo y transpirable.

Cliente: Ambos son hermosos, pero estaba buscando algo menos deportivo...

Vendedora: Luego están estos mocasines de cuero suave y cuero. Son cómodos y suaves.

Cliente: ¿También hay negros?

Vendedora: Hay negros, marrones y grises.

Cliente: Me gustan los negros, ¿puedo probarlos?

Vendedora: ¡Por supuesto! ¿Qué número lleva?

Cliente: 39.

Vendedora: ¿Cómo están?

Cliente: Parecen cómodos, pero tal vez estoy un poco apretado, ¿puedo probar los 40?

Vendedora: Sí, aquí está.

Cliente: 40 está bien, tomo estos.

Vendedora: Bien, puedes pagar en la caja.

Cliente: Gracias, adiós.

## CHAPTER#7: CONVERSATION ABOUT SPORTS AND ATHLETICS

---

### Dialogue 44

#### English

44. Sports, Joining the gym

Client: Good morning, I would like to join the gym.

Employee: Of course, which courses interest you?

Client: Mmmhh ... let's see what courses are there?

Employee: We have aerobics, pilates, yoga classes, or you can choose the exercise room, with weights, the exercise bike, and the treadmill.

Client: I prefer to take Pilates and Yoga courses. When are they there?

Employee: So, yoga is on Tuesdays and Fridays from 14 to 15, while Pilates is on Wednesdays and Thursdays from 16 to 17.

Customer: Okay, how much does it cost per month?

Employee: It costs 35 euros per month, or there is a three-month subscription that comes 90 euros.

Client: That's okay for three months.

Employee: To enroll, you need a doctor's certificate attesting that you can exercise.

Customer: Yes, I brought it; here it is.

Employee: Good. With the subscription for three months, he also receives the gym shirt for free.

Customer: Thank you.

Clerk: Thanks to you. You can start lessons whenever you want. Goodbye.

#### Spanish

44. Deportes, unirse al gimnasio

Cliente: Buenos días, me gustaría unirme al gimnasio.

Empleado: Por supuesto, ¿qué cursos te interesan?

Cliente: Mmmhh ... veamos, ¿qué cursos hay?

Empleado: Tenemos clases de aeróbicos, Pilates, yoga, o puede elegir la sala de ejercicios, con pesas, la bicicleta estática y la cinta de correr.

Cliente: Prefiero tomar cursos de Pilates y Yoga. ¿Cuándo están allí?

Empleado: Entonces, el yoga es los martes y viernes de 14 a 15, mientras que Pilates es los miércoles y jueves de 16 a 17.

Cliente: Bien, ¿cuánto cuesta por mes?

Empleado: cuesta 35 euros al mes, o hay una suscripción de tres meses que viene a 90 euros.

Cliente: Eso está bien por tres meses.

Empleado: para inscribirse, necesita un certificado médico que acredite que puede hacer ejercicio.

Cliente: Sí, lo traje, aquí está.

Empleado: bien. Con la suscripción por tres meses, también recibe la camiseta del gimnasio gratis.

Cliente: gracias.

Empleado: Gracias a ti. Puedes comenzar las clases cuando quieras. Adiós.

## **Dialogue 45**

### **English**

#### 45. Sports, swimming pool

Instructor: Hi, everyone, welcome to the first swimming lesson of the year. I am Sandra, your instructor. First of all, do you all have headphones and goggles? ...

Well, then wear them. Are there any questions?

Student: Where do the slippers go?

Instructor: You can put them on the poolside and dive.

Student: Will there be any competitions at the end of the year?

Instructor: If you want to participate in May, there will be swimming competitions here in the pool. Now we will start with a little warm-up. Take the tablet in your hands and do three tanks of legs only. Then we will make five freestanding tubs.

...

Well, are you tired?

Student: A little. I'm out of breath.

Instructor: So let's rest. With a little training, you won't get tired so easily. Now let's do some dolphin baths, do you know him?

Student: Yes!

Instructor: Well, six dolphin tubs, and the lesson is over!

## **Spanish**

45. Deportes, piscina.

Instructor: Hola a todos, bienvenidos a la primera clase de natación del año. Soy Sandra, tu instructora. En primer lugar, ¿tienen auriculares y gafas? ...

Bueno, entonces úsalos. ¿Hay alguna pregunta?

Estudiante: ¿A dónde van las zapatillas?

Instructor: Puedes ponerlos en la piscina y bucear.

Estudiante: ¿Habrá alguna competencia al final del año?

Instructor: Si quieres participar en mayo habrá competencias de natación aquí en la piscina. Ahora comenzaremos con un poco de calentamiento. Tome la tableta en sus manos y haga solo tres tanques de piernas. Luego haremos cinco tinas independientes.

...

Bueno, ¿Estás cansado?

Estudiante: Un poco. Estoy sin aliento

Instructor: Así que descansemos. Con un poco de entrenamiento, no te cansarás tan fácilmente. Ahora hagamos una vuelta de delfín, ¿Lo conoces?

Estudiante: ¡Sí!

Instructor: ¡Bueno, seis vueltas de delfín y la lección ha terminado!

## **Dialogue 46**

### **English**

46. Sports, ski rental

Client: Good evening, I would like to rent skis.

Saleswoman: Yes, hi, how do you want them? Long or short?

Client: I prefer traditional long ones.

Saleswoman: Here, they should be fine. Do you also need to rent boots?

Customer: Ah, yes, it's true! I wear 41.

Saleswoman: I'll bring them to you right away. How are they doing?

Client: Well, thank you. I'll take them.

Saleswoman: Okay, how long do you want to rent them for?

Client: One week.

Saleswoman: Perfect, I need your name and a telephone number.

Client: My name is Alessandra Rossi. My number is 334/587 56782.

Saleswoman: Here is your receipt, the price is 75 euros. And there is also a

deposit of 50 euros that we will return to you when you bring everything back here.

Customer: Can I pay by card?

Saleswoman: Yes, of course, insert the card here and enter the code.

Customer: Done, thank you.

Saleswoman: Thanks to you. Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

46. Deportes, alquiler de esquís

Cliente: Buenas tardes, me gustaría alquilar esquís.

Vendedora: Sí, hola, ¿Cómo los quieres? ¿Largo o corto?

Cliente: Prefiero los largos tradicionales.

Vendedora: Aquí, deberían estar bien. ¿También necesitas alquilar botas?

Cliente: ¡Ah, sí, es verdad! Me pongo 41.

Vendedora: Te los traeré de inmediato. ¿Cómo les va?

Cliente: Bueno, gracias, los tomaré.

Vendedora: De acuerdo, ¿Por cuánto tiempo quiere alquilarlos?

Cliente: Una semana.

Vendedora: Perfecto, necesito tu nombre y un número de teléfono.

Cliente: Mi nombre es Alessandra Rossi, mi número es 334/587 56782.

Vendedora: Aquí está su recibo, el precio es de 75 euros. Y también hay un depósito de 50 euros que le devolveremos cuando traiga todo aquí.

Cliente: ¿Puedo pagar con tarjeta?

Vendedora: Sí, por supuesto, inserte la tarjeta aquí e ingrese el código.

Cliente: Listo, gracias.

## CHAPTER#8: INTRODUCTION AND SOCIAL CONVERSATION

---

### Dialogue 47

#### English

47. Social contexts, Introducing yourself

Claudio: Hi, my name is Claudio, and you?

Eve: My name is Eve nice to meet you. Where are you from?

Claudio: I come from Rome, but my mother is German, and you?

Eve: I come from Paris, but have lived in SPAIN for many years. So you can also speak German?

Claudio: Well, I'm not very good at German. I speak in SPANISH with my mother. I don't like studying languages very much; I prefer to play sports. Instead, what are your interests?

Eve: I really like cooking, that's why I moved to SPAIN. I took a SPANISH cooking class, and now I work as a cook in a downtown restaurant. And then I married a SPANISH! We also have two small girls, Greta and Lucia, who are twins and four years old. Do you have children?

Claudio: No, I don't have kids, and I'm not even married. I haven't found the right girl yet! I'd like to meet your family. Maybe one of these days, after the gym, we can all go to dinner together!

Eve: It seems like a nice idea! I'll leave you my phone number.

Claudio: Are you coming to the gym tomorrow? We can agree tomorrow!

Eve: Okay, see you tomorrow then.

Claudio: See you tomorrow.

#### Spanish

47. Contextos sociales, presentándose

Claudio: Hola mi nombre es Claudio, ¿Y tú?

Eve: Mi nombre es Eve, encantado de conocerte. De donde eres

Claudio: Vengo de Roma, pero mi madre es alemana, ¿y tú?

Eve: Vengo de París, pero he vivido en Italia durante muchos años. ¿Entonces también puedes hablar alemán?

Claudio: Bueno, no soy muy bueno en alemán. Hablo en SPANISH con mi madre. No me gusta mucho estudiar idiomas, prefiero hacer deporte. En cambio, ¿cuáles son tus intereses?

Eve: Me gusta mucho cocinar, por eso me mudé a Italia. Tomé una clase de cocina española y ahora trabajo como cocinera en un restaurante del centro. ¡Y luego me casé con un español! También tenemos dos niñas pequeñas, Greta y Lucía, que son gemelas y tienen cuatro años. ¿Tienes hijos?

Claudio: No, no tengo hijos y ni siquiera estoy casado. ¡Todavía no he encontrado a la chica correcta! Me gustaría conocer a tu familia. ¡Quizás uno de estos días, después del gimnasio, todos podamos ir a cenar juntos!

Eve: ¡Parece una buena idea! Te dejaré mi número de teléfono.

Claudio: ¿Vienes al gimnasio mañana? ¡Podemos estar de acuerdo mañana!

Eve: Bien, nos vemos mañana entonces.

Claudio: Hasta mañana.

## **Dialogue 48**

### **English**

48. Social contexts, Express your opinion

Carla: Hey Giulia, did you hear the last one? It seems that Giacomo and Silvia have decided to get married! Isn't it amazing? I am really happy for them!

Giulia: If you want my opinion, I don't think it's a good idea. Aren't they too young to marry? And then they broke up many times already. What do you think about it?

Carla: I think they are a beautiful couple and that their marriage could work.

Giulia: Hopefully, I'm not in favor of weddings when you're so young, because you still don't know life well. Certainly, Giacomo and Silvia love each other very much, but maybe getting married is a little too rushed, don't you think?

Carla: Maybe yes ... after all, they have only been together for two years. But if they love each other, it's right that they do it ... And then our parents got married when they were very young and are still happily married, perhaps eternal love exists!

Giulia: How optimistic you are! However, if they are happy, I am happy too. When is the wedding?



Carla: They don't know; they are still organizing everything.

Giulia: I understand. In any case, we will be there.

Carla: This is little, but sure!

## **Spanish**

48. Contextos sociales, expresa tu opinión

Carla: Hola Giulia, ¿Escuchaste la última? ¡Parece que Giacomo y Silvia han decidido casarse! ¿No es asombroso? ¡Estoy muy feliz por ellos!

Giulia: Si quieres mi opinión, no creo que sea una buena idea. ¿No son demasiado jóvenes para casarse? Y luego se separaron muchas veces. ¿Qué piensas?

Carla: Creo que son una pareja hermosa y que su matrimonio podría funcionar.

Giulia: Con suerte, no estoy a favor de las bodas cuando eres tan joven, porque todavía no conoces bien la vida. Ciertamente, Giacomo y Silvia se aman muy bien, pero tal vez casarse es demasiado apresurado, ¿no te parece?

Carla: Quizás sí... después de todo, solo han estado juntos por dos años. Pero si se aman, es correcto que lo hagan... Y luego nuestros padres se casaron cuando eran muy jóvenes y todavía están felizmente casados, ¡tal vez exista el amor eterno!

Giulia: ¡Qué optimista eres! Sin embargo, si son felices, yo también soy feliz. Cuando es la boda

Carla: No lo saben, todavía están organizando todo.

Giulia: Entiendo. En cualquier caso estaremos allí.

Carla: ¡Esto es pequeño pero seguro!

## **Dialogue 49**

### **English**

49. Social contexts invite someone

Marta: Hi Giorgia, how are you?

Giorgia: Hi, I'm fine, and you?

Marta: Well, we haven't seen each other for a long time! Do you always live in Rome?

Giorgia: Yes, but I have moved house. Now I live more in the suburbs.

Marta: How about if we go for a coffee one day and tell me a little?

Giorgia: Yes, come on!

Marta: So Thursday afternoon at the Cortile café can be okay?

Giorgia: Yes, Thursday, I'm free. At 3.00, okay?

Marta: Yes, it's fine.

-

Lucia: Hello, Maura, I'm Lucia.

Maura: Hi, Lucia, how are you?

Lucia: Well, thank you. I'll call you to invite you to my son's baptism. It will be Sunday 25 at 15 at the Church of San Giovanni. Afterward, we will have a refreshment at my house. Will you be there? I would like it.

Maura: Of course, I'll be there!

Lucia: Bring your boyfriend too, of course.

Maura: Thanks, then on Sunday.

Lucia: On Sunday, bye.

## **Spanish**

49. Contextos sociales, invita a alguien

Marta: Hola Giorgia, ¿Cómo estás?

Giorgia: Hola, estoy bien, ¿y tú?

Marta: Bueno, ¡no nos hemos visto en mucho tiempo! ¿Siempre vives en Roma?

Giorgia: Sí, pero me he mudado de casa. Ahora vivo más en los suburbios.

Marta: ¿Qué tal si vamos a tomar un café un día y me cuentas un poco?

Giorgia: ¡Sí, vamos!

Marta: ¿Entonces el jueves por la tarde en el café Cortile puede estar bien?

Giorgia: Sí, el jueves estoy libre. A las 3.00 ¿está bien?

Marta: Sí, está bien.

-

Lucia: Hola Maura, soy Lucia.

Maura: Hola Lucía, ¿Cómo estás?

Lucia: Bueno, gracias. Te llamaré para invitarte al bautismo de mi hijo. Será el domingo 25 a las 15 en la Iglesia de San Giovanni. Luego tomaremos un refresco en mi casa. ¿Estarás ahí? Me encantaría

Maura: ¡Por supuesto que estaré allí!

Lucia: Trae a tu novio también, por supuesto.

Maura: Gracias, luego el domingo.

Lucia: El domingo, adiós.

## **Dialogue 50**

## English

50. Social contexts, Rejecting an invitation

Paola: Hello, Gianluca, I'm Paola.

Gianluca: Hi Paola, tell me well.

Paola: I'll call you to tell you that I'm going to have a little party on Sunday evening to celebrate my birthday. We meet at the Kong Pub at ten o'clock, are you coming?

Gianluca: I'm sorry, Paola, but I just can't! My sister is getting married this Sunday, and I will be busy all day!

Paola: Wow! Never mind, it will be for the next time. Happy birthday to your sister on my part.

Gianluca: Sure! Hello!

Paola: Hi.

-

Mario: Hi, Carla! Good to see you! How long!

Carla: Hey, Mario, hi! How are you?

Mario: Very well, I only need a few exams to graduate.

Carla: Really? You have to tell me! Listen, Thursday I have lunch at my house with a few friends, how about coming?

Mario: I'd love to, but I can't. I have an exam next week, and I really have to study.

Carla: And you can't take an afternoon off?

Mario: No, unfortunately, I'm still far behind. How about seeing us after my exam next week?

Carla: Okay!

## Spanish

50. Contextos sociales, rechazar una invitación

Paola: Hola Gianluca, soy Paola.

Gianluca: Hola Paola, dime bien.

Paola: Te llamaré para decirte que voy a tener una pequeña fiesta el domingo por la noche para celebrar mi cumpleaños. Nos encontramos en el Pub Kong a las diez en punto, ¿vienes?

Gianluca: Lo siento, Paola, ¡pero no puedo! ¡Mi hermana se va a casar este domingo y estaré ocupada todo el día!

Paola: ¡Guau! No importa, será para la próxima vez. Feliz cumpleaños a tu hermana de mi parte.

Gianluca: Claro, ¡Hola!

Paola: Hola.

-

Mario: ¡Hola Carla! ¡Qué placer verte! ¿Cuánto tiempo?

Carla: Hola Mario, ¡Hola! ¿Cómo estás?

Mario: Muy bien, solo necesito algunos exámenes para graduarme.

Carla: ¿En serio? ¡Tienes que decirme! Mira, el jueves tengo un almuerzo en mi casa con unos amigos, ¿qué te parece venir?

Mario: Me encantaría, pero no puedo. Tengo un examen la próxima semana y realmente tengo que estudiar.

Carla: ¿Y no puedes tomarte una tarde libre?

Mario: No, desafortunadamente todavía estoy muy lejos. ¿Qué tal si nos vemos después de mi examen la próxima semana?

Carla: Ok!

## CHAPTER#9: CONVERSATION WHILE TRAVELLING

---

### Dialogue 51

#### English

51. Traveling, Asking for road information

Tourist: Excuse me, madam, to go to the Imperial Forums what road do we have to do?

Lady: Then it's a bit far from here on foot. Take the subway ... line B and get off at the Colosseum. On exiting the metro station, you will see the Colosseum in front of you. Turn left and walk the road for about five hundred meters. You will arrive on the street called Via Dei Fori Imperiali. The Forums are located there.

Tourist: Thank you!

-

Tourist: Excuse me, I'm lost. I have to get to Piazza Cavour.

Lady: So it's not difficult. Follow this road to the end. When you get to the town hall, turn left. Continue straight for about two hundred meters. At the traffic light, turn right and continue for another two hundred meters. At the end of the street is Piazza Cavour.

Tourist: So ... I walk the road to the end, turn right at the town hall ..

Lady: No, turn left at the town hall!

Tourist: Ah right, at the town hall, I turn left and continue straight until the traffic lights. At the traffic, lights turn right. At the end of the street is Piazza Cavour, right?

Lady: Right.

Tourist: Thanks a lot.

#### Spanish

51. Viajar, pedir información vial

Turista: Disculpe señora, para ir a los Foros Imperiales, ¿qué camino tenemos

que hacer?

Señora: Entonces está un poco lejos de aquí a pie. Tome el metro... línea B y bájese en el Coliseo. Al salir de la estación de metro, verá el Coliseo frente a usted. Gire a la izquierda y camine por la carretera unos quinientos metros. Llegarás a una calle llamada Via dei Fori Imperiali. Los foros están ubicados allí.

Turista: ¡Gracias!

-

Turista: Disculpe, estoy perdido. Tengo que llegar a Piazza Cavour.

Señora: Entonces no es difícil. Sigue este camino hasta el final. Cuando llegues al ayuntamiento, gira a la izquierda. Continúa recto durante unos doscientos metros. En el semáforo, gire a la derecha y continúe por otros doscientos metros. Al final de la calle está la Piazza Cavour.

Turista: Entonces... camino por el camino hasta el final, gire a la derecha en el ayuntamiento...

Señora: ¡No, gire a la izquierda en el ayuntamiento!

Turista: Ah a la derecha, en el ayuntamiento doblo a la izquierda y continúo recto hasta el semáforo. En el semáforo gire a la derecha. Al final de la calle está Piazza Cavour, ¿verdad?

Señora: bien.

Turista: Muchas gracias.

## **Dialogue 52**

### **English**

52. Traveling, At the station ticket office

Client: Good morning.

Employee: Good morning, how can I help you?

Client: I'd like two tickets to Florence.

Employee: For when?

Client: For next Thursday.

Employee: What time?

Client: I don't know, could you tell me the train times? Anyway, in the morning.

Employee: So, for Florence, you can choose the regional train that leaves at 8:43 or 11:43 and takes four hours, or there is the Intercity that leaves at 7:50 and takes three hours. Or there is the high-speed train that leaves at 7, 9, or 11 and takes an hour and a half. The latter, however, is more expensive.

Client: So give me two tickets for the 7:50 intercity. And I'd also like to return tickets for Saturday night.

Employee: There is an intercity on Saturday night at 8 pm. Can it be okay?

Client: Yes, it's fine. How much is it?

Employee: They are 72 euros.

Client: Here you go. Goodbye.

Clerk: Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

52. Viajar, en la taquilla de la estación

Cliente: Buenos días.

Empleado: Buenos días, ¿en qué puedo ayudarlo?

Cliente: Quisiera dos boletos para Florencia.

Empleado: ¿Para cuándo?

Cliente: Para el próximo jueves.

Empleado: ¿A qué hora?

Cliente: No sé, ¿Podría decirme los horarios del tren? De todos en la mañana.

Empleado: Entonces, para Florencia, puede elegir el tren regional que sale a las 8:43 o 11:43 y dura cuatro horas, o el Intercity que sale a las 7:50 y dura tres horas. O está el tren de alta velocidad que sale a las 7, 9 u 11 y dura una hora y media. Este último, sin embargo, es más caro.

Cliente: Entonces dame dos boletos para el 7:50 interurbano. Y también me gustaría boletos de regreso para el sábado por la noche.

Empleado: Hay un interurbano el sábado por la noche a las 8 pm ¿Puede estar bien?

Cliente: Sí, está bien. ¿Cuánto?

Empleado: Son 72 euros.

Cliente: Aquí tienes. Adiós.

Empleado: Adios.

## **Dialogue 53**

### **English**

53. Traveling, book a taxi

Customer: Hello? Do I speak to the taxi company?

Employee: Yes, good morning, lady, tell me.

Client: I need a taxi.

Employee: For when?

Client: At noon, for the airport.

Clerk: Her name?

Client: Sara Rossi

Employee: Well, lady, can you give me your address?

Customer: Of course: I live in Via Dei Gerani 12.

Employee: Then the taxi will be with you at noon.

Customer: Thank you. Goodbye.

-

Customer: Hello, is it a taxi company?

Employee: Yes, ma'am, tell me.

Client: I need a taxi. I'm at the Central Station.

Employee: At the west exit of the station, you will find the taxi rank. I can ask directly there.

Customer: Thanks.

## **Spanish**

53. Viajar, reservar un taxi.

Cliente: Hola, ¿Hablo con la compañía de taxis?

Empleado: Sí, buenos días, señora, dime.

Cliente: Necesito un taxi.

Empleado: ¿Para cuándo?

Cliente: Al mediodía, para el aeropuerto.

Empleado: ¿Su nombre?

Cliente: Sara Rossi

Empleado: Bueno señora, ¿puede darme su dirección?

Cliente: Por supuesto: vivo en Via dei Gerani 12.

Empleado: Entonces el taxi estará con usted al mediodía.

Cliente: Gracias, adiós.

-

Cliente: Hola, ¿es la compañía de taxis?

Empleado: Sí, señora, dígame.

Cliente: Necesito un taxi, estoy en la estación central.

Empleado: en la salida oeste de la estación encontrará la parada de taxis. Puede preguntar directamente allí.

Cliente: gracias.

## **Dialogue 54**



## **English**

54. Traveling, By taxi

Customer: Hi.

Taxi driver: Good morning, where do I take you?

Customer: To the airport, please.

Taxi driver: Okay, lady.

Customer: How long will it take?

Taxi driver: There is some traffic, it will take about thirty minutes.

Customer: Thanks.

Taxi driver: Here we are.

Customer: How much do I owe you?

Taxi driver: It is 36 euros.

Client: Here you go, thank you.

-

Client: Good morning. Please take me to the station.

Taxi driver: Yes, okay.

Client: Can you put some music on?

Taxi driver: Sure ... Here we are. They are 15 euros.

Client: Here you go, thank you.

## **Spanish**

54. Viajar, en taxi

Cliente: Hola

Taxista: Buenos días, ¿A dónde lo llevo?

Cliente: Al aeropuerto, por favor.

Taxista: Ok señora.

Cliente: ¿Cuánto tiempo llevará?

Taxista: Hay algo de tráfico, tardará unos treinta minutos.

Cliente: Gracias.

Taxista: Aquí estamos.

Cliente: ¿Cuánto le debo?

Taxista: son 36 euros.

Cliente: Aquí tienes, gracias.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, llévame a la estación.

Taxista: Sí, está bien.

Cliente: ¿Puedes poner algo de música?

Taxista: Claro... Aquí estamos. Son 15 euros.

Cliente: Aquí tienes, gracias.

## **Dialogue 55**

### **English**

55. Traveling, Hotel check-in / check-out

Receptionist: Good morning. Welcome to the Bellavista hotel.

Client: Hi, we booked a double room.

Receptionist: Yes, what name?

Client: On behalf of Vidoni.

Receptionist: Yes, a double room with sea view. Can you give me your documents for registration?

Client: Here, they are.

Receptionist: Here is the key. The room is number 45, on the third floor. The boy will bring your suitcases.

Customer: Thanks.

Receptionist: The restaurant is located on the ground floor. Breakfast is from seven to ten. Lunch is from eleven-thirty to two, while dinner is from six to nine. There is also the possibility of taking guided tours of the city center; you can ask for information here at the reception.

Customer: Thanks, now let's go to the room to rest, we are a little tired.

Receptionist: Perfect. See you later.

-

Client: Hi, I wanted to check out.

Receptionist: Yes, Mrs. Valli. So, it's 134 euros.

Customer: I pay with the card. Here is the key to the room.

Receptionist: Thanks. Did you feel comfortable here at our hotel?

Customer: Yes, very well, thank you, I will definitely come back.

### **Spanish**

55. Viajar, check-in / check-out del hotel

Recepcionista: Buenos días, bienvenido al hotel Bellavista.

Cliente: Hola, reservamos una habitación doble.

Recepcionista: Sí, ¿qué nombre?

Cliente: En nombre de Vidoni.

Recepcionista: Sí, una habitación doble con vista al mar. ¿Me puede dar sus documentos para el registro?

Cliente: Aquí están.

Recepcionista: Aquí está la clave. La habitación es la número 45, en el tercer piso. El niño traerá tus maletas.

Cliente: gracias.

Recepcionista: El restaurante está ubicado en la planta baja. El desayuno es de siete a diez. El almuerzo es de las once y media a las dos, mientras que la cena es de las seis a las nueve. También existe la posibilidad de realizar visitas guiadas por el centro de la ciudad, puede solicitar información aquí en la recepción.

Cliente: Gracias, ahora vamos a descansar a la habitación, estamos un poco cansados.

Recepcionista: Perfecto, hasta luego.

-

Cliente: Hola, quería verificar.

Recepcionista: Sí, Sra. Valli. Entonces, son 134 euros.

Cliente: Pago con la tarjeta. Aquí está la llave de la habitación.

Recepcionista: Gracias. ¿Te sentiste cómodo aquí en nuestro hotel?

Cliente: Sí, muy bien, gracias, definitivamente regresaré.

## **Dialogue 56**

### **English**

56. Traveling, check-in at the airport

Hostess: Hi, ticket and passport, please.

Traveler: Here.

Hostess: So, let me check the data ... so ... you have a flight to Beijing with a stopover in Dubai ...

Traveler: Right.

Hostess: Put your baggage on the roller ... it's 22 kg.

Traveler: I can collect the baggage directly in Beijing, can't I?

Hostess: Yes. Do you have preferences for the place?

Traveler: I'd like to be near the window.

Hostess: I'm sorry, the seats near the window have run out.

Traveler: Then please near the corridor.

Hostess: Yes, it's fine. Her place is number 46 F. Wait a moment for me to print out your ticket. Can you also show me your visa?

Traveler: Here it is.

Hostess: Thank you, here are your tickets. Have a good trip.

-

Hostess: Attention! Business travelers can sit here.

Traveler: Here I am!

Hostess: Boarding pass and document, please.

Traveler: Here they are.

Hostess: Thanks and good trip.

## **Spanish**

56. Viajar, registrarse en el aeropuerto

Anfitriona: Hola, boleto y pasaporte por favor.

Viajero: Aquí.

Anfitriona: Entonces, déjame verificar los datos... entonces... tienes un vuelo a Beijing con una escala en Dubai...

Viajero: Correcto.

Anfitriona: pon tu equipaje en el rodillo... son 22 kg.

Viajero: Puedo recoger el equipaje directamente en Beijing, ¿no?

Anfitriona: Sí. ¿Tiene preferencias por el lugar?

Viajero: Me gustaría estar cerca de la ventana.

Anfitriona: Lo siento, los asientos cerca de la ventana se han agotado.

Viajero: Entonces por favor cerca del corredor.

Anfitriona: Sí, está bien. Su lugar es el número 46 F. Espera un momento para que imprima tu boleto. ¿Me puede mostrar también su visa?

Viajero: Aquí está.

Anfitriona: Gracias, aquí están tus boletos. Que tengas un buen viaje.

-

Anfitriona: ¡Atención! Los viajeros de negocios pueden sentarse aquí.

Viajero: ¡Aquí estoy!

Anfitriona: Tarjeta de embarque y documento por favor.

Viajero: Aquí están.

Anfitriona: Gracias y buen viaje.

## **Dialogue 57**

### **English**

57. Traveling, renting a room or apartment

Employee: Welcome to our agency, tell me.

Client: Hi, next month I will leave for Paris for a month, and I need a nice but cheap accommodation.

Employee: What kind of accommodation were you looking for? How about a hotel stay?

Customer: No, I have to stay for a month. The hotel would be too expensive. I was thinking of a room or an apartment.

Employee: A studio apartment for a month costs about seven hundred euros, could you go?

Customer: Oh, no! It is very expensive; I thought it cost less!

Employee: So we have to look for a room in a shared apartment ... There is one in Montmartre, in the center, at 450 euros and a little further away from the center at 350 euros.

Client: How far is the second from the center?

Employee: About seven subway stops from Notre Dame Cathedral.

Client: And the house is far from the subway stop?

Employee: It is a ten-minute walk.

Customer: Is it possible to see photos?

Employee: Yes, these are the photos of the room.

Client: It seems to me that it will be fine ... I take it for the whole month of August! Do you need a down payment?

Employee: Yes, you can pay it by credit card or bank transfer and the rest to our colleague in Paris when he gives you the keys to the apartment. Fill in this written question, and we're good to go.

Client: That's it!

Employee: Well, the booking is confirmed. This is the sheet with all the data you will have to give to our colleague in Paris. There is also the home address and instructions on how to get there.

Customer: Thank you. Goodbye.

## **Spanish**

57. Viajar, alquilar una habitación o apartamento.

Empleado: Bienvenido a nuestra agencia, dígame.

Cliente: Hola, el mes que viene me iré a París por un mes y necesito un alojamiento agradable pero barato.

Empleado: ¿Qué tipo de alojamiento estaba buscando? ¿Qué tal una estadía en un hotel?

Cliente: No, tengo que quedarme un mes, el hotel sería demasiado caro. Estaba pensando en una habitación o un departamento.

Empleado: Un estudio por un mes cuesta unos setecientos euros, ¿podrías ir?

Cliente: ¡Oh no! Es muy caro, ¡pensé que costaría menos!

Empleado: Entonces tenemos que buscar una habitación en un apartamento compartido... Hay una en Montmartre, en el centro, a 450 euros y otra un poco más alejada del centro a 350 euros.

Cliente: ¿A qué distancia está el segundo del centro?

Empleado: Cerca de siete paradas de metro de la catedral de Notre Dame.

Cliente: ¿Y la casa está lejos de la parada del metro?

Empleado: es una caminata de diez minutos.

Cliente: ¿Es posible ver fotos?

Empleado: Sí, estas son las fotos de la sala.

Cliente: Me parece que estará bien... ¡Lo tomo durante todo el mes de agosto!  
¿Necesita un anticipo?

Empleado: Sí, puede pagarlo con tarjeta de crédito o transferencia bancaria y el resto a nuestro colega en París cuando le entregue las llaves del apartamento. Complete esta pregunta escrita y estamos listos para comenzar.

Cliente: Eso es.

Empleado: Bueno, la reserva está confirmada. Esta es la hoja con todos los datos que tendrá que dar a nuestro colega en París. También está la dirección de su casa e instrucciones sobre cómo llegar allí.

Cliente: Gracias, adiós.

## **Dialogue 58**

English

58. Traveling, Tourist information office

Tourist: Hi, is this the information office?

Employee: Yes, go ahead.

Tourist: I would like to know which museums are open this Sunday.

Employee: On Sunday, all the museums in Rome are open, and only this Sunday, the Capitoline Museums are free.

Tourist: And where are they located?

Employee: They are on the Capitol, do you know where it is?

Tourist: No, I'm sorry.

Employee: Don't worry. Getting it is very easy. You can get there by metro B getting off at the Colosseum stop and walking on Via Dei Fori Imperiali, or by Metro A, getting off at Flaminio and walking on Via del Corso. If you want, there are also buses that can take you directly there.

Tourist: No, I think I will take metro A and walk along Via del Corso. I want

to do some shopping. How can I reach the Capitol from Via del Corso?

Employee: So, take this map of the center. I'll show you the right way. When it reaches the end of Via del Corso, cross Piazza Venezia. Be very careful with traffic. The Capitol is behind the large monumental white marble building, the Vittoriano.

Tourist: Thank you.

Employee: Imagine, take this subway map too.

Tourist: Thanks again.

Employee: There is no goodbye.

## **Spanish**

58. Viajes, oficina de información turística

Turista: Hola, ¿es esta la oficina de información?

Empleado: Sí, Adelante.

Turista: Me gustaría saber qué museos están abiertos este domingo.

Empleado: El domingo todos los museos en Roma están abiertos, y solo este domingo los Museos Capitolinos son gratuitos.

Turista: ¿Y dónde están ubicados?

Empleado: Están en el Capitolio, ¿sabes dónde está?

Turista: No, lo siento.

Empleado: no te preocupes. Llegar allí es muy fácil. Puede llegar en metro B, bajarse en la parada del Coliseo y caminar en Via dei Fori Imperiali, o en Metro A, bajar en Flaminio y caminar en Via del Corso. Si lo desea, también hay autobuses que pueden llevarlo directamente allí.

Turista: No, creo que tomaré el metro A y caminaré por Via del Corso, quiero ir de compras. ¿Cómo puedo llegar al Capitolio desde Via del Corso?

Empleado: Entonces, toma este mapa del centro, te mostraré el camino correcto. Cuando llegue al final de Via del Corso, cruce la Piazza Venezia. Ten mucho cuidado con el tráfico. El Capitolio está detrás del gran edificio monumental de mármol blanco, el Vittoriano.

Turista: gracias.

Empleado: Imagina, toma este mapa del metro también.

Turista: Gracias de nuevo.

Empleado: No hay adiós.

## **Dialogue 59**

### **English**

## 59. Traveling, A tour of the city

Guide: Hi! Today we will take a tour of the historic center of Florence by bus. My name is Silvia, and I will be your guide. Let's start immediately from the building behind us. This is the Basilica of Santa Maria Novella, famous for its colored marbles. Now we are moving towards the Accademia Galleries. It is one of the most important museums in the world.

Tourist: What's in this museum?

Guide: This museum is full of statues and paintings, but the most famous work is Michelangelo's David. Continuing our tour, we arrived at the Uffizi Gallery ...

Tourist: Is it the museum with Botticelli's works?

Guide: It is exactly that. Inside there are famous works by Botticelli, such as The Birth of Venus and La Primavera.

Tourist: Can you visit the museum in the afternoon?

Guide: It will be possible to visit the museum tomorrow, today it is closed for weekly rest.

Now let's continue our journey on foot. We have arrived at Ponte Vecchio, the most famous bridge in Florence.

Tourist: What is the name of the river?

Guide: The river of Florence is called Arno. It is one of the most important rivers in SPAIN. Now let's get back on the bus and go to see the Baptistery ...

## **Spanish**

## 59. Viajar, un recorrido por la ciudad

Guía: Hola! Hoy haremos un recorrido por el centro histórico de Florencia en autobús. Mi nombre es Silvia y seré tu guía. Comencemos inmediatamente desde el edificio detrás de nosotros. Esta es la Basílica de Santa Maria Novella, famosa por sus mármoles de colores. Ahora nos estamos moviendo hacia las Galerías de la Academia. Es uno de los museos más importantes del mundo.

Turista: ¿Qué hay en este museo?

Guía: este museo está lleno de estatuas y pinturas, pero la obra más famosa es el David de Miguel Ángel. Continuando nuestro recorrido llegamos a la Galería de los Uffizi...

Turista: ¿Es el museo con las obras de Botticelli?

Guía: es exactamente eso. En el interior hay obras famosas de Botticelli como El nacimiento de Venus y La Primavera.



Turista: ¿Puedes visitar el museo por la tarde?

Guía: mañana será posible visitar el museo, hoy está cerrado por descanso semanal.

Ahora continuemos nuestro viaje a pie. Hemos llegado al Ponte Vecchio, el puente más famoso de Florencia.

Turista: ¿Cómo se llama el río?

Guía: El río de Florencia se llama Arno. Es uno de los ríos más importantes de Italia. Ahora volvamos al autobús y veamos el Baptisterio ...

## **Dialogue 60**

### **English**

60. Traveling, Moving home

Customer: Hello, am I talking to the real estate agency?

Employee: Yes, tell me.

Client: Hi, my name is Carla Giudice. I had rented a room in Milan for the month of August. I just got the key from a colleague and entered. I don't like the house.

Employee: What's wrong with the house?

Customer: It is too different from the photos I had seen, and then it is very dirty and messy.

Employee: I understand. Then we can change apartments. Go to the agency.

Customer: Okay, thanks.

-

Client: Good morning. I called a little while ago. I am the girl who wants to change rooms.

Employee: Yes, hi, I apologize for what happened. I show her other houses, so she can choose her new accommodation. What about this? It is a room in a new apartment in a building with an elevator. The house is near the metro station.

Customer: And the cost?

Employee: The cost is the same as the other apartment.

Client: It may be fine.

Employee: Then return the keys to the old apartment and take these.

Customer: Thank you.

### **Spanish**

60. Viajar, mudarse a casa

Cliente: Hola, ¿estoy hablando con la agencia de bienes raíces?

Empleado: Sí, dime.

Cliente: Hola, mi nombre es Carla Giudice, había alquilado una habitación en Milán para el mes de agosto. Acabo de recibir la llave de un colega y entré.

No me gusta la casa

Empleado: ¿Qué le pasa a la casa?

Cliente: Es muy diferente de las fotos que había visto y luego está muy sucio y desordenado.

Empleado: lo entiendo. Entonces podemos cambiar de apartamento. Ve a la agencia.

Cliente: Bien, gracias.

-

Cliente: Buenos días, llamé hace un rato. Soy la chica que quiere cambiar de habitación.

Empleado: Sí, hola, me disculpo por lo que pasó. Le muestro otras casas para que pueda elegir su nuevo alojamiento. ¿Qué hay de esto? Es una habitación en un apartamento nuevo en un edificio con ascensor. La casa está cerca de la estación de metro.

Cliente: ¿Y el costo?

Empleado: El costo es el mismo que el otro departamento.

Cliente: Puede estar bien.

Empleado: Luego devuelva las llaves del departamento antiguo y llévelas.

Cliente: gracias

## CHAPTER#10: CONVERSATION BETWEEN FOREIGNERS

---

### Dialogue 61

#### English

Gianni: "Hi, we met in economics class ... What's your name?" (What's your name?)

Marco: "Yes, I remember you were in front of me ... my name is Marco" (my name is Marco).

Gianni: "I'm Gianni."

Marco: "And where are you from?"

Gianni: "I am from Milan" (I live in Milan), where do you live?

Marco: "I live in Verona."

Gianni: "Why did you come to Milan?"

Marco: "I'm in Milan to study here at Cattolica; they say it's the best."

#### Spanish

Gianni: "Hola, nos conocimos en la clase de economía ... ¿Cómo te llamas?"

Marco: "Sí, recuerdo que estabas frente a mí ... mi nombre es Marco".

Gianni: "Soy Gianni."

Marco: "¿Y de dónde eres?"

Gianni: "Soy de Milán" (vivo en Milán), ¿Dónde vives?

Marco: "Vivo en Verona."

Gianni: "¿Por qué viniste a Milán?"

Marco: "Estoy en Milán para estudiar aquí en Cattolica, dicen que es l mejor".

### Dialogue 62

#### English

Gianni: "He is a friend of mine; his name is Andrea."

Marco: "Hi Andrea, I'm Marco"

Andrea: "Hi, Marco!"

Marco: "Where are you from Andrea? Where do you live?"

Andrea: "I'm from Brescia, but I live in Milan now."

Gianni: "Andrea is also studying at Cattolica"

Marco: "What faculty do you attend?"

Andrea: "I'm studying economics; I'm in my first year."

Marco: "Well, then we are all at the same faculty."

Gianni: "Guys, are we going to have a coffee?"

Marco: "Okay fine, let's go to the bar; it's near here."

Andrea: "I'll have a coffee; let's go."

### **Spanish**

Gianni: "Es amigo mío, se llama Andrea".

Marco: "Hola Andrea, soy Marco"

Andrea: "Hola Marco"

Marco: "¿De dónde eres Andrea? ¿Dónde vives?"

Andrea: "Soy de Brescia pero ahora vivo en Milán".

Gianni: "Andrea también estudia en Cattolica"

Marco: "¿A qué facultad asistes?"

Andrea: "Estoy estudiando economía, estoy en mi primer año"

Marco: "Bueno, entonces todos estamos en la misma facultad"

Gianni: "Chicos, ¿Vamos a tomar un café?"

Marco: "Está bien, vamos al bar, está cerca de aquí".

Andrea: "También tomaré un café, vámonos".

### **Dialogue 63**

#### **English**

Gianni: "Good morning, will you make us three coffees?"

Barman: "Now, how do you want them?"

Marco: "For me a little longer, thank you."

Gianni: "It is normal for me."

Andrea: "I prefer a cappuccino; thank you."

Gianni: "You want some croissants; I'll take one."

Marco: "Yes, I will have one, thanks."

Andrea: "Yes, me too; here they are usually good."

Gianni: "How do you come to Milan by train?"

Marco: "No, I have a car where I live. I have a garage."

Andrea: "I don't have a car in Milan. I always use the train; it's comfortable,

where do you live in Milan?"

Gianni: "I live near the central station. I live with my parents."

Marco: "Well, then you're close to the university!"

Gianni: "Yes, on the subway, it takes a quarter of an hour, where do you live in Milan?"

Marco: "I live in an apartment in Piazzale Lodi, but it is close to the metro station, it is convenient. It is two rooms, but it is large."

Marco: "Where do you live here in Milan?"

Andrea: "I am in Piazzale Cordusio, nearby, I live with two other students, an American and a boy from Sondrio. We have a fairly large three-bedroom apartment in an old but beautiful building. "

Marco: "An American, where is he from?"

Andrea: "He is from Boston, he is here in Milan for a one-year internship, and he works on the stock exchange."

Gianni: "Interesting, does he speak Italian?"

Andrea: "No, he does not speak Italian well; he is learning, attending a course here, and studying alone. I teach him occasionally and try to make him speak. I speak a little English. "

Gianni: "Well, we can go with him to have a beer sometimes, so we can practice English, what do you say?"

Andrea: "Yes, ok, I think it's okay; one evening, I'll talk to him."

Marco: "Guys, I'll go in half an hour. I have a math lesson. I think you too. "

Gianni: "Ok, let's go. I pay ... how much is it?" (Addressed to the cashier)

Cashier: "It is ten Euros, please."

Gianni: "Here you go, thank you. Goodbye"

Marco: "Ok, thanks then."

Andrea: "Thanks, next time I'll pay, though."

## **Spanish**

Gianni: "Buenos días, tres cafés por favor.

Barman: "Ahora, ¿cómo los quieres?"

Marco: "Para mí un poco largo, gracias"

Gianni: "Es normal para mí"

Andrea: "Prefiero un capuchino, gracias"

Gianni: "Si quieres unos cruasanes, me quedo con uno"

Marco: "Sí, lo tomaré gracias"

Andrea: "Sí, yo también, aquí suelen ser buenos".

Gianni: "¿Cómo vienes a Milán en tren?"

Marco: "No, tengo un auto, donde vivo tengo un garaje"

Andrea: "No tengo un auto en Milán, siempre uso el tren, es cómodo, ¿dónde vives en Milán?"

Gianni: "Vivo cerca de la estación central, vivo con mis padres. "

Marco: "Bueno, entonces estás cerca de la universidad!"

Gianni: "Sí, en el metro tarda un cuarto de hora, ¿Dónde vives en Milán?"

Marco: "Vivo en un departamento en Piazzale Lodi pero está cerca de la estación de metro, es conveniente. Es dos habitaciones pero es grande "

Marco: "¿Dónde vives aquí en Milán?"

Andrea: "Estoy en Piazzale Cordusio, cerca, vivo con otros dos estudiantes, un estadounidense y un niño de Sondrio. Tenemos un apartamento bastante grande de tres habitaciones en un edificio antiguo pero hermoso "

Marco: "Un estadounidense, ¿de dónde es?"

Andrea: "Él es de Boston, está aquí en Milán para una pasantía de un año, trabaja en la bolsa de valores".

Gianni: "¿Interesante habla italiano?"

Andrea: "No, no habla bien italiano, está aprendiendo, asistiendo a un curso aquí y estudiando solo. Le enseño ocasionalmente y trato de hacerlo hablar. Hablo un poco de inglés "

Gianni: "Bueno, podemos ir con él a tomar una cerveza unas noches, así que hablamos un poco en inglés, ¿qué dices?"

Andrea: "si bien, creo que está bien, una noche hablaré con él"

Marco: "Chicos, iré en media hora. Tengo una clase de matemáticas, creo que ustedes también. "

Gianni: "Ok, vamos, yo pago... ¿cuánto cuesta todo?" (dirigido al cajero)

Cajero: " Diez euros, gracias"

Gianni: "Aquí tienes, adiós"

Marco: "Ok, gracias"

Andrea: "Gracias la próxima vez pagaré yo".

## **Dialogue 64**

### **English**

Gianni, Marco, and Andrea in Milan, at the restaurant.

(They are sitting at a table in a place frequented by students).

Gianni: "I like this restaurant. You don't spend much and eat well".

Andrea: "I've never been there, but it seems nice to me."

Marco: "I also never went. I usually go to a pizzeria".

Gianni: "If you want, they also make pizza here, but it's not their specialty."

Marco: "No, I prefer to try something new; let's see the menu."

Andrea: "I only eat meat." "

Gianni: "If you want, here they make an excellent grilled steak, almost a Florentine steak, very good. Usually, I take it with baked or fried potatoes".

Each of the kids looks at the menu by reading the various dishes.

The waiter arrives.

Waiter: "Good morning, do you want to order?"

Gianni. "For me, the grilled steak and the potatoes, baked."

Andrea: "I join, same thing."

Marco: "I haven't decided yet. I wanted to ask what the baked chicken is like?"

Waiter: "It is excellent; they are local chickens cooked with spices and very tasty."

Marco: "Mmm, ok, then I'll take that."

Waiter: "What side dish do you want? Salad or potatoes? "

Marco: "Is it possible to have some salad and tomatoes?"

Camera: "Yes, of course."

Marco: "Ok, thanks."

Waiter: "What shall I bring you a drink?"

Gianni (to friends): "I would say a quarter of red wine for everyone if it suits you."

Marco: "Okay, that's fine with me."

Andrea: "No, no wine for me, bring me a medium, light beer."

Waiter: "Okay, so then, two chickens with potatoes, a steak with a mixed salad, two wines, and a beer."

After a quarter of an hour, the waiter returns with the dishes. The three boys start eating and discussing lessons.

Gianni: "So what about the professor of statistics? I don't understand anything! Today I tried to take notes, but I was not able, at a certain point I started not to follow the lesson anymore, it was useless, I read a little email on a cell phone. "

Marco: "In my opinion, it is useless to follow his lessons, he explains badly and goes too quickly, I think I will study alone on the book, you can also take the exam like this."

Andrea: "I don't know, I wrote something, then I will reread ... in fact may be, afterward, we look at the notes together, in three we will understand something!"

Marco: "I wouldn't swear to it! It is truly a statistical mess; in my opinion, it is the most difficult subject of the whole course! It's more difficult than math."

Gianni: "In my opinion, it is better to study only on books; you can also learn on your own."

Marco: "I agree with you; I will also try to do so."

Gianni: "Guys, I'm tired of exams and school, Andrea, your American friend, when do you let us know him? I'd like to speak with him, to try my English a little! "

Marco: "Ah, I didn't know you spoke English!"

Andrea: "If you want, I'll call him now, he told me he was here in the area today."

Marco: "Call him; tell him if he comes here to have a coffee."

Andrea: "Ok, I'll try if it's near ... maybe it's coming".

## **Spanish**

Gianni, Marco y Andrea en Milán, en el restaurante.

(Están sentados en una mesa en un lugar frecuentado por estudiantes).

Gianni: "Me gusta este restaurante, no gastas mucho y comes bien".

Andrea: "Nunca he estado allí, pero me parece agradable".

Marco: "Yo nunca fui, generalmente voy a una pizzería".

Gianni: "Si quieres, también hacen pizza aquí, pero no es su especialidad".

Marco: "No, prefiero probar algo, veamos el menú".

Andrea: "Solo como un segundo, algo de carne".

Gianni: "Si quieres, aquí hacen un excelente filete a la parrilla, casi un filete florentino, muy bueno, generalmente lo tomo con papas al horno o fritas".

Cada uno de los niños mira el menú leyendo los diferentes platos.

Llega el camarero.

Camarero: "Buenos días, ¿Quieres pedir?"

Gianni. "Para mí el bistec a la parrilla y las papas al horno"

Andrea: "Me uno, lo mismo"



Marco: "Todavía no lo he decidido, quería preguntar cómo es el pollo al horno".

Camarero: "Es excelente, son pollos locales cocinados con especias y muy sabrosos"

Marco: "Mmm, está bien, entonces lo tomaré".

Camarero: "¿Qué guarnición quieres? ¿Ensalada o papas?"

Marco: "¿Es posible comer ensalada y tomates?"

Camarero: "Sí, por supuesto".

Marco: "Ok, gracias."

Camarero: "¿Qué te traigo una bebida?"

Gianni (a sus amigos): "Diría una cuarta parte de vino tinto para todos, si les conviene".

Marco: "Está bien, eso está bien para mí".

Andrea: "No, no hay vino para mí, tráeme una cerveza mediana y ligera".

Camarero: "Está bien, entonces, dos pollos con papas, un bistec con una ensalada mixta, dos vinos y una cerveza".

Después de un cuarto de hora, el camarero regresa con los platos. Los tres muchachos comienzan a comer y a discutir lecciones.

Gianni: "¿Y qué hay del profesor de estadística? No entiendo nada! Hoy traté de tomar notas pero no pude, en cierto momento comencé a no seguir más la lección, fue inútil, leí un pequeño correo electrónico en un teléfono celular".

Marco: "En mi opinión, es inútil seguir sus lecciones, explica mal y va demasiado rápido, creo que estudiaré solo en el libro, también puedes tomar el examen así".

Andrea: "No sé, escribí algo, luego volveré a leer ... de hecho, tal vez, luego, veamos las notas juntas, ¡en tres entenderemos algo!"

Marco: "¡No lo juraría! Es realmente un desastre estadístico, en mi opinión, ¡es el tema más difícil de todo el curso! Es más difícil que las matemáticas".

Gianni: "En mi opinión, es mejor estudiar solo en libros, también puedes aprender por tu cuenta".

Marco: "estoy de acuerdo contigo, también intentaré hacerlo"

Gianni: "Chicos, estoy cansado de los exámenes y la escuela, Andrea, su amiga estadounidense, ¿cuándo nos lo hacen saber? ¡Me gustaría hablar con él para probar mi inglés un poco! "

Marco: "¡Ah, no sabía que hablabas inglés!"

Andrea: "Si quieres, lo llamaré ahora, me dijo que estaba aquí en el área hoy".

Marco: "Llámalo, dile si viene a tomar un café".

Andrea: "Ok, lo intentaré si está cerca ... tal vez se acerca".

## Dialogue 65

### English

Rob arrives at the three boys' table.

Andrea: "Hi, Rob, sit down with us."

Marco: "Hi, I'm Marco."

Gianni: "Hi, and I'm Gianni"

Rob: "Hi ... hi Gianni, hi Marco" (Rob sits down)

Andrea: "So how's it going? They are my university friends and are curious to meet an American "

Rob: "Well, I don't speak Italian well .."

Marco: "Well, we don't speak English well ... so."

Gianni: "I can speak English, but I prefer to speak Italian, is it ok for you?"

Rob: "Yeah, thank you, no problem, Italian. I want to improve my Italian!"

Gianni: "Well, then how are you in Italy. How are you here?"

Rob: "I don't understand ... are you?"

Gianni: "How are you ... do you like it, are you happy to be here?"

Rob: "Ah, ok ... you are. Yes, I like Italy, it's all very beautiful, Milan is beautiful, and I like being here. "

Marco: "How is the food? Do you like Italian food?"

Rob: "Food? I don't know food."

Marco: "Yes, the food, what you eat, the pasta, the pizza, the restaurants."

Rob: "Ah, ok..I like Italian food, I go to restaurants, and I eat many Italian things. Here in Italy, we eat very well, in America not. In America, you don't eat like in Italy. Here is better."

Gianni: "But in America, there are Italian restaurants ... aren't there?"

Rob: "Yes, but they are not like those in Milan. In Boston, Italian restaurants are sometimes not truly Italian. They are Chinese or others, and the food is not good. Sometimes pizza ... sucks, it's good here."

Marco: "And tell me how well you feel with the Italians?"

Rob: "Yes, very well, I was lucky to find Andrea, and I am comfortable with all the Italians, they are nice, and I try to talk a lot."

Gianni: "Do you know Milan a little?"

Rob: "Yes, yes, Andrea made me visit many things. We went to see Leonardo's Last Supper and the Duomo and then other beautiful things."

Gianni: "Well, here in Milan, there are a lot of things to do. In the evening there are a lot of shows you shot a little in the evening? "

Rob: "Yes, even in the evening, we went to listen to music."

Andrea: "Yes, I took him a few times on the Navigli to listen to Jazz, in the typical little restaurants of the Navigli."

Marco: "Andrea told me that you work on the stock exchange here in Milan. How are you?"

Rob: "Well, I'm fine, I like it, and I'm learning, and I speak with many Italians, even though many want to speak English with me. I try to speak only Italian. "

## **Spanish**

Rob llega a la mesa de los tres muchachos.

Andrea: "Hola Rob, siéntate con nosotros"

Marco: "Hola, soy Marco".

Gianni: "Hola, y yo soy Gianni"

Rob: "Hola ... hola Gianni, hola Marco" (Rob se sienta)

Andrea: "¿Cómo te va? Son mis amigos de la universidad y tienen curiosidad por conocer a un estadounidense "

Rob: "Bueno, no hablo italiano bien .."

Marco: "Bueno, no hablamos bien inglés ... entonces"

Gianni: "Puedo hablar inglés pero prefiero hablar italiano, ¿está bien para ti?"

Rob: "Sí, gracias, no hay problema italiano, ¡quiero mejorar mi italiano!"

Gianni: "Bueno, entonces, ¿cómo estás en Italia, cómo estás aquí?"

Rob: "No, entiendo ... ¿y tú?"

Gianni: "¿Cómo estás ... te gusta, estás feliz de estar aquí?"

Rob: "Ah ok ... lo eres. Sí, me gusta Italia, todo es muy hermoso, Milán es hermoso y me gusta estar aquí "

Marco: "¿Cómo está la comida? ¿Te gusta la comida italiana?"

Rob: "¿Comida? No se la comida "

Marco: "Sí, la comida, lo que comes, la pasta, la pizza, los restaurantes".

Rob: "Ah, ok ... me gusta la comida italiana, voy a restaurantes y como muchas cosas italianas. Aquí en Italia comemos muy bien, en América no. En Estados Unidos no comes como en Italia. Aquí está mejor "

Gianni: "Pero en Estados Unidos hay restaurantes italianos ... ¿no?"

Rob: "Sí, pero no son como los de Milán. En Boston, los restaurantes italianos a veces no son realmente italianos. Son chinos u otros y la comida

no es buena. A veces la pizza ... apesta, es bueno aquí "

Marco: "¿Y dime qué tan bien te sientes con los italianos?"

Rob: "Sí, muy bien, tuve la suerte de encontrar a Andrea y me siento cómodo con todos los italianos, son amables y trato de hablar mucho"

Gianni: "¿Conoces un poco a Milán?"

Rob: "Sí, sí, Andrea me hizo visitar muchas cosas, fuimos a ver la Última Cena de Leonardo y el Duomo y luego otras cosas hermosas".

Gianni: "Bueno, aquí en Milán hay muchas cosas que hacer. ¿Por la noche hay muchos espectáculos que grabaste un poco por la noche? "

Rob: "Sí, incluso en la noche fuimos a escuchar música"

Andrea: "Sí, lo llevé varias veces al Navigli para escuchar Jazz, en los restaurantes típicos del Navigli".

Marco: "Andrea me dijo que trabajas en la bolsa de valores aquí en Milán, ¿cómo estás?"

Rob: "Bueno, estoy bien, me gusta y estoy aprendiendo y hablo con muchos italianos, aunque muchos quieren hablar inglés conmigo. Trato de hablar solo italiano "

## **Dialogue 66**

### **English**

Faculty: course of study at the University (economics, mathematics, law ...)

I live with my parents.

It takes a quarter of an hour:

It is two rooms: it is an apartment with two rooms (living room + a bedroom in addition to the kitchen and bathroom).

Take notes: write notes useful for understanding and remembering the lesson.

It's really a mess: it's a difficult, complicated thing.

I agree with you: I think the same thing, I think what you think about this topic.

How do you find yourself: (how to say) being, how you are in a place/situation.

Pizza sucks: (so to speak) pizza is not good.

A lot of things: (way of saying) many things, many things.

You shot a little in the evening: (way of saying). Tour a city, visit it, see interesting things.

Hear the music: listen to musicians playing on the premises.

Typical places: small places where you can eat and listen to music.

Navigli: (Naviglio) canal that crosses the city of Milan.

## **Spanish**

Facultad: curso de estudio en la Universidad (economía, matemáticas, derecho ...)

Vivo con mis padres: vivo con mis padres.

Se tarda un cuarto de hora: se tarda un cuarto de hora, se tarda un cuarto de hora.

Es de dos habitaciones: es un apartamento con dos habitaciones (sala de estar + un dormitorio además de la cocina y el baño).

Tome notas: escriba notas útiles para comprender y recordar la lección.

Es realmente un desastre: es algo difícil y complicado.

Estoy de acuerdo contigo: creo lo mismo, creo lo que piensas sobre este tema.

¿Cómo te encuentras?: (es cómo decir) ser, cómo estás en un lugar / situación.

La pizza apesta: (por así decirlo) la pizza no es buena.

Muchas cosas: (forma de decir) muchas cosas, muchas cosas.

Disparaste un poco por la noche: (forma de decirlo). recorrer una ciudad, visitarla, ver cosas interesantes.

Escucha música: escucha a músicos tocando en el local.

Lugares típicos: pequeños lugares donde puedes comer y escuchar música.

Navigli: (Naviglio) canal que cruza la ciudad de Milán.

## **Dialogue 67**

### **English**

#### **- Conversation at the bar 1**

Sofia, can I offer you something to drink?

Yes, thanks. I take a Coca Cola.

What do you drink?

I will have a beer. I'm calling the waiter to order.

#### **- Conversation at the bar 2**

Hi Sofia, how are you?

Fine thanks.

Let's drink something?

Yes, I would like red wine.

Okay, I also drink a glass of wine, but I prefer White.

Let's go over to the bar to order the bartender.

### **-Conversation at the bar 3**

Can I offer you something to drink?

Yes, thanks. I drink coffee with a sachet of sugar.

Well, I'll take it too. Do you also want water?

Yes, sparkling, thanks.

I prefer it natural.

### **- Conversation at the bar 4**

Good evening, gentlemen, do you have a drink?

Good evening, I would like orange juice.

Do you also have something to eat?

Yes, we have sandwiches, sandwiches, and toast.

I take a sandwich with tomato and mozzarella.

## **Spanish**

### **- Conversación en el bar 1**

Sofia, ¿Puedo ofrecerte algo de beber?

Si gracias. Tomo una Coca Cola.

Que bebes

Tengo una cerveza Estoy llamando al camarero para pedir.

### **- Conversación en el bar 2**

Hola Sofia como estas

Pues gracias.

Tomar una copa.

Sí, me gustaría un vino tinto.

De acuerdo, también tomo una copa de vino pero

Yo prefiero

El blanco

Vamos al bar para pedirle al cantinero.

### **-Conversación en el bar 3**

¿Puedo ofrecerte algo de beber?

Si gracias. Tomo café con una bolsita de azúcar.

Bueno, yo también lo tomaré. ¿También quieres agua?

Sí, chispeante gracias.

Lo prefiero natural.

**- Conversación en el bar 4**

Buenas noches, caballeros, ¿toman algo?

Buenas tardes, me gustaría un zumo de naranja.

¿También tienes algo de comer?

Sí, tenemos sandwiches, sandwiches y tostadas.

Tomo un sándwich con tomate y mozzarella.

## CHAPTER#11: GREETINGS BASED CONVERSATIONS

---

### Dialogue 68

#### English

##### *Informal dialogue*

A: Hi, Anna!

B: Hi, Francesca, how are you?

A: Very well, thank you, and you?

B: It's not bad, thank you.

##### **Formal dialogue**

A: Good morning, Mrs. Rossi!

B: Good morning, how are you?

A: Pretty well, thank you. And she?

B: So-so.

#### Spanish

##### *Diálogo informal*

A: Hola Anna!

B: Hola Francesca, ¿cómo estás?

A: Muy bien, gracias, ¿y tú?

B: No está mal, gracias.

##### **Diálogo formal**

A: Buenos días Sra. Rossi!

B: Buenos días, ¿cómo estás?

A: Bastante bien, gracias. Que hay de ti

B: más o menos.

### Dialogue 69



## **English**

### ***Informal***

A: Giulia, I introduce you to my friend David.

B: Nice to meet you!

C: My pleasure!

A: Maria, here is my new neighbor.

B: Nice to meet you. I'm Maria. What's your name?

C: My name is David, a pleasure!

### **Formal**

A: Good evening, Mrs. Riva. I introduce you to my friend.

B: I'm Giovanna, very happy!

C: Nice to meet you, David.

A: Excuse me, are you, Dr. Rossi?

B: Yes, it's me, and what's your name?

A: I'm Maria Ricci, pleasure.

## **Spanish**

### ***Informal***

A: Giulia, te presento a mi amigo David.

B: ¡Mucho gusto!

C: ¡Un placer!

A: María, aquí está mi nueva vecina.

B: Mucho gusto, soy María. Como te llamas

C: ¡Mi nombre es David, placer!

### **Formal**

R: Buenas tardes, Sra. Riva, le presento a mi amiga.

B: Soy Giovanna, ¡muy feliz!

C: Mucho gusto, David.

A: Disculpe, ¿es usted el Dr. Rossi?

B: Sí, soy yo, y ¿cómo te llamas?

A: Soy Maria Ricci, placer.

## **Dialogue 70**

## **English**

### ***Informal***

A: Hi Monica, see you later!  
B: Hi, Tania, see you later!  
A: Goodnight, Valentina, next time!  
B: Hi, see you soon!

### **Formal**

A: The Professor will arrive!  
B: Goodbye. Guys! See you tomorrow!

### **Spanish**

#### ***Informal***

A: Hola Mónica, ¡hasta luego!  
B: Hola Tania, ¡hasta luego!  
A: Buenas noches Valentina, la próxima vez!  
B: Hola, hasta pronto!

#### **Formal**

A: ¡El profesor llegará!  
B: Adios chicos! ¡Nos vemos mañana!

### **Dialogue 71**

#### **English**

Hi Mariana, how are you?  
Well, but I don't have much time to talk ...  
Are you in a hurry?  
Yes, I work very early now ...  
Ah, alright! Then see you next time!  
See you, Luca!  
Hey Francesco, how's it going?  
Not so good ...  
What's going on?  
I'm tired, and then I'm hungry, I'm thirsty ...  
Aren't you sleeping well?  
Eh no ... I'm also sleepy.  
Oh, I'm sorry!

Me too!  
Marina! How nice that you are here!  
Hey Franca! How are you?  
Very well! I am happy; today, I eat with Marco!  
Who is Marco?  
Marco is my boyfriend!  
Wow! Congratulations!  
Thanks!  
Hey Sergio, do you have an exam today?  
Yes! And I'm afraid!  
Good luck then!  
Crack the wolf!

### **Spanish**

Hola mariana como estas  
Bueno, pero no tengo mucho tiempo para hablar ...  
¿Tienes prisa?  
Sí, trabajo muy temprano ahora ...  
¡Ah bien! Entonces nos vemos la próxima vez!  
¡Nos vemos, Luca!  
Hola Francesco, ¿cómo te va?  
No tan bien ...  
¿Que esta pasando?  
Estoy cansado y luego tengo hambre, tengo sed ...  
¿No estás durmiendo bien?  
Eh no ... También tengo sueño.  
¡Oh lo siento!  
¡Yo también!  
¡Centro de deportes acuáticos! ¡Qué lindo que estés aquí!  
Hola franca! ¿Cómo estás?  
¡Muy bien! Estoy feliz, hoy como con Marco!  
¿Quien es Marco?  
¡Marco es mi novio!  
¡Guauu! ¡Felicidades!  
¡Gracias!  
Hola Sergio, ¿tienes un examen hoy?  
¡Si! Y tengo miedo!

¡Buena suerte, entonces!  
¡Rompe al lobo!

## **Dialogue 72**

### **English**

#### ***Informal dialogue***

A: Caterina, what job do you do?

B: I am a nurse.

A: And where do you work?

B: I work in the hospital.

#### **Formal dialogue**

A: Mrs. Gina, what job do you do?

B: I am a teacher.

### **Spanish**

#### ***Diálogo informal***

A: Caterina, ¿qué trabajo haces?

B: soy enfermera.

A: ¿Y dónde trabajas?

B: trabajo en el hospital.

#### **Diálogo formal**

A: Sra. Gina, ¿qué trabajo hace?

B: Soy Maestra.

Part 3  
**SPANISH COMMON PHRASES**

## INTRODUCTION

---

This book was made to make your next trip to a Spanish speaking country easy with basic phrases for everyday communication and a phrase for every occasion.

You will find the necessary tools to deal with situations, going from the basic meeting and greeting to what to say in case of an emergency.

The book is presented in sequence, so you get familiar with those situations; we will take you.

This book is very handy; their repetition focuses on the most used phrases.

Finally, remember, with practice, you will be able to improve the use of the language and become better at it.

Also, remember that depends on the part you are visiting, the accent will slightly change. It will be very different in Latin America like Mexico or Colombia than in Spain.

### **SPANISH DIALECTS AND VARIETIES**

Some of the regional varieties of the Spanish language are quite divergent from one another, especially in pronunciation and vocabulary, and less so in grammar.

While all Spanish dialects adhere to approximately the same written standard, all spoken varieties differ from the written variety to different degrees. There are differences between European Spanish (also called Peninsular Spanish) and the Spanish of the Americas, as well as many different dialect areas both within Spain and within Latin America.

## CHAPTER 1: NUMBERS

---

Zero - cero

She-roh

One - uno

oo-no

Two - dos

Dohss

Three - tres

Trehss

Four - cuatro

Kwah-troh

Five - cinco

Seen-koh

Six - seis

Sayss

Seven - siete

See-eh-the

Eight - ocho

Oh-choh

Nine - nueve

Nweh-veh

Ten - diez

Dee-ess

Eleven - once

Ohn-seh

Twelve - doce

Doh-she

Thirteen - trece

Treh-seh

Fourteen - catorce

Kah-tor-she

Fifteen - quince

Keen-she

Sixteen - dieciséis

Dee-eh-see-sayss  
Seventeen - diecisiete  
Dee-eh-see-see-eh-the  
Nineteen - diecinueve  
Dee-eh-see-nweh-veh  
Twenty - veinte  
Vayn-teh  
Twenty-one - veintiuno  
Vayn-tee-oo-noh  
Twenty-two - veintidós  
Vayn-tee-dohss  
Twenty-three - veintitrés  
Vayn-tee-trehss  
Thirty - treinta  
Trayn-tah  
Thirty-one - treinta y uno  
Trayn-tah ee oo-noh  
Thirty-two - treinta y dos  
Trayn-tah ee dohss  
Thirty-three - treinta y tres  
Trayn-tah ee thress  
Forty - cuarenta  
Kwah-ren-tah  
Fifty - cincuenta  
Seen-kwen-tah  
Sixty - sesenta  
She-sen-tah  
Seventy - setenta  
She-tehn-tah  
Eighty - ochenta  
Oh-chen-tah  
Ninety - noventa  
Noh-ven-tah  
One hundred - cien  
See-enn  
One hundred and one - ciento uno  
See-enn-toh-oo-noh



One hundred and two - ciento dos  
See-enn-toh-dohss  
Two hundred - doscientos  
Dohss-see-en-tohss  
Three hundred - trescientos  
Trehss-see-en-tohss  
Four hundred - cuatrocientos  
Kwah-troh-see-en-tohss  
Five hundred - quinientos  
Kee-nee-en-tohss  
Six hundred - seiscientos  
Says-see-en-tohss  
Seven hundred - she-the-see-en-tohss  
Eight hundred - ochocientos  
Oh-choh-see-en-tohss  
Nine hundred - novecientos  
Noh-veh-see-en-tohss  
One thousand - mil  
Mee-l  
Two thousand - dos mil  
Dohss-meel  
Three thousand - tres mil  
Thress-meel  
One hundred thousand - cien mil  
See-en-meel  
One million - un millón  
Oon-mee-yohn  
Two million - dos millones  
Dohss-mee-yoh-ness  
Three million - tres millones  
Thress-mee-yoh-ness

## CHAPTER 2: TIMES OF THE DAY

---

- Morning - mañana
- Maa-neeeea-na
- Midday - medio día
- Meedeeo-deea
- Afternoon - tarde
- Taar-dehh
- Evening - tarde
- Taar-dehh
- Night - noche
- Nohh-chee

## CHAPTER 3: COLORS

---

- White - blanco
- Blaan-kohh
- Black - Negro
- Neh-groh
- Brown - café
- Kah-feh/mah-ron
- Green - verde
- Vehr-deh
- Gray - gris
- Greess
- Orange - naranja
- Nah-rahn-hahh
- Pink - rosa
- Roh-sah
- Purple - morado
- Moh-rah-doh
- Red - rojo
- Yellow - Amarillo
- Ah-mahh-ree-yoh

## CHAPTER 4: DATE AND TIME

---

- Lunes  
Monday
- Martes  
Tuesday
- Miércoles  
Wednesday
- Jueves  
Thursday
- Viernes  
Friday
- Sábado  
Saturday
- Domingo  
Sunday
- ¿Qué día es hoy?  
What day is today?
- ¿Qué día es mañana?  
What day is tomorrow?
- ¿Qué día fue ayer?  
What day was yesterday?
- ¿Qué hiciste ayer?  
What did you do yesterday?
- ¿Qué vas a hacer hoy?  
What are you doing today?
- ¿Qué vas a hacer mañana?  
What are you doing tomorrow?
- ¿Qué hiciste anoche?  
What did you do last night?

- ¿Qué mes es?

What month is this?

- ¿Cuándo es tu cumpleaños?

When is your birthday?

- Es Enero

Its January

- Febrero

February

- Marzo

March

- Abril

April

- Mayo

May

- Junio

June

- Julio

July

- Agosto

August

- Septiembre

September

- Octubre

October

- Noviembre

November

- Diciembre

December

- ¿Qué hora es?

What time is it?

- ¿A qué hora es la fiesta?

What time is the party?



## CHAPTER 5: CELEBRATIONS

---

- ¿Cuándo es tu cumpleaños?  
When is your birthday?
- Hoy es mi cumpleaños  
Today is my birthday
- ¡Feliz Cumpleaños!  
Happy Birthday!
- Felicitaciones  
Congratulations
- ¿Cuántos años tienes?  
How old are you?
- ¿Cuándo es tu boda?  
When is your wedding?
- Estoy embarazada  
I am pregnant
- ¿Cuándo nace él bebe?  
When is the baby due?
- ¿Qué fiestas celebras?  
What parties do you celebrate?
- ¿Qué hacen en navidad?  
What do you do in christmas?
- ¿Cuándo es el día de la Independencia?  
When is Independence day?
- ¿Cuándo son las vacaciones?  
When are the holidays?
- Mañana es navidad  
Tomorrow is Christmas
- Feliz Navidad  
Merry Christmas

- ¡Próspero año Nuevo!  
Happy New Year!

- ¡Felices Fiestas!  
Happy Holidays

- ¿En dónde es la fiesta?  
Where is the party?



## CHAPTER 6: HOW DO YOU SAY...?

---

- ¿Hablas inglés?  
Do you speak English?
- ¿Alguien habla inglés?  
Does someone speak English?
- ¿Me entiendes?  
Do you understand me?
- ¡No entiendo!  
I don't understand
- No hablo español  
I don't speak Spanish
- Puede repetir, por favor  
Can you repeat, please
- ¿Qué significa ...?  
What does .... Mean?
- Hablé más despacio por favor  
Speak slower please.
- No tan rápido  
Not so fast
- ¿Me lo puede traducir?  
Could you translate?
- ¿Me lo puede escribir?  
Could you write it?
- ¿Me lo puede deletrear?  
Could you spell it?
- ¿Tiene un diccionario?  
Have you got a dictionary?

## CHAPTER 7: MONEY AND SHOPPING

---

- Hay alguna casa de cambio cerca.  
Is there any currency Exchange office?
- Tengo que cambiar un cheque de viajero.  
I have to change a traveler's cheque.
- ¿Dónde está el banco?  
Where is the bank?
- ¿Cuál es la tasa de cambio?  
What is the Exchange rate?
- Me puede dar el recibo  
Can I have the receipt?
- ¿Dónde está el cajero automático?  
Where is the ATM?
- ¿Dónde está la tienda de ropa?  
Where is the clothing shop?
- ¿Dónde está el restaurante?  
Where is the restaurant?
- ¿Dónde puedo comprar recuerdos?  
Where can I buy souvenirs?
- ¿Me puedo probar esto?  
Can I try this one?
- ¿Cuánto cuesta?  
How much does it cost?
- ¿Sabe en dónde puedo encontrar una librería?  
Do you know where can I find a bookstore?
- Librería  
Library
- Papelería  
Stationary shop

- Banco

Bank

- Tienda de ropa

Clothing Shop

- Café

Café

- Restaurante

Restaurant

- ¿Tiene talla...?

Have you got size ...?

- ¿Tiene otros colores?

Have you got any other colours?

- ¿Tiene otros modelos?

Have you got other models?

- ¿Tiene descuento?

Does this have discount?

- ¿Tiene otra tienda?

Is there another shop?

- Está muy caro

It is very expensive

- No me alcanza

I don't have enough money

- ¿Dónde pago?

Where should I pay?

- ¿Acepta tarjeta de crédito?

Do you accept credit card?

- ¿Lo puedo devolver?

Can I give it back?

- Necesito un recibo

I need a receipt.

- ¿Lo puede envolver?

Can you wrap it please?

- ¿Lo puede poner en una bolsa?  
Can you put it in a bag?

## CHAPTER 8: EMERGENCIAS

---

- ¿Alguien que me ayude?  
Can somebody help me?
- ¿Sabe primeros auxilios?  
Does someone know first aid?
- Necesito un doctor.  
I need a doctor.
- ¿Dónde está el hospital más cercano?  
Where is the nearest hospital?
- Lléveme a la sala de emergencias  
Take me to the emergency room.
- No me siento bien  
I don't feel good
- Estoy mareado  
I am dizzy.
- Llamen una ambulancia  
Call an ambulance!
- Llamen a la policía  
Call the police.
- Me voy a desmayar  
I am going to faint
- Me robaron mi cartera  
Someone stole my wallet.
- Me han robado  
Someone has stolen from me.
- Se llevaron mi bolsa  
Someone has taken my bag.
- Necesito reportar un crimen  
I need to report a crime.

- Se llevaron mi equipaje  
Someone has taken my luggage.

- Me robaron mi pasaporte  
Someone has stolen my Passport.

- Perdí mi pasaporte  
I lost my Passport.

- Perdí mi boleto de avión  
I lost my airplane ticket.

- Perdí la llave de mi habitación  
I lost my bedroom key.

## CHAPTER 9: HEALTH AND WELLNESS

---

- Me siento cansada  
I feel tired!
- Me siento mareada  
I feel dizzy!
- Me siento muy mal  
I don't feel well!
- En el avión no me sentí bien.  
I didn't feel right on the airplane!
- Desde ayer me duele el estómago  
I have stomach pain since yesterday.
- Desde que llegué me siento rara  
I feel funny since we got here.
- ¡Estoy muy enferma!  
I am very ill!

## CHAPTER 10: MEDICAL BASICS

---

### Spanish

- ¡Socorro!  
Please help!
- Ayúdame  
Help me.
- Tuve un accidente  
I had a severe accident
- Necesito una ambulancia  
I really need an ambulance
- Necesito un doctor  
I really need a doctor
- ¡Me duele!  
It is hurting
- No estoy bien  
I am not feeling well
- ¿Dónde podemos encontrar un consultorio médico?  
Where is medical office?
- ¿Qué pasa?  
What is the problem?
- ¿A quién debo contactar en caso de emergencia?  
Who is your emergency contact?
- ¿Es esta la primera vez que te sucede esto?  
Is it the first time you faced this type of situation?
- Tome una tableta una vez al día antes de comer.  
Take a Tablet once in a day before meal.



## CHAPTER 11: CAR BREAK DOWN

---

### Spanish

- "Mi coche está averiado"  
"My car is broken"
- "Tengo un pinchazo / pinchazo"  
"I have a flat / flat tire"
- "Tuve un accidente"  
"I had an accident"
- "¿Puedes enviar una grúa?"  
"Can you send a crane?"
- "¿Puedes remolcarme a un garaje?"  
"Can you tow me in a garage?"
- "El motor se sobrecalienta"  
"The engine overheats"
- "La batería está vacía"  
"The battery is empty"
- "Hay un problema de frenos"  
"A problem has occurred with the brake"
- "Hay una acumulación en la A9"  
"There is a buildup in A9"
- "Este automovilista quemó el fuego"  
"This motorist burned the fire"
- Prioridad izquierda / derecha  
Left / right priority
- El auto se quedó sin combustible.  
The car has run out of fuel.
- ¿Dónde hay una estación de servicio cerca de aquí?  
Where is a petrol station nearby?

- Completo, por favor.

Complete, please.

- Veinte litros, por favor

Twenty liters, please

- Este auto usa gasolina regular.

This car uses regular petrol.

- Este auto usa gasolina sin plomo.

This car uses unleaded petrol.

- Este auto usa diésel.

This car uses diesel.

- ¿Es esta la ruta correcta para París?

Is this the right way to Paris?

- Aquí está mi licencia de conducir.

Here is my driving license.

- ¿Conduje demasiado rápido?

Did I drive too fast?

- Me gustaría alquilar un auto, por favor.

I would like to rent a car, please.

- ¿Tienes un auto manual?

Do you have a manual car?

- ¿Tienes un auto automático?

Do you have an automatic car?

- ¿Cuánto alquilar por día, por favor?

How much to rent per day, please?

- ¿Cuánto alquilar por semana, por favor?

How much to rent per week, please?

## CHAPTER 12: GREETINGS

---

### Spanish

1. ¿Cómo estás?

How are you?

- Estoy encantado de conocerte.

I'm glad to meet you.

- Es un placer conocerte.

Nice to meet you.

- Me alegro de verte.

I'm glad to see you.

- ¿Cómo lo haces?

How do you do it?

- ¿Qué pasa?

What happens?

- ¿Cómo te va?

How are you doing?

- ¿Cómo has estado?

How have you been?

- ¿Qué hay de nuevo?

What's new?

- ¿Qué está pasando?

What's going on?

- ¿Cómo están las cosas?

How are the things going?

- ¿Cómo está tu día?

How's your day?

- ¿Cómo va tu día?

How is your day going?

- ¿Qué bueno verte?  
Good to see you.
- Mucho tiempo sin verte.  
Long time not see you.
- Ha sido un tiempo.  
It has been a while.
- Ha sido un largo tiempo.  
It has been a long time.
- Ha pasado tanto tiempo.  
It has been so long.
- Ha pasado mucho tiempo.  
A lot of time has passed.
- Estoy muy feliz de verte de nuevo.  
I am very happy to see you again.
- ¡Qué bueno verte de nuevo!  
It's good to see you again!
- ¿Qué has estado haciendo?  
What have you been doing?
- Estoy muy bien, gracias. ¿Y tú?  
I'm fine, thanks. And you?
- Estoy bien gracias.  
I'm fine thanks.
- Muchas gracias. ¿Cómo estás?  
Thank you. How are you?
- No está mal. ¿Tú?  
Not bad. Your?
- ¿No podría ser mejor? ¿Qué hay de tí?  
Could not be better? What about you?
- Maravilloso, gracias.  
Wonderful thanks.

## CHAPTER 13: SAYING GOOD BYE

---

### Spanish

#### 1. Adiós

##### Farewell

- ¡Adiós por ahora!  
Goodbye for now!
- ¡Nos vemos!  
See you!
- ¡Te veo pronto!  
See you soon!
- ¡Nos vemos más tarde!  
See you later!
- ¡Hablaré contigo más tarde!  
I'll talk to you later!
- Hablamos más tarde.  
We'll talk later.
- Espero verte pronto.  
I hope to see you soon.
- Hasta la próxima.  
See you next time.
- Estoy deseando verte pronto.  
I look forward to seeing you soon.
- Fue un placer conocerte.  
It was a pleasure to meet you.
- Ha sido realmente agradable conocerte.  
It was really nice to meet you.
- Ha sido un placer, hablaremos pronto.  
It was a pleasure, we will speak soon.

- Fue realmente genial verte, nos vemos luego.

It was really cool to see you, see you later.

- Todo lo mejor, adiós.

All right, goodbye.

- ¡Cuídate!

Take care of YOU!

- Mantente en contacto.

Keep in touch.

- Realmente te voy a extrañar.

I will really miss you.

- Tengo que irme ahora.

I have to go now.

## CHAPTER 14: SAYING SORRY

---

### Spanish

- Lo siento...  
I'm sorry ...
- Lo siento mucho...  
I'm so sorry...
- Lo lamento muchísimo...  
I am so sorry...
- Lo siento, no quise hacer eso.  
Sorry, I didn't want to do that.
- Lo siento por eso.  
Sorry about that.
- ¿Puedes perdonarme?  
Can you forgive me?
- Me disculpo por...  
I apologize for...
- Por favor perdóname.  
Please forgive me.
- Te debo una disculpa.  
I owe you an apology.
- Puedes culparme por esto.  
You can blame me for this.
- ¿Cómo debería disculparme contigo?  
How should I apologize to you?
- Le ruego me disculpe.  
I beg your pardon.
- Lo siento es mi culpa.  
Sorry it's my fault.

- Perdón por hacerte esperar.  
Sorry for making you wait.
- Lo siento, llego tarde!  
Sorry, I'm late!
- ¡Está bien!  
Okay!
- No te preocupes por eso.  
Don't worry about it.
- ¡Olvídalo!  
Forget it!
- No hay problema.  
No problem.
- No importa. Realmente no importa.  
It doesn't matter. I really do not care.
- No es gran cosa  
Not a big deal
- No es tu culpa.  
It is not your fault.
- Por favor, no te culpes a ti mismo.  
Please don't blame yourself.
- No pienses nada de eso.  
Don't think any of that.



## CHAPTER 15: GETTING INTRODUCED

---

- Hola. Me llamo ...  
Hi. My name is ...
- Hola. Soy ...  
Hi. I am ...
- Encantada de conocerte. Soy ...  
Nice to meet you. I am ...
- Es un placer verte. Soy...  
Nice to see you. I am...
- ¿Me puedo presentar? Soy...  
Can I introduce myself I am...
- ¿Cómo lo haces? Me llamo...  
How do you do it? My name is...
- Permítame presentarme. Soy ...  
Let me introduce myself. I am ...
- Me gustaría presentarme. Soy ...  
I would like to introduce myself. I am ...
- John, me gustaría presentarte a Mary.  
John, I'd like to introduce you to Mary.
- John, por favor conoce a Mary.  
John, please meet Mary.
- John, me gustaría que conocieras a Mary.  
John, I'd like you to meet Mary.
- John, ¿has conocido a Mary?  
John, have you met Mary?
- John, déjame presentarte a Mary.  
John, let me introduce you to Mary.
- John, esta es Mary. Mary, este es John.  
John, this is Mary. Mary, this is John.

- Encantada de conocerte.

Nice to meet you.

- Estoy encantado de conocerte.

I'm glad to meet you.

- Es un placer conocerte.

Nice to meet you.

- Encantado de conocerte.

Nice to meet you.

- ¿Cómo lo haces?

How do you do it?

- ¿Puedes hablar inglés?

Can you speak English?

- ¿Cuánto tiempo has estado aprendiendo Inglés?

How long have you been learning English?

- ¿Podrías hablar un poco, por favor?

Could you talk a little, please?

- ¿Podrías decir eso otra vez?

Could you say that again?

- ¿Podrías repetir eso por favor?

Could you repeat that please?

- ¿Te importaría deletrear eso para mí?

Would you mind spelling that out for me?

- ¿Cómo se pronuncia esta palabra?

How this word is pronounced?

- ¿Qué quiere decir con esto?

What do you mean by that?

- ¿Lo siento, qué quieres decir?

Sorry what do you mean

- ¿Cómo se llama esta cosa en inglés?

What is this thing called in English?

- ¿Cuántos idiomas puede hablar?

How many languages can you speak?

- Hablo un poco de Inglés.  
I speak a little bit of English.
- Yo puedo hablar inglés muy bien.  
I can speak English very well.
- Tu Inglés es excelente.  
Your English is excellent.
- Desearía poder hablar inglés con fluidez como tú.  
I wish I could speak English fluently like you.
- Por favor habla despacio.  
Please speak slowly.
- Por favor repite lo que dijiste.  
Please repeat what you said.
- Tengo miedo de hablar inglés.  
I am afraid to speak English.
- Lo siento, mi inglés no es muy bueno.  
Sorry, my English is not very good.
- ¿Con qué frecuencia hablas inglés?  
How often do you speak English?
- Puedo leer inglés muy bien, pero no puedo hablar.  
I can read English very well, but I can't speak.
- Me gustaría mejorar mi inglés.  
I would like to improve my English.
- Tienes buena pronunciación.  
You have good pronunciation.

## CHAPTER 16: SHOWING GRATITUDE

---

### Spanish

- Gracias.

Thank you

- Gracias.

Thank you

- Muchas gracias.

Thank you so much.

- ¡Muchas gracias!

Thank you so much!

- Muchas gracias.

Thank you so much.

- Sinceramente gracias.

I sincerely thank you.

- Muchas gracias!

Thank you so much!

- Un millón de gracias por tu ayuda.

A million thanks for your help.

- Realmente aprecio tu ayuda.

I really appreciate your help.

- Eres muy amable.

You are very lovely.

- No sé cómo expresar mi agradecimiento.

I don't know how to express my thanks.

- ¡No hay palabras para mostrar mi agradecimiento!

There are no words to show my appreciation!

- Lo que has hecho significa mucho para mí.

What you did means a lot to me.

- Es muy amable por tu parte.  
It's very nice of you.

- Me hiciste el día.  
You made me day.

- Te debo mucho  
I owe you a lot

- Gracias desde el fondo de mi corazón por todo.  
Thank you from the bottom of my heart for everything.

- ¿Cómo puedo agradecerte?  
How can I thank you?

- ¡De nada!  
You're welcome!

- Fue un placer.  
It was a pleasure.

- El gusto es mio.  
The taste is mine.

- No lo menciones  
Don't mention it

- Olvídalo.  
Forget that.

- No es gran cosa.  
It's not a big deal.

- No fue nada.  
It was nothing.

- No pienses nada de eso.  
Don't think about it.

- Me alegro de poder ayudarte.  
I am happy to help you.

## CHAPTER 17: TIME DISCUSSION

---

### Spanish

- ¿Qué hora es?  
What time is it?
- ¿Qué hora es?  
What time is it?
- ¿Podrías decirme la hora?  
Could you tell me the time?
- ¿Sabes qué hora es?  
Do you know what time it is?
- ¿Cuánto has estado esperando?  
How long have you been waiting
- ¿Tienes tiempo libre esta tarde?  
Do you have free time this afternoon?
- ¿A que hora nos podemos ver?  
What time can we meet?
- ¿Qué debemos hacer para matar el tiempo?  
What should we do to kill time?
- Son las diez en punto.  
It's ten o'clock.
- Es media noche.  
It's midnight.
- Ahora son las 6 a.m.  
It is now 6 a.m.
- Nos vemos a las 8 p.m.  
Meet at 8 p.m.
- No puedo decirte exactamente a qué hora llegaremos.  
I can't tell you exactly what time we will arrive.

- Es muy tarde ahora.  
It is too late now.
- Mi reloj está parado.  
My watch is stopped.
- Mi reloj es lento.  
My watch is slow.
- No pierdas tu tiempo sin hacer nada.  
Don't waste your time doing nothing.
- No pensé que fuera tan tarde.  
I never thought it was so late.
- Tenemos un montón de tiempo.  
We have a lot of time.
- Dame un poco más de tiempo.  
Give me a little more time.
- Es tiempo de salir.  
It's time to go out.
- Es casi la hora de volver a casa.  
It's almost time to go home.
- El tiempo pasó muy rápido.  
Time has passed very quickly.
- El supermercado abre a las 9 a.m.  
The supermarket opens at 9 a.m.
- La clase comienza a las 8 de la mañana.  
The course starts at 8 a.m.

## CHAPTER 18: SPEAKING LANGUAGE

---

### Spanish

- ¿Puedes hablar inglés?  
You speak English?
- ¿Cuánto tiempo has estado aprendiendo inglés?  
How long have you been learning English?
- ¿Podrías hablar un poco, por favor?  
Could you talk a little please?
- ¿Podrías decir eso otra vez?  
Could you repeat that?
- ¿Podrías repetir eso por favor?  
Could you repeat that please?
- ¿Te importaría deletrear eso para mí?  
Could you explain it to me?
- ¿Cómo se pronuncia esta palabra?  
How do I pronounce this word?
- ¿Qué quiere decir con esto?  
What do you mean by this?
- ¿Lo siento, qué quieres decir?  
Sorry what you mean
- ¿Cómo se llama esta cosa en inglés?  
What is this thing called in English?
- ¿Cuántos idiomas puede hablar?  
How many languages do you speak?
- Hablo un poco de inglés.  
I speak a little English.
- Yo puedo hablar inglés muy bien.  
I speak English very well.



- Tu inglés es excelente.  
Your English is excellent.
- Desearía poder hablar inglés con fluidez como tú.  
I wish I could speak English fluently like you.
- Por favor habla despacio.  
Please speak slowly.
- Por favor repite lo que dijiste.  
Please repeat what you said.
- Tengo miedo de hablar inglés.  
I'm afraid to speak English.
- Lo siento, mi inglés no es muy bueno.  
Sorry, my English is not very good.
- ¿Con qué frecuencia hablas inglés?  
How often do you speak English?
- Puedo leer inglés muy bien, pero no puedo hablar.  
I can read English very well, but I don't speak.
- Me gustaría mejorar mi inglés.  
I would like to improve my English.
- Tienes buena pronunciación.  
You have a good pronunciation.

## CHAPTER 19: COMPLIMENTS

---

### Spanish

- ¡Buen trabajo!  
Good work!
- ¡Bien hecho!  
Well done!
- ¡Fantástico!  
Fantastic!
- ¡Perfecto!  
Perfect!
- ¡Eso es genial!  
This is great!
- ¡Buen trabajo!  
Good work!
- ¡Excelente!  
Excellent!
- Eso es realmente notable.  
It is truly remarkable.
- ¡Buenas calificaciones!  
Good marks!
- ¡Qué lindo vestido!  
What a pretty dress!
- Te ves genial.  
You look beautiful
- Este plato es delicioso.  
This dish is delicious.
- Te ves muy bien en ese traje.  
You look great in this costume.

- Esta corbata te queda bien.  
This tie looks good on you.
- Tienes una linda voz.  
You have a beautiful voice.
- Te ves muy guapo.  
You are very beautiful.
- Me gusta tu corte de cabello.  
I like your haircut.
- ¡Qué hermosa casa!  
What a beautiful house!
- ¡Qué lindo departamento!  
What a beautiful apartment!
- Realmente debo expresar mi admiración por tu discurso.  
I really have to express my admiration for your speech.
- Qué amable de tu parte decir eso.  
It's nice of you to say that.
- Es amable de tu parte decir eso.  
It's nice of you to say that.
- Es muy amable de su parte decir eso.  
It's very kind of you to say that.
- De Verdad? No estoy seguro de eso, en realidad.  
Really? I'm not sure about that, actually.
- Gracias.  
Thank you
- Muchas gracias.  
Thank you so much.
- Me alegro de que te guste.  
I'm glad you like it.
- En realidad no fue nada.  
It was really nothing.
- Estoy encantado de escuchar eso.  
I am delighted to hear this.

- Gracias por su cumplido.  
Thank you for your compliment.

## CHAPTER 20: COMPLAINTS

---

- Lamento decir esto pero ...  
I'm sorry to say it but ...
- Odio decirte pero ...  
I hate to tell you but ...
- Estoy enojado por ...  
I am angry with ...
- Tengo una queja que hacer ...  
I have a complaint ...
- Parece que hay un problema con ...  
There seems to be a problem with ...
- Me temo que hay un pequeño problema con ...  
I'm afraid there is a little problem with ...
- Lamento molestarte pero ...  
I'm sorry to bother you but ...
- No estoy satisfecho con ...  
I am not satisfied with ...
- No sería una buena idea ...  
It wouldn't be a good idea ...
- Parece que hay algo mal con ...  
There seems to be a problem with ...
- Estaba esperando ... pero ...  
I was waiting ... but ...
- Lamento molestarte pero ...  
I'm sorry to bother you but ...
- Quiero quejarme de ...  
I want to complain about ...
- Me temo que tengo una queja sobre ...  
I'm afraid to complain about ...

- Tengo que presentar una queja sobre ...  
I need to file a complaint about ...
- No entiendo por qué ...  
I do not understand why ...
- Disculpe pero hay un problema ...  
Excuse me but there is a problem ...
- Te importaría...?  
Would you mind ...?
- Lo siento mucho, pero esto nunca volverá a suceder.  
I'm really sorry, but it won't happen again.
- Lo siento, prometemos no volver a cometer el mismo error.  
Sorry, we promise not to repeat the same mistake.
- No puedo decirte cuánto lo siento.  
I can't tell you how sorry I am.
- Desearía nunca haber sucedido.  
I wish it never happened.
- Lo sentimos, no hay nada que podamos hacer al respecto.  
Sorry, there is nothing we can do about it.
- Lo siento pero no es nuestra culpa.  
Sorry but it's not our fault.
- Me temo que no hay mucho que podamos hacer al respecto.  
I'm afraid there is not much we can do.

## CHAPTER 21: LIKENESS AND DISLIKE

---

- Me gustan los perros.  
I love dogs
- Me encanta cocinar.  
I love cooking
- Disfruto jugando al fútbol.  
I like to play football.
- Estoy loco por la pizza.  
I'm crazy about pizza.
- Soy aficionado a la música rock.  
I like rock music.
- ¿Te gusta el tenis? Sí.  
You like tennis yes
- No me gusta  
I do not like
- No soporto a estas personas.  
I can't stand these people.
- No soporto este olor.  
I can't bear this smell.
- No me gusta lavar los platos.  
I do not like wash the dishes.
- Odio ir al dentista.  
I hate going to the dentist.

## CHAPTER 22: CERTAINTY

---

### Spanish

- ¿Estás seguro?  
Are you sure?
- ¿Estás seguro de eso?  
Are you sure about that?
- ¿Estás seguro de eso?  
Are you sure about that?
- ¿Crees que es verdad?  
Do you think this is true?
- ¿Tú crees?  
You think?
- ¿Qué tan seguro estás?  
Are you sure
- Si, estoy seguro.  
Yes I am sure
- Estoy cien por ciento seguro ...  
I'm a hundred percent sure ...
- Estoy absolutamente seguro  
I'm absolutely sure
- No tengo duda sobre ello.  
I have no doubt about it.
- Estoy seguro de eso.  
I'm sure.
- No creo que pueda haber ninguna duda sobre ...  
I don't think there can be any doubt about ...
- Por supuesto.  
Of course.



- Soy positivo.  
I am positive.
- Estoy bastante seguro de eso.  
I'm almost sure.
- No tengo dudas al respecto.  
I have no doubt about it.
- Estoy absolutamente seguro de que ...  
I'm absolutely sure ...
- No estoy seguro de eso.  
I'm not sure of it.
- Lo dudo.  
I doubt.
- No estoy realmente seguro de ...  
I'm not really sure ...
- No estoy seguro ...  
I am not sure ...
- Es muy improbable.  
It is very unlikely.
- Tengo mis propias dudas  
I have my own doubts
- No lo creo.  
I do not believe that.
- No creo que esto sea cierto.  
I don't think it's true.
- Tengo alguna duda en mi mente de que ...  
I have some doubt in my mind that ...
- No estoy cien por ciento seguro.  
I'm not a hundred percent sure.
- Aún no lo sé  
I do not know yet
- ¿Puedes hablar inglés?  
You speak English?

- ¿Cuánto tiempo has estado aprendiendo inglés?  
How long have you been learning English?

- ¿Podrías hablar un poco, por favor?  
Could you talk a little please?

- ¿Podrías decir eso otra vez?  
Could you repeat that?

- ¿Podrías repetir eso por favor?  
Could you repeat that please?

- ¿Te importaría deletrear eso para mí?  
Could you explain it to me?

- ¿Cómo se pronuncia esta palabra?  
How do I pronounce this word?

- ¿Qué quiere decir con esto?  
What do you mean by this?

- ¿Lo siento, qué quieres decir?  
Sorry what you mean

- ¿Cómo se llama esta cosa en inglés?  
What is this thing called in English?

- ¿Cuántos idiomas puede hablar?  
How many languages do you speak?

- Hablo un poco de inglés.  
I speak a little English.

- Yo puedo hablar inglés muy bien.  
I speak English very well.

- Tu inglés es excelente.  
Your English is excellent.

- Desearía poder hablar inglés con fluidez como tú.  
I wish I could speak English fluently like you.

- Por favor habla despacio.  
Please speak slowly.

- Por favor repite lo que dijiste.  
Please repeat what you said.

- Tengo miedo de hablar inglés.

I'm afraid to speak English.

- Lo siento, mi inglés no es muy bueno.

Sorry, my English is not very good.

- ¿Con qué frecuencia hablas inglés?

How often do you speak English?

- Puedo leer inglés muy bien, pero no puedo hablar.

I can read English very well, but I don't speak.

- Me gustaría mejorar mi inglés.

I would like to improve my English.

- Tienes buena pronunciación.

You have a good pronunciation.

## CHAPTER 23: INVITATION

---

### Spanish

- ¿Tienes ganas de salir a caminar?  
Do you want to take a walk?
- ¿Quieres ir al cine esta noche?  
Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?
- ¿Te gustaría jugar a las cartas?  
Do you want to play cards?
- ¿Te gustaría una taza de café?  
Do you want a cup of coffee?
- ¿Qué tal una taza de té?  
How about a cup of tea?
- Me gustaría que almorzaras con nosotros mañana.  
I wish you had lunch with us tomorrow.
- ¿Te interesaría ir al cine esta noche?  
Are you interested in going to the cinema tonight?
- ¿Por qué no almuerzas conmigo mañana?  
Why don't you have lunch with me tomorrow?
- ¿Qué tal si me acompañas a caminar?  
How about taking me on a walk?
- Te invito a desayunar conmigo mañana por la mañana.  
I invite you to have lunch with me tomorrow morning.
- Gracias por tu amable invitación.  
Thanks for your kind invitation.
- Me encantaría, gracias.  
I'd like to, thank you.
- Estaré encantado de hacerlo.  
I will be happy to do it.

- Gracias, me gustaría mucho eso.  
Thanks, I would love to.

- Es una gran idea.  
Is an excellent idea

- Gracias por invitarme a cenar.  
Thanks for inviting me to dinner.

- Es muy amable de tu parte.  
It is very nice of you.

- Muchas gracias por su amable invitación. Me reuniré contigo.  
Thanks so much for your kind invitation. I'll meet you.

- Seguro. Gracias.  
Insurance. Thank you

- ¡Con placer!  
With pleasure!

- Lamento rechazar su invitación.  
I'm sorry I declined your invitation.

- No puedo, lo siento. Tengo que trabajar.  
I can't apologize. I have to work

- Gracias por tu invitación, pero ahora estoy ocupado.  
Thanks for your invitation, but now I'm busy.

- Me temo que no podré venir.  
I'm afraid I can't come.

- Me temo que mañana estoy ocupado.  
I'm afraid of being busy tomorrow.

- Lo siento, me encantaría pero tengo una cita.  
I'm sorry, I'd like to, but I have a date.

- Realmente no creo que pueda, lo siento.  
I really don't think I can do it, sorry.

- Es muy amable de su parte, pero no puedo aceptar su invitación.  
It's very kind of you, but I can't accept your invitation.

## CHAPTER 24: QUERY

---

- Te importa...?  
Do you mind ...?
- Crees que podrías...?  
Do you think you can ...?
- ¿Crees que sería posible ...?  
Do you think it would be possible ...?
- ¿Sería posible para ti ...?  
Would it be possible for you ...?
- ¿Habría alguna posibilidad de ...  
There would be some chance of ...
- ¿Serías tan amable de ...?  
Would you be so kind to ...?
- Te importaría...?  
Would you mind ...?
- ¿Puedes / podrías ... por mí, por favor?  
Can you / could ... for me, please?
- Podrías posiblemente...  
Could you maybe ...
- Te agradecería que pudieras ...  
I would appreciate it if you could ...
- ¿Puedo / podría pedirte que ...?  
Can I / can I ask you to ...?
- No podrías ... ¿verdad?  
Couldn't you ... could you?
- ¿Me puede dar el libro?  
Can you give me the book?
- ¿Podrías quitarte el impermeable?  
Could you take off your raincoat?

- ¿Podrías llevarme al dentista?  
Could you take me to the dentist?
- ¿Te importaría abrirme la ventana, por favor?  
Would you mind opening the window for me, please?
- ¿Serías tan amable de reparar mi computadora?  
Would you be kind enough to repair my computer?
- ¿Crees que podrías llevarme al supermercado?  
Do you think you can take me to the supermarket?
- ¿Puedo pedirte que me lleves a casa?  
Can I ask you to take me home?
- ¿Me puedes decir que es lo que paso?  
Can you tell me what happened?
- ¿Vendrías a mi fiesta de cumpleaños?  
You will come to my birthday party
- ¿Sería posible que vinieras aquí a las 8 a.m.?  
Would it be possible for you to come here at 8 in the morning?
- Claro, me alegraría ...  
Of course, I would be happy ...
- Estaría feliz de ...  
I'd be happy to ...
- Seguro. Sólo un momento.  
Insurance. Just a moment
- No hay problema.  
No problem
- Por supuesto  
sure
- Ciertamente.  
Certainly.
- Todo bien.  
Everything good
- Lo siento, no puedo.  
I'm sorry I can not

- Lo siento pero ...  
I'm sorry but ...
- Me encantó, pero ...  
I loved it, but ...
- Lamento decir eso ...  
I'm sorry to say that ...
- Suena genial, pero  
It looks fantastic, but
- ¿Estás seguro?  
Are you sure?
- ¿Estás seguro de eso?  
Are you sure about that?
- ¿Estás seguro de eso?  
Are you sure about that?
- ¿Crees que es verdad?  
Do you think this is true?
- ¿Tú crees?  
You think?
- ¿Qué tan seguro estás?  
Are you sure
- Si, estoy seguro.  
Yes I am sure
- Estoy cien por ciento seguro ...  
I'm a hundred percent sure ...
- Estoy absolutamente seguro  
I'm absolutely sure
- No tengo duda sobre ello.  
I have no doubt about it.
- Estoy seguro de eso.  
I'm sure.
- No creo que pueda haber ninguna duda sobre ...  
I don't think there can be any doubt about ...



- Por supuesto.  
Of course.
- Soy positivo.  
I am positive.
- Estoy bastante seguro de eso.  
I'm almost sure.
- No tengo dudas al respecto.  
I have no doubt about it.
- Estoy absolutamente seguro de que ...  
I'm absolutely sure ...
- No estoy seguro de eso.  
I'm not sure of it.
- Lo dudo.  
I doubt.
- No estoy realmente seguro de ...  
I'm not really sure ...
- No estoy seguro ...  
I am not sure ...
- Es muy improbable.  
It is very unlikely.
- Tengo mis propias dudas  
I have my own doubts
- No lo creo.  
I do not believe that.
- No creo que esto sea cierto.  
I don't think it's true.
- Tengo alguna duda en mi mente de que ...  
I have some doubt in my mind that ...
- No estoy cien por ciento seguro.  
I'm not a hundred percent sure.
- ¡Aún no lo sé!  
I do not know yet

- ¿Puedes hablar inglés?  
You speak English?
- ¿Cuánto tiempo has estado aprendiendo inglés?  
How long have you been learning English?
- ¿Podrías hablar un poco, por favor?  
Could you talk a little please?
- ¿Podrías decir eso otra vez?  
Could you repeat that?
- ¿Podrías repetir eso por favor?  
Could you repeat that please?
- ¿Te importaría deletrear eso para mí?  
Could you explain it to me?
- ¿Cómo se pronuncia esta palabra?  
How do I pronounce this word?
- ¿Qué quiere decir con esto?  
What do you mean by this?
- ¿Lo siento, qué quieres decir?  
Sorry what you mean
- ¿Cómo se llama esta cosa en inglés?  
What is this thing called in English?
- ¿Cuántos idiomas puede hablar?  
How many languages do you speak?
- Hablo un poco de inglés.  
I speak a little English.
- Yo puedo hablar inglés muy bien.  
I speak English very well.
- Tu inglés es excelente.  
Your English is excellent.
- Desearía poder hablar inglés con fluidez como tú.  
I wish I could speak English fluently like you.
- Por favor habla despacio.  
Please speak slowly.

- Por favor repite lo que dijiste.  
Please repeat what you said.
- Tengo miedo de hablar inglés.  
I'm afraid to speak English.
- Lo siento, mi inglés no es muy bueno.  
Sorry, my English is not very good.
- ¿Con qué frecuencia hablas inglés?  
How often do you speak English?
- Puedo leer inglés muy bien, pero no puedo hablar.  
I can read English very well, but I don't speak.
- Me gustaría mejorar mi inglés.  
I would like to improve my English.
- Tienes buena pronunciación.  
You have a good pronunciation.
- Puedo...?  
May I...?
- Debo...?  
I must...?
- ¿Quieres que yo ... (haga algo)?  
Do you want me to ... (do something)?
- Te gustaría algo)?  
Would you like something)?
- ¿Quieres que yo ... (haga algo)?  
Do you want me to ... (do something)?
- Quieres algo)?  
Want something)?
- Déjame ... (hacer algo)  
Let me ... (do something)
- Puedo ... si quieres  
I can ... if you want
- Me encantaría ... (hacer algo)  
I would love to ... (do something)

- ¿Puedo ofrecerte ... (algo)?  
Can I offer you ... (something)?
- Lo haré ... si quieres  
I will ... if you want
- ¿Le gustaría algo de beber?  
Would you like something to drink?
- ¿Quieres que abra la puerta?  
Do you want me to open the door?
- ¿Puedo ayudarte?  
I can help?
- ¿Te puedo ayudar?  
I can help you?
- Deja que te ayude.  
Let 'me help you.
- ¿Quieres que conteste el teléfono?  
Do you want me to answer the phone?
- ¿Quieres un poco más de té?  
Would you like some more tea?
- ¿Quieres que baje la televisión?  
Do you want me to turn down the television?
- Me encantaría llevarte al aeropuerto.  
I would love to take you to the airport.
- ¿Puedo ofrecerte una taza de café?  
Can I offer you a cup of coffee?
- Sí por favor.  
Yes, please.
- Si, me encantaría.  
Yes, I`d love to.
- Si. Eso sería genial.  
Yes. That would be great.
- Sí, por favor, eso sería encantador.  
Yes please, that would be lovely.

- Sí, si no te importara.  
Yes, if you didn't mind.

- Es muy amable por tu parte.  
That's very kind of you.

- Eso suena bien.  
That sounds good.

- Gracias. Me gustaría.  
Thank you. I would like.

- No, gracias.  
No thanks.

- Está bien. Puedo hacerlo yo solo.  
It's okay. I can do it by myself.

- Gracias por su amabilidad, pero puedo hacerlo yo mismo.  
Thanks for your kindness, but I can do it myself.

- No te preocupes Yo puedo hacerlo.  
Don't worry, I can do it.

- Lo aprecio pero puedo hacerlo yo mismo.  
I appreciate it but I can do it myself

- ¿Puedo usar su pluma, por favor?  
Can I use the pen please?

- ¿Puedo sentarme aquí?  
Can I sit here?

- ¿Está bien si me siento aquí?  
Is it okay if I sit here?

- ¿Puedo hacerte una pregunta?  
Can I ask you a question?

- ¿Puedo usar su computadora?  
Can I use your computer?

- ¿Puedo pasar?  
Can I enter?

- ¿Puedo echar un vistazo a tu libro?  
Can I take a look at your book?

- ¿Te importa si apago el televisor?  
Do you mind if I turn off the TV?
- ¿Te importa si uso tu teléfono?  
Do you mind if I use the phone?
- ¿Te importaría si abriera la ventana?  
Would you mind if I opened the window?
- Si no te importa, me gustaría fumar.  
If you don't mind, I'd like to smoke.
- Me pregunto si podría prestarme tu auto por unos días.  
I wonder if I could borrow your car for a few days.
- ¿Estaría bien si me prestaras tu teléfono?  
Would it be nice if you lent me your phone?
- Seguro.  
Of course.
- Claro, adelante.  
Sure, go ahead.
- No hay problema.  
No problem.
- Sí tu puedes.  
Yes, you can.
- Por favor siéntase libre.  
Don't hesitate.
- No me importa  
I don't care
- Me temo que no.  
I'm afraid not.
- Tengo miedo, pero no puedes.  
I'm afraid, but you can't.
- Lo siento, pero eso no es posible.  
Sorry, but it is not possible.
- No, no puedes.  
No, you can't.

- No podías hacer eso.

You can't do it.

- Lo sentimos, no estás permitido.

Sorry, you are not authorized.

## CHAPTER 25: MAKING & REFUSING OFFERS

---

- Puedo...?

May I...?

- Debo...?

I must...?

- ¿Quieres que yo ... (haga algo)?

Do you want me to ... (do something)?

- Te gustaría algo)?

Would you like something)?

- ¿Quieres que yo ... (haga algo)?

Do you want me to ... (do something)?

- Quieres algo)?

Want something)?

- Déjame ... (hacer algo)

Let me ... (do something)

- Puedo ... si quieres

I can ... if you want

- Me encantaría ... (hacer algo)

I would love to ... (do something)

- ¿Puedo ofrecerte ... (algo)?

Can I offer you ... (something)?

- Lo haré ... si quieres

I will ... if you want

- ¿Le gustaría algo de beber?

Would you like something to drink?



- ¿Quieres que abra la puerta?

Do you want me to open the door?

- ¿Puedo ayudarte?

I can help?

- ¿Te puedo ayudar?

I can help you?

- Deja que te ayude.

Let 'me help you.

- ¿Quieres que conteste el teléfono?

Do you want me to answer the phone?

- ¿Quieres un poco más de té?

Would you like some more tea?

- ¿Quieres que baje la televisión?

Do you want me to turn down the television?

- Me encantaría llevarte al aeropuerto.

I would love to take you to the airport.

- ¿Puedo ofrecerte una taza de café?

Can I offer you a cup of coffee?

- Sí por favor.

Yes please.

- Sí, me encantaría.

Yes, I `d love to.

- Si. Eso sería genial.

Yes. That would be great.

- Sí, por favor, eso sería encantador.

Yes please, that would be lovely.

- Sí, si no te importara.

Yes, if you didn't mind.

- Es muy amable por tu parte.

That's very kind of you.

- Eso suena bien.

That sounds good.

- Gracias. Me gustaría.

Thank you. I would like.

- No, gracias.

No thanks.

- Está bien. Puedo hacerlo yo solo.

It's okay. I can do it by myself.

- Gracias por su amabilidad, pero puedo hacerlo yo mismo.

Thanks for your kindness, but I can do it myself.

- No te preocupes Yo puedo hacerlo.

Don't worry, I can do it.

- Lo aprecio pero puedo hacerlo yo mismo.

I appreciate it but I can do it myself

## CHAPTER 26: PERMISSION

---

### Spanish

- ¿Puedo usar su pluma, por favor?

Can I use the pen please?

- ¿Puedo sentarme aquí?

Can I sit here?

- ¿Está bien si me siento aquí?

Is it okay if I sit here?

- ¿Puedo hacerte una pregunta?

Can I ask you a question?

- ¿Puedo usar su computadora?

Can I use your computer?

- ¿Puedo pasar?

Can I enter?

- ¿Puedo echar un vistazo a tu libro?

Can I take a look at your book?

- ¿Te importa si apago el televisor?

Do you mind if I turn off the TV?

- ¿Te importa si uso tu teléfono?

Do you mind if I use the phone?

- ¿Te importaría si abriera la ventana?

Would you mind if I opened the window?

- Si no te importa, me gustaría fumar.

If you don't mind, I'd like to smoke.

- Me pregunto si podría prestarme tu auto por unos días.

I wonder if I could borrow your car for a few days.

- ¿Estaría bien si me prestaras tu teléfono?

Would it be nice if you lent me your phone?

- Seguro.

Of course.

- Claro, adelante.

Sure, go ahead.

- No hay problema.

No problem.

- Sí tu puedes.

Yes, you can.

- Por favor siéntase libre.

Don't hesitate.

- No me importa

I don't care

- Me temo que no.

I'm afraid not.

- Tengo miedo, pero no puedes.

I'm afraid, but you can't.

- Lo siento, pero eso no es posible.

Sorry, but it is not possible.

- No, no puedes.

No, you can't.

- No podías hacer eso.

You can't do it.

- Lo sentimos, no estás permitido.

Sorry, you are not authorized.



## CHAPTER 27: ADVICE AND SUGGESTIONS

---

- Debes tratar de aprender inglés todos los días.

You should try learning English every day.

- Creo que deberías irte a casa temprano.

I think you should go home early.

- ¿Por qué no te unes a un club de inglés?

Why don't you join an English club?

- Será mejor que te levantes temprano.

You better get up early.

- Vamos a cenar juntos.

Let's have dinner together.

- ¿Qué hay de tomar una taza de café conmigo?

How about having a cup of coffee with me?

- ¿Qué tal si vamos al cine?

What if we went to the cinema?

- ¿No crees que sería una buena idea hacer un picnic este domingo?

Don't you think it would be a good idea to have a picnic this Sunday?

- Si yo fuera tú, la llamaría.

If I were you, I'd call her.

- Te sugiero que tomes una siesta.

I suggest you take a nap.

- Es posible que desee probar esta camiseta.

You could try this shirt.

- Quizás puedas llevar un paraguas contigo.

Maybe you can bring an umbrella with you.

- Te recomiendo encarecidamente que hagas más ejercicio.

I highly recommend exercising more.

- Te recomiendo que descanses un poco.

I advise you to rest a little.

- Es mejor que duermas un poco más.

You'd better sleep a little more.

- Gracias, lo haré.

Thanks I will.

- Suena bien.

Sounds good

- Eso suena como una buena idea.

It seems a good idea.

- Gracias. Es una buena sugerencia.

Thanks This is a good suggestion.

- Creo que tienes razón.

I think you are right.

- ¿Por qué no pensé en eso?

Why didn't I think of that?

- No, prefiero no hacerlo.

No, I prefer not to.

- No lo creo.

I do not believe it.

- No tengo ganas.

I do not want to

- No, no es esto, es una buena idea.

No, it's not that, it's a good idea.

- ¡Qué mala idea!

What a bad idea!



## CHAPTER 28: OPINIONS

---

### Spanish

- Creo que necesitamos comprar una casa.

I think we have to buy a house.

- En mi opinión, este es el mejor sitio web para aprender inglés hablado.

In my opinion, this is the best website for learning spoken English.

- No creo que debamos comprar un auto nuevo.

I don't think we should buy a new car.

- Personalmente, creo que tienes razón.

Personally, I think you are right.

- Desde mi punto de vista, ella es la mejor estudiante de la clase.

From my point of view, she is the best student in the class.

- Por lo que a mí respecta, esta camiseta no te queda bien.

As far as I'm concerned, this shirt doesn't fit you.

- Mi opinión personal es que él es un mentiroso.

My personal opinion is that he is a liar.

- Desde mi punto de vista, esta es la isla más hermosa del mundo.

From my point of view, it is the most beautiful island in the world.

- Me parece que nos perdemos.

It seems to me that we are getting lost.

- En mi opinión, es lo correcto.

In my opinion, it is the right thing to do.

- Personalmente, creo que estamos en el camino correcto.

Personally, I think we are on the right track.

- Esto es absolutamente correcto.

This is absolutely correct.

- No podría estar mas de acuerdo.

I couldn't agree more.

- Estoy completamente de acuerdo contigo.

I fully agree with you.

- Estoy de acuerdo con esta opinión

I share this opinion

- No estoy de acuerdo contigo

I do not agree with you

- Creo que estas equivocado.

I think you are wrong.

- No lo creo.

I don't think so.

- Me temo que no puedo estar de acuerdo contigo.

I'm afraid I don't agree with you.

## CHAPTER 29: WHEN CAN WE MEET UP.

---

- ¿Podemos vernos el día 14?

Can we meet on the 14th?

- ¿Podemos vernos el próximo viernes?

Can we see you next Friday?

- ¿Estás disponible el día 14?

Are you available on the 14th?

- ¿Estás libre la próxima semana?

Are you free next week?

- Nos vemos esta noche.

See you tonight.

- ¿Cuándo puedo hablar contigo?

When can I talk to you

- ¿Puedo conocerte mañana por la tarde?

Can I meet you tomorrow afternoon?

- ¿Qué tal mañana por la tarde?

And tomorrow afternoon?

- ¿El próximo lunes es conveniente para ti?

Next Monday is it right for you?

- ¿Tienes tiempo disponible esta semana?

Do you have time available this week?

- ¿Cuándo sería un buen momento para conocerte?

When would be a good time to meet with you?

- ¿Estaría bien la noche de hoy?

Would it be nice tonight?

- ¿Me puede dar una cita el domingo?

Can you give me an appointment on Sunday?

- Seguro. Vendré.

Insurance. I will come.

- Sí, el domingo está bien.

Yes, Sunday is good.

- El viernes sería perfecto.

Friday would be perfect.

- Estaré allí en ese momento.

I will be there at that time.

- Lo siento. Tengo otra cita en ese momento.

Sorry. I have another appointment at that time.

- Lo siento. No puedo ir

Sorry. I can not go

- Me temo que no puedo el día 14.

I'm afraid I can't be on the 14th.

- Lo siento, no podré hacerlo el domingo.

Sorry, I can't do it on Sunday.

- Lo siento. No creo que pueda lograrlo.

Sorry. I don't think I can do it.

## CHAPTER 30: SPANISH IDIOMATIC PHRASES

---

- Haz los cálculos sin el anfitrión.

Do the math without the host.

Actuar sin considerar posibles dificultades.

Act without considering possible difficulties.

- Es inútil llorar por la leche derramada.

It is useless to cry for spilled milk.

Es inútil quejarse / arrepentirse después / por hacer algo.

It is useless to complain / regret later / for doing something.

- Duerme en tus laureles.

Sleep on your laurels.

Reclinable.

Reclining.

- Tener una uña fija.

Have a fixed nail.

Tener una idea fija / una fijación.

Have a fixed idea / fixation.

- Teniendo la cabeza en las nubes.

Having your head in the clouds.

Estar distraído

Be distracted

- Sé el oído de un comerciante.

Be the ear of a merchant.

Fingiendo nada, no escuchando.

Pretending nothing, not listening.

- Sé un libro abierto para alguien.

Be an open book for someone.

No tengo secretos

I have no secrets

- Busca una aguja en un pajar.

Look for a needle in a haystack.

Se usa cuando es difícil o casi imposible encontrar algo.

It is used when it is difficult or almost impossible to find something.

- Encuentra el pelo en el huevo.

Find the hair in the egg.

Busca cualquier excusa.

Find any excuse.

- Teme a tu sombra.

Fear your shadow.

Tener miedo de todo.

Be afraid of everything.

- Levántate con el pie izquierdo.

Get up with your left foot.

Estar de mal humor. Además, incurrir en una serie de percances.

To be in a bad mood. Also, incurring a series of mishaps.

- Tener un demonio para el cabello.

Having a demon for hair.

Estar particularmente nervioso / enojado.

Being particularly nervous / angry.

- Tirar la toalla.

Throw in the towel.

Rendición.

Surrender.

- Conoce algo o alguien como tus bolsillos.

Know something or someone like your pockets.

Conoce algo o alguien muy bien.

You know something or someone very well.

- No prometas mares y montañas.

Do not promise seas and mountains.

No hagas promesas que no se puedan cumplir.

Don't make promises that can't be kept.

- Pon a alguien en línea.

Put someone online.

Imponer disciplina a alguien.

Impose discipline on someone.

- No todas las rosquillas salen del agujero.

Not all donuts come out of the hole.

Las cosas no siempre salen como quieres.

Things don't always go the way you want.

- Sé un abogado del diablo.

Be a devil's advocate.

Apoye ideas y opiniones contrarias a las de los demás para demostrar su inconsistencia.

Support ideas and opinions contrary to those of others to demonstrate their inconsistency.

- Tener plata brillante sobre ti.

Have shiny silver on you.

Sé muy animado e inquieto.

Be very lively and restless.

- Tener alas en tus pies.

Have wings on your feet.

Corriendo muy rápido.

Running very fast.

- Estar loco como un caballo.

Being crazy like a horse.

Estar completamente loco

Be completely crazy!

- Ahórrate una siesta.

Save yourself a nap.

Ahórrate en el último minuto, justo a tiempo.

Save yourself at the last minute, just in time.

- Parece un perro golpeado.

It looks like a beaten dog.

Tener la apariencia de una persona que ha sido hostigada / criticada severamente.

Having the appearance of a person who has been severely harassed / criticized.

- Quien lo aguante gana.

Whoever endures it wins.

Es importante perseverar para lograr sus objetivos.

It is important to persevere to achieve your goals.

- Navidad con tu familia, Pascua con quien quieras.

Christmas with your family, Easter with whoever you want.

- Esposas y bueyes de sus países.

Wives and oxen from their countries.

Es mejor casarse con una persona de su país, porque es más fácil entenderse.

It is better to marry a person from your country, because it is easier to understand each other.



- Mejor solo que mal acompañado.

Better alone than in bad company.

Es preferible estar solo en lugar de salir con mala compañía.

It is preferable to be alone instead of going out in bad company.

- Más vale tarde que nunca.

28. Better late than never.

- Encuentra América

Find America

Encuentra el mejor lugar (o persona) de todos los tiempos.

Find the best place (or person) of all time.

- Amplía tus horizontes.

Expand your horizons.

Expande tus oportunidades.

Expand your opportunities.

- Lluvia en mojado.

Rain in the wet.

Cuando una persona ya rica continúa enriqueciéndose.

When an already rich person continues to enrich himself.

- Estar aturdido

Being stunned

Sorpréndete

Be amazed

- Morir por ...

Dying for ...

No esperar

Don't wait

- Lávate las manos.

Wash your hands.

No me importa, desinterés, no me importa.

I don't care, disinterest, I don't care.

- Lo espero con ansias.

I look forward to it.

No esperar

Don't wait

- Haz los cálculos sin el anfitrión.

Do the math without the host.

Actuar sin considerar posibles dificultades.

Act without considering possible difficulties.

## CHAPTER 31: SPANISH IDIOMS WITH MEANING

---

- Ladrando a la luna = quejarse o preocuparse innecesariamente contra alguien que no nos escucha o no puede entendernos.

Barking at the moon = complaining or worrying unnecessarily against someone who does not hear us or cannot understand us.

- Baje las alas = cambie el tamaño, actúe con menos orgullo.

Lower your wings = resize, act less proudly.

- Toma el anzuelo = cae en una trampa o trampa.

Take the hook = fall into a trap or trap.

- En abundancia = en grandes cantidades.

In abundance = in large quantities.

- Un buen retorno = cuando acepta un favor con la intención de devolverlo lo antes posible.

A good return = when you accept a favor with the intention of returning it as soon as possible.

- Atrapar mariposas = perder el tiempo en cosas inútiles.

Catch butterflies = waste time on useless things.

- Corazón abierto = hablar honestamente.

Open heart = speak honestly.

- Colmillos hundidos = morder, aventurarse vorazmente.

Sunken fangs = biting, venturing voraciously.

- Con las piernas levantadas = huir rápidamente.

With legs raised = run away quickly.

- Actuar detrás de escena = alguien que maniobra a alguien o algo de forma oculta o secreta.

Acting behind the scenes = someone who maneuvers someone or something in a hidden or secret way.

- Un go-go = a voluntad, en abundancia.

A go-go = at will, in abundance.

- En términos generales = decir un hecho mientras se mantiene el genérico, descuidando los detalles.

In general terms = saying a fact while maintaining the generic, neglecting the details.

- Criar una serpiente en el útero = hacer el bien a quienes pueden convertirse en una amenaza en el futuro.

Raising a snake in the womb = doing good to those who may become a threat in the future.

- Estira el cuello = intenta ver algo asegurándote de que otros no lo noten.

Stretch your neck = try to see something by making sure others don't notice.

- Levante la bandera blanca = darse por vencido.

Raise the white flag = give up.

- Levantando la cresta = posando con orgullo.

Raising the crest = posing proudly.

- Levantar las velas = iniciar un negocio.

Raise the candles = start a business.

- Bajar las velas = retirarse de una actividad.

Lowering the sails = withdrawing from an activity.

- Ir de la mano = llevarse bien, estar muy familiarizado.

Go hand in hand = get along, be very familiar.

- Ir cuerpo = defecar.

Go body = defecate.

- Ir por las ranas = perder el hilo del habla.

Go for frogs = lose the thread of speech.

- Vaya ternero y devuelva buey = se vuelve más estúpido que antes.

Go calf and return ox = become more stupid than before.

- Ojo y cruz = evaluación o medición realizada de manera muy aproximada.

Eye and cross = evaluation or measurement performed in a very approximate way.

- Un ovni = comer un pestillo, gratis, un sbafo sin pagar.

A ufo = to eat a latch, a free, a sbafo without paying.

- Encender una luz a Nuestra Señora = como un signo de agradecimiento a la Divina Providencia por haber escapado de un grave peligro.

Lighting a light to Our Lady = as a sign of thanks to Divine Providence for having escaped a serious danger.

- Agua en la boca = guardar un secreto.

Water in the mouth = keeping a secret.

- Ahogarse en deudas = estar abrumado por deudas.

Drowning in debt = being overwhelmed with debt.

- Ágil como un gato = muy ágil como el gato que salta y trepa por todas partes.

Agile like a cat = very agile like the cat that jumps and climbs everywhere.

- Ajusta tu disparo = refina tu puntería.

Adjust your shot = refine your aim.

- Agudice su ingenio = esfuércese por comprender o resolver un problema.

Sharpen your wits = strive to understand or solve a problem.

- Para el Garibaldi = rápidamente, incluso si es inexacto.

To the Garibaldi = quickly even if inaccurate.

- A la luz del sol = para que todos lo vean, en público.

In the sunlight = for all to see, in public.

- Levanta tus manos = ríndete o golpea a alguien.

Raise your hands = give up or hit someone.

- Incendio forestal = propagación rápida, como la mancha de aceite en un

mantel.

Wildfire = spreading quickly, like the oil stain on a tablecloth.

- Apenas = con dificultad, con dificultad.

Barely = with difficulty, with difficulty.

- Matar como un perro = matar brutalmente sin el más mínimo remordimiento.

Killing like a dog = killing brutally without the slightest remorse.

- Incluso el ojo quiere su parte = cuando quieres algo, además de ser útil, también puede satisfacer el sentido estético.

Even the eye wants its part = when you want something, besides being useful, it can also satisfy the aesthetic sense.

- Ir con una pierna = ir muy bien a un lugar, tanto que lo harías incluso saltando sobre una pierna.

Going it with one leg = going very willingly to a place, so much so that you would do it even jumping on one leg.

- Ir a frijol = ir a la perfección, ser muy adecuado.

Go to bean = go to perfection, be very suitable.

- Ir a genio = ser bienvenido, estar de acuerdo.

Go to genius = to be welcome, to agree.

- Ir a toda velocidad = cuando algo va con éxito, de la mejor manera.

Go full speed = when something is going successfully, in the best way.

- Acostarse como gallinas = acostarse muy temprano.

Go to bed like chickens = go to bed very early.

- Yendo hacia arriba = cuando el intento de hacer algo falla.

Going upstream = when the attempt to do something fails.

- Ir a la boda = cuando te gusta algo / alguien en particular.

Go to wedding = when you like something / someone particularly.

- Ir a Patras = ir a la ruina.

Go to Patras = go to ruin.

- Pico = falla, hundirse en la falla.

Peak = fail, sink into failure.

- Ir al infierno = terminar mal.

Go to hell = to end badly.

- Ir a un rollo = ir a la ruina. Ir rápido = cuando un producto tiene una gran demanda en el mercado.

Going to a roll = going to ruin.

- Paseando = deambulando sin un objetivo específico.

Go fast = when a product is in great demand on the market.

- Ir al infierno = alejar a alguien de mala manera.

Strolling = wandering around without a specific goal.

- Ve al matadero = conoce la muerte.

Go to hell = drive someone away in a bad way.

- Quedarse ciego = proceder sin ver claramente.

Go to the slaughterhouse = meet death.

- Deriva = dejarse llevar, abandonarse, como arrastrado por la corriente.

Go blind = proceed without seeing clearly.

- Vaya a la fuente = encuentre el origen o la persona a cargo de algo.

Drifting = letting go, abandoning oneself, as if dragged by the current.

- Ir con los pies adelantados = proceder con precaución.

Go to the source = find the origin or person in charge of something.

- Ir de lujo = cuando algo es mejor de lo esperado.

Go with lead feet = proceed with caution.

- Ir de mal en peor = cuando una situación negativa tiende a empeorar.

Go luxury = when something is better than expected.

- Ir por lo sutil = actuar con precisión o delicadeza.

Going from bad to worse = when a negative situation that tends to get worse.

- Dejar en blanco = fallar un gol.

Go for the subtle = act with precision or delicacy.

- Ve a cumplir tu destino = acepta los obstáculos de la vida.

Go blank = fail a goal.

- Subir en humo = cuando no queda nada de algo, porque está destruido o agotado.

Go to meet your destiny = accept the obstacles of life.

- Vuélvete loco = pierde tu claridad mental.

Go up in smoke = when there is nothing left of something, because it is destroyed or exhausted.

- Ir largo = cuando los tiempos de una situación se alargan.

Go haywire = lose your mental clarity.

- Enojarse = enojarse mucho.

Go long = when the times of a situation get longer.

- Vete con la cola entre las piernas = sufre una derrota o humillación cuando antes pensabas que eras superior.

Getting mad = getting very angry.

- Ahogarse en grasa = hundirse (con los ojos) en el cuerpo de una persona gorda.

Go away with your tail between your legs = suffer a defeat or humiliation when you previously thought you were superior.

- Colgar el sombrero (o los zapatos) en la uña = retirarse de una actividad, intensa como el trabajo.

Drowning in fat = sinking (with eyes) into the body of a fat person.

- Abre los ojos = date cuenta de algo.

Hanging the hat (or shoes) on the nail = withdrawing from an activity, intense as work.

- Cielo abierto = exclamación, reacción repentina y violenta ante un evento inesperado.



Open your eyes = realize something.

- Subirse a los espejos = buscar excusas que aguanten.

Open heaven = exclamation, sudden and violent reaction in the face of an unexpected event.

- Llegar a los platos lavados = llegar cuando el trabajo a realizar ya está terminado.

Climbing on mirrors = looking for excuses that hold up.

- Llegue cuando se apaguen las luces = llegue demasiado tarde.

Getting to washed dishes = to arrive when the work to be done is already finished.

- Esperar el maná del cielo = esperar que suceda algo para resolver un problema o situación, en lugar de tomar medidas.

Arrive when the lights go out = arrive too late.

- Botón de ataque = tener una conversación larga y aburrida.

Waiting for manna from heaven = waiting for something to happen to solve a problem or situation, rather than taking action.

- Velocidad máxima = velocidad máxima, da lo mejor de ti.

Attacking button = having a long and boring conversation.

- Haber probado la mordedura del lobo = haberse vuelto cauteloso después de haber tenido experiencias desagradables.

Full speed = full speed, give your best.

- Habiendo visto al lobo = tener una voz temblorosa típica de alguien que ha sufrido un gran susto.

To have tried the bite of the wolf = to have become cautious after having had unpleasant experiences.

- Todavía tengo dientes de leche = ser muy joven e inexperto.

Having seen the wolf = having a tremulous voice typical of someone who has suffered a great fright.

- Tener culo = tener suerte.

Still have baby teeth = being very young and inexperienced.

- Habiendo cumplido treinta y treinta y uno = haz un último esfuerzo para alcanzar una meta.

Having ass = having luck.

- Tener hígado = ser valiente.

Having done thirty and doing thirty-one = make one last effort to reach a goal.

- Tener el baile de San Vito = no poder quedarse quieto.

Having liver = being brave.

- Tener el diente envenenado = guardar rencor contra alguien.

Having the San Vito dance = being unable to sit still.

- Tener un pulgar verde = ser usado para jardinería.

Having the tooth poisoned = to hold a grudge against someone.

- Tener jamón frente a tus ojos = no ver las cosas más obvias.

Having a green thumb = being worn for gardening.

- Haber tragado el mango de la escoba = ser rígido con el cuerpo erguido.

Having ham in front of your eyes = not seeing the most obvious things.

- Hacer agua la boca = ansia de algo relacionado con la comida.

To have swallowed the broom handle = to be rigid with the body erect.

- Tener una cola de paja = alguien que se exculpa sin ser acusado.

Mouth watering = craving for something related to food.

- Tener una conciencia sucia = haber hecho algo para culpar y sentirse culpable.

Having a straw tail = one who exculpates himself without being accused.

- Tener una cara como un asno = un individuo que no tiene vergüenza de hacer o decir nada.

Having a dirty conscience = having done something to blame and feel guilty about.

- Tener un sábado por la noche fiebre = loco para divertirse.

Having a face like an ass = an individual who is not embarrassed to do or say

anything.

- Tener una luna torcida = estar de mal humor.

Having a Saturday night fever = crazy to have fun.

- Tener la maldición sobre ti = ser perseguido por la mala suerte.

Having a crooked moon = being in a bad mood.

- Tener una mano ligera = tratar a alguien o algo con buenos modales.

Having the curse on you = being haunted by bad luck.

- Tener una mano pesada = no tener sentido de la medida o falta de delicadeza.

Having a light hand = treating someone or something with good manners.

- Tener la piel de gallina = reacción de la piel al frío.

Having a heavy hand = not having a sense of measure or lacking finesse.

- Tener piel dura = ser resistente a las dolencias de la vida.

Having goosebumps = reaction of the skin to the cold.

- Tener el hedor debajo de la nariz = considérate superior a los demás y mira a los demás considerados inferiores como si apestaran.

Having hard skin = being resistant to life's ailments.

- Tener el mono = estar borracho.

Having the stench under your nose = consider yourself superior to others and look at others considered inferior as if they stunk.

- Tener la espada de Damocles en la cabeza = un peligro inevitable está por venir.

Having the monkey = being drunk.

- Tener la cabeza sobre los hombros = ser una persona responsable.

Having Damocles' sword on his head = an inevitable danger is about to come.

- Tener piernas que hacen giacomo giacomo = cuando las rodillas tiemblan.

Having your head on your shoulders = being a responsible person.

- Tener las manos perforadas = ser un tipo derrochador, aquellos que

malgastan sus ahorros fácilmente.

Having legs that make giacomo giacomo = when the knees tremble.

- Tener manos doradas = saber hacer muchas cosas.

Having your hands pierced = being a spendthrift type, those who squander their savings easily.

- Tener las manos de mantequilla (o masa quebrada) = manos sin fuerza, que no tienen un agarre firme y dejan caer algo regularmente.

Having golden hands = knowing how to do many things.

- Tener manos largas = estar predispuesto al robo, como un ladrón.

Having the hands of butter (or shortcrust pastry) = hands without strength, which do not have a firm grip and regularly drop something.

- Tener pelotas = tener coraje.

Having long hands = being predisposed to theft, like a thief.

- Tener las pelotas llenas = no poder hacer más que algo, estar cansado de una manera vulgar.

Having balls = having courage.

- Tener muchas flechas en su arco = tener muchos recursos para usar para un propósito determinado.

Having balls full = not being able to do more than something, being tired in a vulgar way.

- Tener poca sal en la calabaza = no ser inteligente, tonto.

Having many arrows in your bow = having many resources to use for a given purpose.

- Tener en la punta de la lengua = no poder recordar algo que uno tiene la impresión de poder recordar en cualquier momento.

Having little salt in pumpkin = being unintelligent, foolish.

- Estar podrido mal = estar completamente equivocado acerca de algo.

Having at the tip of the tongue = not being able to remember something that one has the impression of being able to bring back to memory at any moment.

- Tener una fifa azul = sentir un fuerte miedo de tal manera que la tez de la

cara se vuelva azulada.

To be rotten wrong = to be completely wrong about something.

- Tener una marcha más alta = tener habilidades claramente superiores a otras.

Having a blue face = feel a strong fear such that the complexion of the face becomes bluish.

- Tener un as bajo la manga = tener una solución secreta, probablemente la ganadora o la solución.

Having a higher gear = having skills clearly superior to others.

- Tener una voluntad de hierro = estar muy determinado a lograr una meta o propósito.

Having an ace up your sleeve = having a secret solution, probably the winning or solving one.

- Tener un clavo fijo = tener una idea fija para la cabeza.

Having an iron will = being very determined to achieve a goal or purpose.

- Tener un demonio en tu cuerpo = estar muy animado, tener mucha energía para hacer todo.

Having a fixed nail = having a fixed idea for the head.

- Tener un demonio de pelo = estar de mal humor o furioso que si tuvieras una serie de demonios en la cabeza tirando de tu cabello.

Having a devil in your body = being very lively, having a lot of energy to do everything.

- Tener un nudo en la garganta = sentir la garganta cerrada, sin emoción, emoción, etc.

Having a devil by hair = being in a bad mood and or furious than if you had a series of Devils on your head pulling your hair.

- Tener fiebre del caballo = fiebre muy alta.

Having a lump in the throat = feeling your throat closed, out of emotion, emotion etc.

- Tener un esqueleto en el armario = ocultar un hecho comprometedor y

vergonzoso de la vida que es mejor mantener oculto.

Having a horse fever = very high fever.

- Tener una opinión = tener autoridad para intervenir en una discusión y tomar decisiones.

Having a skeleton in the closet = hiding a compromising and embarrassing fact of life that is best kept hidden.

- Tenerlo todo sobre tu cabello = llegar al límite de resistencia.

Having a say = having authority to intervene in a discussion and make decisions.

- Tenerlos por un tiempo = período de tiempo bastante largo.

Having it all over your hair = getting to the limit of endurance.

- Bailando como un oso = bailando torpe y pesadamente.

Having them for a while = rather long period of time.

- Batir efectivo = pedir dinero.

Dancing like a bear = dancing awkwardly and heavily.

- Batir la holgura = holgazanear.

Beat cash = ask for money.

- Burla del destino = evento inesperado que ocurre casi por despecho.

Beat the slack = laze.

- Bestia negra = pesadilla, obsesión con alguien o algo.

Mockery of fate = unexpected event that happens almost out of spite.

- Hervir en olla = cuando algo se prepara en secreto, sin conocer los ingredientes.

Black beast = nightmare, obsession with someone or something.

- A tientas en la oscuridad = moverse con mucha incertidumbre, sin saber a dónde ir.

Boil in pot = when something is being prepared in secret, without knowing the ingredients.

- Quemar las etapas = alcanzar una meta antes de lo esperado.

Groping in the dark = moving with much uncertainty, without knowing where to go.

- Buenas noches en el cubo = indica un fracaso, la imposibilidad de completar un trabajo.

Burning the stages = reaching a goal earlier than expected.

- Tirar al viento = desperdicio, desperdicio.

Goodnight in the bucket = indicates a failure, the impossibility of completing a work.

- Tirar paja al fuego = intensificar un conflicto.

Throw in the wind = waste, waste.

- Lanzar sardinas para atrapar picas = sacrificar algo para obtener un artículo de mejor valor a cambio.

Throwing straw on the fire = intensify a conflict.

- Tíralo al reír = minimiza una situación dolorosa o difícil.

Throwing sardines to catch pikes = sacrifice something to get a better value item in return.

- Lánzate de cabeza = tírate boca abajo o dedícate totalmente a algo.

Throw it on laughing = play down on a painful or difficult situation.

- Caer de la sartén a las brasas = para evitar el riesgo de que termines en mayores problemas.

Throw yourself headlong = throw yourself upside down or totally dedicate yourself to something.

- Caer de las nubes = descubrir con incredulidad algo que estaba claro para todos.

Falling from the pan into the embers = to avoid a risk you end up in greater trouble.

- Caer de pie = salir de una situación peligrosa.

Falling from the clouds = discovering with disbelief something that was clear to everyone.

- Cepillo de ajuste = a la perfección.

Falling on your feet = getting out of a dangerous situation.

- Cambiar las cartas sobre la mesa = desautorizar las afirmaciones de uno o cambiar los comportamientos anteriores.

Brush fitting = to perfection.

- Caminar por la cuerda floja = arriesgar mucho.

Changing the cards on the table = disavowing one's affirmations or changing previously held behaviors.

- Caminar sobre los huevos = estar en una situación difícil o delicada, en la que cualquier acción puede causar daño.

Walking a tightrope = risking a lot.

- Pasar a bean = cuando algo o alguien llega en el momento adecuado.

Walking on eggs = being in a difficult or delicate situation, in which any action is likely to cause harm.

- Caer del peral = tomar nota de una dolorosa realidad.

To happen to bean = when something or someone arrives at the right time.

- Montar el tigre = saltar a una empresa peligrosa de la que ya no puedes retirarte, o incluso involucrarte a pesar de ti mismo.

Fall from the pear tree = take note of a painful reality.

- Buscar izquierda y derecha = buscar en todas partes.

Riding the tiger = jumping into a dangerous undertaking from which you can no longer withdraw, or even find yourself involved in spite of yourself.

- Busque el pelo en el huevo = busque pequeñas imperfecciones, sea meticuloso.

Search left and right = search everywhere.

- Busque la cuadratura del círculo = busque la solución ideal para un determinado problema.

Look for the hair in the egg = look for small imperfections, be meticulous.

- Buscar a lo largo y ancho = buscar en todas las direcciones.

Look for the squaring of the circle = look for the ideal solution for a certain problem.



- Buscando una aguja en un pajar = buscando algo imposible de encontrar.

Search far and wide = search in every direction.

- Buscar por mar y montaña = buscar algo en todas partes y de forma persistente.

Looking for a needle in a haystack = looking for something impossible to find.

- Clavo expulsa clavo = un nuevo problema eclipsa al anterior.

Search by sea and mountains = search for something everywhere and persistently.

- Cierre el establo después de que los bueyes hayan escapado = tome medidas cuando el daño ya esté hecho.

Nail drives out nail = a new problem overshadows the previous one.

- Haga la vista gorda = finja no ver.

Close the stable after the oxen have escaped = take action when the damage has already been done.

- Recoger con las manos en la bolsa = sorprender a alguien en el acto de hacer algo incorrecto, o con una clara evidencia de su culpa.

Turn a blind eye = pretend not to see.

- Aproveche el momento = aproveche las oportunidades favorables.

Picking up with your hands in the bag = surprising someone in the act of doing something incorrect, or with clear evidence of their guilt.

- Golpe de esponja = borrar rencores viejos, perdonar.

Seize the moment = take advantage of favorable opportunities.

- Cultiva tu jardín = tienes que hacer lo que está dentro de nuestras posibilidades sin ceder ante sueños imposibles o imaginar una realidad inexistente.

Sponge stroke = erase old grudges, forgive.

- Mando de varita = con gran autoridad y severidad.

Cultivate your garden = you have to do what is within our possibilities without giving in to impossible dreams or imagining a non-existent reality.

- Como el diablo y el agua bendita = ser dos elementos que no pueden coexistir.

Wand command = with great authority and severity.

- Como una bestia = tratar mal.

Like the devil and holy water = being two elements that cannot coexist.

- Comprar en una caja cerrada = realizar una compra sin haber verificado la calidad, evaluando su conveniencia solo en general.

Like a beast = to treat badly.

- Con estas luces de luna ...: para indicar un momento crítico, un período difícil, especialmente desde un punto de vista económico.

Buying in a closed box = making a purchase without having checked the quality, evaluating its convenience only in general.

- Sepa cómo sus bolsillos = conoce muchos en todas sus características.

With these moonlights ...: to indicate a critical moment, a difficult period, especially from an economic point of view.

- Cuento como los dos de briscola (o los dos de espadas) = para contar poco o nada, para tener poco valor.

Know how your pockets = know many well in all its characteristics.

- Ejecutar el salto de salto = dedicarte o dejar ir una vida sin preocupaciones.

Count as the two of briscola (or the two of spades) = to count little or nothing, to be of little value.

- Lo que el jefe hecho tiene = una acción ahora completada no se puede cambiar mediante discusiones y temporizaciones.

Running the leapfrog = dedicating yourself or letting go of a carefree life.

- Creer en burros voladores = creer todo lo que se dice, ser muy ingenuo y crédulo.

What done boss has = an action now completed cannot be changed by discussions and temporizations.

- Creerse hijo de la gallina blanca = considerarse una persona particular

que tiene todos los privilegios.

To believe in flying donkeys = to believe all that is said, to be very naive and gullible.

- Creerse a sí mismo como un dios eterno = darse mucha importancia.

To believe oneself the son of the white hen = to consider oneself a particular person who has all the privileges.

- De qué púlpito proviene el sermón = referido a aquellos que dan consejos que están en abierta contradicción con su comportamiento.

Believing yourself to be an eternal god = giving yourself much importance.

- Dar un momento difícil = obstaculizar, causar problemas y dolores de cabeza.

From what pulpit comes the sermon = referred to those who give advice that are in open contradiction with their behavior.

- Girar el cerebro con el tiempo = extralimitarse, volverse loco de repente, como si el cerebro estuviera al revés.

Give a hard time = hinder, cause trouble and headaches.

- Dar los números = decir cosas sin sentido.

Turning the brain over time = overreaching, suddenly going crazy, as if the brain were upside down.

- Dar el servicio = despedir del servicio.

Give the numbers = say senseless things.

- Atrapar = sugerir secretamente a alguien qué decir o cómo comportarse.

Give the service = dismiss from the service.

- Dar en el ojo = llamar la atención.

Catching = secretly suggesting to someone what to say or how to behave.

- Lavar la cabeza = reproche abierto, regaño severo.

Give in the eye = attract attention.

- Dale un golpe al círculo y uno al barril = tienes que comportarte de una manera que no moleste a nadie, alternando entre mal y razón entre las partes en disputa.

Give a wash of the head = open reproach, severe scolding.

- Dar un dedo y obtener un brazo = aprovechar la disponibilidad de alguien.

Give a blow to the circle and one to the barrel = you have to behave in a way that does not upset anyone, alternating between wrong and reason between the parties in dispute.

- Dale de beber = haz creer una falsedad.

Giving a finger and getting an arm = take advantage of someone's availability.

- Dales una buena razón = golpea duro con el mismo entusiasmo que aquellos que creen que están de su lado.

Give it to drink = make a falsehood believe.

- Huyendo = huyendo, huyendo.

Give them good reason = beat hard with the same enthusiasm that those who believe they are right on their side.

- Azada a ti mismo en los pies = ir en contra de ti mismo, sin darse cuenta o con ira.

Running away = running away, running away.

- De hombre a hombre = fielmente, con claridad.

Hoe yourself on the feet = to go against yourself, inadvertently or in anger.

- Apenas dicho que hecho = correr de inmediato.

From man to man = loyally, with clarity.

- Defender con dientes = defender con furia.

No sooner said than done = run immediately.

- De la nada = sin previo aviso.

To defend with teeth = to defend with fury.

- Hablar de todos los colores = desahogarse, hablar libremente independientemente de la sensibilidad de los demás.

Out of the blue = without warning.

- Decir cuatro = regañar a alguien diciéndole lo que piensas.

To speak of all colors = to let off steam, to speak freely regardless of the sensitivity of others.

- Dormir en él = posponer una decisión para el día siguiente.

Saying four = scolding someone by telling them what you think.

- Dormir en nuestros laureles = permanecer inactivo y contentarnos con lo que ya se ha logrado.

Sleep on it = postpone a decision to the next day.

- Dormir entre dos almohadas = sentirse seguro, tranquilo, sin la menor preocupación

Sleeping on our laurels = staying idle and contenting ourselves with what has already been achieved.

Sleeping between two pillows = feeling safe, calm, without the slightest concern

- Es tan fácil como beber un vaso de agua = extremadamente fácil.
- Es mi caballo de batalla = un tema o un tema en el que uno se siente particularmente bien versado.

It's as easy as drinking a glass of water = extremely easy.

- Es el canto habitual = siempre es lo mismo que ya se escuchó en el pasado.

It is my workhorse = a topic or a subject in which one feels particularly well-versed.

- Entrar por un oído y salir por el otro = ignorar lo que has escuchado.

It is the usual chant = it is always the same thing already heard in the past.

- Entrar en el baile = entrar en la acción, intervenir.

Entering in one ear and going out in the other = ignoring what you have heard.

- Estar a caballo = asegurarse de alcanzar una meta.

Entering the dance = entering the action, intervening.

- Estar relajándose = que falta poco, se usa al final de algo.

Be on horseback = be sure to reach a goal.

- Estar en desacuerdo = llegar a la fase final de una pelea.

Being winding down = that little is missing, is used at the end of something.

- Estar en el séptimo cielo = sentimiento maravilloso de alguien que es extremadamente feliz.

Being at loggerheads = getting to the final phase of a fight.

- Estar en bancarrota = quedarse sin dinero.

Being in seventh heaven = wonderful feeling of someone who is extremely happy.

- Ser fruto = estar sin fuerza, sin energía.

Be broke = be left without money.

- Ser colgado de un hilo = estar en una situación peligrosa y precaria.

Being fruit = being without strength, without energy.

- Ser besado por la suerte = ser muy afortunado.

Being hung by a thread = being in a dangerous, precarious situation.

- Ser como perro y gato = estar en constante desacuerdo.

Being kissed by luck = being very lucky.

- Ser como el gato y el zorro = apoyarse mutuamente para emprender empresas deshonestas.

Being like dog and cat = being in constant disagreement.

- Ser como el perezoso = ser una persona que está en todas partes.

To be like the cat and the fox = to support each other to make dishonest undertakings.

- Ser como el fénix árabe = se refiere a una persona o algo muy perfecto, inigualable, raro y en ningún lugar que se pueda encontrar.

Being like parsley = being a person who is everywhere.

- Ser como el judío errante = no encontrar paz, no tener un hogar permanente en ninguna parte.

Being like the Arabic phoenix = refers to a person or something very perfect,

unmatched, rare and nowhere to be found.

- Estar con la soga alrededor del cuello = estar en grave peligro.

To be like the wandering Jew = to find no peace, to have no permanent home anywhere.

- Ser como un libro abierto = no tener secretos que esconder.

Being with the rope around your neck = being in serious danger.

- Ser culo y camisa = tener una relación familiar y complicidad.

Being like an open book = having no secrets to hide.

- Sea de costumbres fáciles = mujer que se entrega a muchos.

Being ass and shirt = having a family relationship and complicity.

- Ser holgado = ser indulgente o tolerante.

Be of easy customs = woman who indulges in many.

- Ser dos almas en un núcleo = para definir una amistad íntima entre dos personas.

Being loose-fitting = being forgiving or tolerant.

- Ser feliz como una Pascua = ser muy feliz.

Being two souls in a core = to define an intimate friendship between two people.

- Estar fuera de ti mismo = tener un comportamiento diferente, generalmente negativo, del habitual.

To be happy as an Easter = to be very happy.

- Ser la manzana de la discordia = ser lo que causa el desacuerdo.

Being outside yourself = having a different behavior, usually in negative, from the usual one.

- Estar en alta mar = estar muy lejos del destino.

To be the apple of discord = to be what causes disagreement.

- Ser inteligente = tener muchas habilidades.

Being on the high seas = being very far from the destination.

- Estar en primera línea = ser más importante.

Being smart = having many skills.

- Estar en cuatro gatos = estar en números muy pequeños.

Be on the front line = be more important.

- Estar en un barril de hierro = estar bien protegido o protegido.

Being in four cats = being in very small numbers.

- Estar de humor = ganas de hacer algo.

Being in an iron barrel = being well protected or protected.

- Ser la guinda del pastel = lo que completa un trabajo, una situación, etc.

Being in the mood = feeling like doing something.

- Ser el elefante en una cristalería = no ser muy delicado al decir y hacer cosas.

Being the icing on the cake = what completes a work, a situation, etc.

- Sea el hada azul = tenga la capacidad de resolver problemas o problemas.

Being the elephant in a glassware = not being very delicate in saying and doing things.

- Ser el cuento de hadas del país = ser objeto de charla.

Be the Blue Fairy = have ability to solve problems or trouble.

- Ser la oveja negra = alguien que en un grupo se distingue por su comportamiento incorrecto o contracorriente.

Being the fairy tale of the country = being the subject of chatter.

- Ser la vanguardia = ser el elemento mejor o más fuerte.

Being the black sheep = one who in a group is distinguished by his wrong or countercurrent behavior.

- Ser la última rueda del carro = no contar absolutamente nada, no tener ningún valor.

Being the cutting edge = being the best or strongest element.

- Estar en el foso de los leones = estar en una situación o condición altamente desfavorable o arriesgada.



To be the last wheel of the cart = to count absolutely nothing, to have no value.

- Ser nuevo = recién comprado, no utilizado todavía.

Being in the lions' den = being in a highly unfavorable or risky situation or condition.

- Estar tan lleno como un huevo = estar lleno o muy lleno.

Being brand new = just purchased, not used yet.

- Estar sano como un pez = estar en perfecto estado de salud.

Being as full as an egg = being full or very crowded.

- Estar en el pavimento = ser reducido a la miseria.

Being healthy like a fish = being in perfect health.

- Estar en la cresta de la ola = estar en un momento favorable de la vida.

Being on the pavement = to be reduced to misery.

- Estar en tus pies = estar en el camino.

Being on the crest of the wave = being in a favorable moment in life.

- Ser un deslizamiento de tierra = no poder hacer nada.

Being in your feet = being in the way.

- Ser otro par de mangas = otra cosa, no comparable con la anterior.

Being a landslide = being unable to do anything.

- Ser una bola y una cadena = ser una carga, un obstáculo para alguien.

Being another pair of sleeves = a whole other thing, not comparable with the previous one.

- Ser fariseo = ser una persona falsa e hipócrita.

To be a ball and chain = to be a burden, an obstacle for someone.

- Ser el hijo de un papá = alguien que vive cómodamente solo gracias a sus padres.

Being a Pharisee = being a false and hypocrite person.

- Ser una persona inteligente con tres habilidades = extremadamente inteligente, dotado de una inteligencia sutil y refinada.

Being a daddy's son = someone who lives comfortably only thanks to their parents.

- Ser un libro cerrado = ser impenetrable, aquellos que no revelan sus pensamientos, sentimientos y emociones.

Being a clever three-cooked = extremely clever person, endowed with a subtle cunning and refined intelligence.

- Ser un hombre de poca fe = una persona que no tiene fe en las palabras o acciones de otros,

Being a closed book = being impenetrable, those who do not reveal their thoughts, feelings and emotions.

- Cara de bronce (o dura) = referida a aquellos que no están avergonzados o tímidos.

Being a man of little faith = a person who has no faith in the words or actions of others,

- Hacer virtud de la necesidad = adaptarse a las dificultades, sin resignarse.

Bronze (or tough) face = referred to those who are not ashamed or shy.

- Girar las bolas = poner nervioso a alguien.

Making virtue of necessity = adapting to difficulties, without resigning oneself.

- Hacer el ojo de salmonete = hacer que la dulce mirada.

Spin the balls = make someone nervous.

- Arrojando luz sobre algo = arrojando luz.

Make the mullet eye = make the sweet look.

- Hacer reír a los pollos = no seas gracioso, no sé cómo hacer reír a nadie.

Shedding light on something = shedding light.

- Levantamiento de cabello = mucho miedo.

Making chickens laugh = don't be funny, don't know how to make anyone laugh.

- Dejar secar = matar.

Hair raising = frightening a lot.

- Mostrar los ratones verdes = crear grandes problemas.

Let dry = kill.

- Muestra la luna en el pozo = intenta engañar con promesas ilusorias.

Show the green mice = create big problems.

- Llevar la leche a las rodillas = ser aburrido, molesto, difícil de soportar.

Show the moon in the well = try to deceive with illusory promises.

- Hacer un juego de culpar = asumir las faltas, responsabilidades u obligaciones del otro.

Bringing milk to the knees = being boring, annoying, difficult to bear.

- Acto de fe = declarar oficialmente la creencia de uno.

Doing a blame game = taking on each other's faults, responsibilities, or duties.

- Escudo = gana sensacionalmente humillando al oponente.

Act of faith = officially declare one's belief.

- Me gustan los camarones = ir hacia atrás, empeorar, retroceder.

Coat = win sensationally by humiliating the opponent.

- Haz lo que el jardinero perro = no come y no deja comer.

Do like shrimp = go backward, get worse, regress.

- Ser una estaca = estar de guardia.

Do as the gardener dog = does not eat and does not let eat.

- Haga un paquete de todo el pasto = ponga en el mismo nivel varias cosas sin hacer las distinciones necesarias entre lo que es bueno y lo que es malo.

Be a stake = stand guard.

- Hacer un elefante de una mosca = exagerar mucho los hechos.

Make a bundle of all the grass = put on the same level various things without making the necessary distinctions between what is good and bad.

- Hacer los cálculos en su bolsillo = descubrir la disponibilidad económica de otros con una grosera curiosidad.

Making an elephant of a fly = exaggerating the facts a lot.

- Hacer las matemáticas sin el anfitrión = tomar decisiones apresuradas sin

tener en cuenta la voluntad de los demás.

Doing the math in your pocket = discovering the economic availability of others with rude curiosity.

- Hacer buen y mal tiempo = tener suficiente poder o influencia para determinar y regular toda una situación.

Doing the math without the host = making hasty decisions without taking into account the will of others.

- Callo = acostumbrarse.

Doing good and bad weather = having enough power or influence to determine and regulate a whole situation.

- Hacer cascanueces = cortejar, cortejar.

Callus = get used to it.

- Hacer el culo = vencer sensacionalmente.

To do nutcracker = to court, to woo.

- Hacer el diablo cuatro = hacer un gran ruido, un estruendo infernal.

To do the ass = to defeat sensationally.

- Sé el gallo = que habitualmente corteja a las mujeres, a menudo con descarada facilidad.

To do the devil four = to make a big noise, an infernal din.

- Tome el vuelo de Ícaro = sobreestime sus habilidades y salga derrotado.

Be the cockerel = who habitually courts women, with often brazen ease.

- Cigarra = malgastar bienes o dinero sin pensar en el futuro.

Take the flight of Icarus = to overestimate your skills and come out defeated.

- Hacer la cresta = apropiarse de algo más de lo necesario.

Cicada = squandering goods or money without thinking about the future.

- Hacer la figura del bacalao = hacer la figura del tonto.

Making the crest = appropriating something more than necessary.

- Para terminar como un ratón = quedar atrapado y morir.

To make the figure of the cod = to make the figure of the fool.

- Hacer piel = maltratar seriamente a alguien.

To end up like a mouse = get trapped and die.

- Haga la mayor parte = compre todo o casi todo, tome la mejor parte.

Making skin = seriously mistreating someone.

- Shuttle = ida y vuelta continuamente de un lugar a otro.

Do the lion's share = buy all or almost everything, take the best part.

- Hacer una boda con higos secos = alguien que se hace ridículo al querer lograr algo con una economía excesiva, o sin tener los medios necesarios.

Shuttle = back and forth continuously from one place to another.

- Haga horas pequeñas = quédese despierto hasta altas horas de la noche.

Making a wedding with dried figs = someone who makes himself ridiculous by wanting to achieve something with excessive economy, or without having the necessary means.

- Hacer zapatos = maniobrar furtivamente contra alguien fingiendo ser un amigo.

Make small hours = stay up late into the night.

- Ser indio = alguien que finge no escuchar ni comprender lo que le dicen.

Making shoes = maneuvering sneakily against someone by pretending to be a friend.

- Hacer la mente local = centrarse en tratar de recordar o reorganizar ideas sobre un tema específico

To be an Indian = someone who pretends not to hear or understand what he is told.

- Peinar y contrapelar = criticar duramente.

Making local mind = focus on trying to remember or rearrange ideas about a specific topic

- Limpiar = para liberar por completo, para desaparecer por completo.

Do hair and counter hair = criticize harshly.

- Tabula rasa = hacer que todo desaparezca eliminando los rastros de lo que estaba allí.

Clean up = to free completely, to disappear completely.

- Hacer trece = tener un gran golpe de suerte.

Tabula rasa = make everything disappear by eliminating the traces of what was there.

- Hacer un agujero en el agua = fallar.

Make thirteen = have a big stroke of luck.

- Hacer un matadero = crear un gran desastre, confusión.

Make a hole in the water = fail.

- Ata un pañuelo = asegúrate de recordar algo.

Making a slaughterhouse = creating a great mess, confusion.

- Hacer un trato con el diablo = estar dispuesto a hacer cualquier cosa.

Tie a handkerchief = make sure you remember something.

- Salta a la oscuridad = toma una iniciativa arriesgada.

Making a deal with the devil = being willing to do anything.

- Hacer una ira de Dios = hacer una escena violenta.

Take a leap into the dark = take a risky initiative.

- Hacer una tortilla = causar daños irreparables.

Making a wrath of God = making a violent scene.

- Aléjate = sal del peligro o castigo por algún riesgo o acción ilegal.

Making an omelet = causing irreparable damage.

- Cocido y crudo = mezcla de cualquier tipo.

Get away = get out of harm's way or punishment from some risk or unlawful action.

- Hazlo bien = acepta algo negativo.

Cooked and raw = mix of any kind.

- Burlarse de alguien = ridículo.

Get it right = accept something negative.

- Burlarse de ti mismo = burlarte de ti mismo.

Making fun of someone = deriding.

- Hecho con los pies = realizado sin compromiso y sin cuidado.

Make fun of yourself = make fun of yourself.

- Pegarse la nariz = entrometerse.

Made with the feet = performed without commitment and without care.

- Frío en la mano, cálido en el corazón = cuando estás enamorado, la sangre no circula bien.

Sticking your nose = intrude.

- Piernas en el hombro = invitación a escapar.

Cold in the hand, warm in the heart = when you are in love, the blood does not circulate well.

- Pelar el gato = tener un grano, un problema a resolver.

Legs on shoulder = invitation to escape.

- Tirar ortigas = tirar mal.

Peeling cat = having a grain, a problem to be solved.

- Tirar humo a los ojos = engaño.

Throw nettles = throw away badly.

- Deseche la máscara = demuestre abiertamente sus intenciones.

Throwing smoke in the eyes = delusion.

- Tirar la toalla = rendirse, rendirse.

Discard the mask = openly demonstrate your intentions.

- Jugar como un gato y un ratón = atormentar a un oponente más débil sabiendo que puede vencerlo cuando quiera.

Throw in the towel = give up, give up.

- Rascarse la barriga = no hacer nada.

Playing like the cat with the mouse = tormenting a weaker opponent knowing he can beat him whenever he wants.

- Llorando al lobo = pedir ayuda incluso cuando no es necesario.

Scratching your belly = do nothing.

- Despreciar a uno = sentirse superior.

Crying the wolf = asking for help even when it is not needed.

- Las cuentas no regresan = cuando un razonamiento no convence, parece incorrecto.

Looking down on one = feeling superior.

- El corazón no está equivocado = las elecciones hechas con intuición no están equivocadas.

The accounts don't come back = when reasoning doesn't convince, it seems wrong.

- La dulce ociosidad = estado de ociosidad feliz y despreocupada.

The heart is not wrong = the choices made with intuition are hardly wrong.

- El juego no vale la pena = un resultado que ha requerido demasiados

esfuerzos y sacrificios para lograrlo.

The sweet idleness = state of idleness happy and carefree.

- Buena suerte = deseo de broma de buena suerte.

The game is not worth the candle = a result that has required too many efforts and sacrifices to be achieved.

- Después de todo = después de todo, después de todo, todas las cosas consideradas.

Good luck = joking wish of good luck.

- En un abrir y cerrar de ojos = en un instante.

After all = after all, after all, all things considered.

- Use la camisa de Nessus = tormento insoportable del cual es imposible liberarse.

In the blink of an eye = in an instant.

- Tragar el sapo = soportar una situación desagradable porque no se puede hacer de otra manera.

Wear the shirt of Nessus = unbearable torment from which it is impossible to break free.

- Enseñar a los peces a nadar = pretender saber más y más que otros.

Swallow the toad = endure an unpleasant situation because it cannot be done otherwise.

- Persiguiendo una quimera = persiguiendo un sueño irrealizable.

Teach fish to swim = pretend to know more and more than others.

- El huevo de Colombo = solución inesperadamente simple a un problema aparentemente imposible.

Chasing a chimera = chasing an unfulfillable dream.

- La clase no es agua = "clase" es una cualidad rara y poco común como el agua.

Colombo's egg = unexpectedly simple solution to a seemingly impossible problem.

- La gallina de huevo de oro = algo extremadamente rentable.

Class is not water = "class" is a rare and uncommon quality like water.

- Lágrimas de cocodrilo = lágrimas falsas.

The golden egg hen = something extremely profitable.



- Deje algo que desear = no totalmente satisfecho.

Crocodile tears = fake tears.

- Déjanos las plumas = morir.

Leave something to be desired = not fully satisfied.

- Deje que alguien cocine en su caldo = no se preocupe en lo más mínimo, organícelo usted mismo.

Leave us the pens = die.

- Lávese las manos = quítese la responsabilidad de ellas.

Let someone cook in their broth = don't worry about it in the least, arrange it yourself.

- Trabajar por la gloria = trabajar sin recibir ninguna remuneración.

Wash your hands = take responsibility away from them.

- Lamerse un bigote = disfrutar de mucha comida.

To work for glory = to work without receiving any remuneration.

- Lamerte los pies = halagar a alguien importante para obtener beneficios.

Licking a mustache = enjoying a lot of food.

- Lamerse las heridas = tratar de consolarse por un fracaso, por una decepción.

Licking your feet = flattering someone important to gain benefits.

- Átelo en su dedo = no lo olvide, generalmente refiriéndose a las lesiones sufridas.

Licking one's wounds = trying to console oneself for failure, for a disappointment.

- Quitar las cortinas = salir.

Tie it on your finger = don't forget, generally referring to the injuries suffered.

- Sal de las bolas = sal del camino.

Remove the curtains = leave.

- Dale un mordisco a tu boca = private de lo que necesitas para ayudar a alguien.

Get out of the balls = get out of the way.

- Sacarse un diente = tener un pensamiento molesto.

Take a bite out of your mouth = deprive yourself of what you need to help

someone.

- Suave como el aceite = tranquilo, plano o liso o sin dificultad.

Getting a tooth out = getting an annoying thought out.

- Lucha sin vecindario = lucha sin descanso ni descanso, sin detenerse hasta la victoria.

Smooth as oil = calm, flat, or smoothly or without difficulty.

- Enviar para ser bendecido = enviar al diablo, enviar a ese país.

Struggle without neighborhood = fight without respite or rest, without stopping until victory.

- Explotar = explotar algo.

Send to be blessed = send to the devil, send to that country.

- Enviar upstream = no materializarse, no lograr un objetivo.

Blow up = blow up something.

- Enviar a ese país = enviar abruptamente a alguien lejos.

Send upstream = not materialize, not achieve a goal.

- Comer detrás de alguien = ser mantenido.

Send to that country = abruptly send someone away.

- Comer con cuatro palmenti = comer con avidez, con avidez.

Eating behind someone = being maintained.

- Ufo comiendo = comer sin pagar y sin dar nada a cambio.

Eating with four palmenti = eating greedily, greedily.

- Come como un pájaro = come muy poco.

Ufo eating = eating without paying and without giving anything in return.

- Come la hoja = entiende algo sobre la marcha, intuye de antemano.

Eat like a bird = eat very little.

- Comer pan traicionero = vivir detrás de otros sin mostrar ninguna gratitud.

Eat the leaf = understand something on the fly, intuit in advance.

- Comer para dos = comer mucho, lo que sería suficiente para dos personas.

Eating treacherous bread = living behind others without showing any gratitude.

- Comer a alguien vivo = atacar, ofender, atacar con gran violencia.  
Eating for two = eating a lot, what would be enough for two people.

- Conduce al perro en la granja = habla sobre un tema sin llegar al punto.  
To eat someone alive = to attack, offend, attack with great violence.

- Menar por la nariz = burlarse, engañar.  
Lead the dog in the farmyard = talk about a topic without ever getting to the point.

- Hierro y fuego = destruir.  
Menar for the nose = make fun of, deceive.

- Poner apuestas = establecer límites más allá de los cuales no debes ir.  
Iron and fire = destroy.

- Poner el carro frente a los bueyes = apresurarse demasiado rápido.  
Putting stakes = setting limits beyond which you should not go.

- Ponga el palo en las ruedas = evite continuar.  
Putting the cart in front of the oxen = rushing too fast.

- Pon el dedo en la llaga = toca un tema delicado o embarazoso.  
Put the stick in the wheels = prevent from continuing.

- Poner al lobo en el redil = poner a alguien en una posición de gran ventaja o confiar un bien precioso a la persona menos adecuada.  
Put your finger on the sore = touch a delicate or embarrassing topic.

- Poner una buena luz = hablar positivamente sobre alguien, hacer que se vean bien a los ojos de los demás.  
Putting the wolf in the sheepfold = putting someone in a position of great advantage or entrusting a precious good to the less suitable person.

- Poner una mala luz = hablar negativamente sobre alguien, hacer que otros se vean mal.  
Put in a good light = speak positively about someone, make them look good in the eyes of others.

- Poner en la cruz = tormento.  
To put in a bad light = to speak negatively about someone, to make others look bad.

- Para resaltar = para resaltar.  
Put on the cross = torment.

- Ponga los puntos en el i = clarifique un concepto para que no haya malentendidos.

To highlight = to highlight.

- Ponga la soga alrededor de su cuello = imponga condiciones pesadas e inaceptables.

Put the dots on the i = clarify a concept so that there can be no misunderstanding.

- Ponga la pulga en el oído = insinuar a un sospechoso.

Put the rope around your neck = impose heavy and unacceptable conditions.

- Ponga la pata = hábilmente entrometerse para aprovecharla.

Put the flea in the ear = insinuate a suspect.

- Poner negro sobre blanco = poner por escrito.

Put the paw = skillfully intrude to take advantage of it.

- Poner demasiada carne al fuego = participar en demasiadas actividades al mismo tiempo.

Put black on white = put in writing.

- Darlo todo = trabajar duro.

Putting too much meat on the fire = engaging in too many activities at the same time.

- Ponte las cuerdas = no dejes otra opción.

Give it all = work hard.

- Poner algo debajo de los dientes = comer cualquier cosa.

Put on the ropes = leave no choice.

- Ponle una cruz = abandona permanentemente, deja de pensar en ello.

Put something under your teeth = eat anything.

- Ponle una piedra = no pienses más en algo, olvídalo, no hables más de eso.

Put a cross on it = give it up permanently, stop thinking about it.

- Poner las manos en el pelo = desesperación.

Put a stone on it = don't think about something anymore, forget it, don't talk about it anymore.

- Morderse la lengua = abstenerse de hablar, lamentando haber hablado.

Getting your hands in your hair = despairing.

- Muestra tus dientes = muestra tu determinación, ten una actitud agresiva.  
Biting your tongue = refraining from speaking, regretting having spoken.

- Mueve el cielo y la tierra = usa todos los medios posibles para lograr algo.

Show your teeth = show your determination, have an aggressive attitude.

- Nacer con una camisa = ser particularmente afortunado.

Move heaven and earth = use all possible means to achieve something.

- ¡Ni siquiera por un sueño! = absolutamente no.

Being born with a shirt = being particularly lucky.

- No tenga el pico de un centavo = ni siquiera tenga un centavo.

Not a chance! = absolutely not.

- No tengas vello en la lengua = exprésate con total sinceridad, sin temor a decir tus pensamientos.

Do not have the beak of a penny = not even have a penny.

- No tener nada que poner bajo los dientes = no tener nada para comer, ser muy pobre.

Do not have hair on the tongue = express yourself in total sincerity, without the fear of saying your thoughts.

- No golpees un clavo = no obtienes nada.

Having nothing to put under your teeth = having nothing to eat, being very poor.

- No entiendo una tubería = no entiendo absolutamente nada.

Don't beat a nail = get nothing.

- No entiendo un iota = no entiendo nada.

Don't understand a pipe = don't understand absolutely anything.

- No saque una araña del agujero = no concluya nada a pesar de los esfuerzos e intentos.

Don't understand an iota = don't understand anything.

- No haga la vista gorda = no puede dormir.

Do not pull a spider out of the hole = do not conclude anything despite efforts and attempts.

- No llueve = cuando quieres expresar la certeza de un determinado evento.

Don't turn a blind eye = can't sleep.

- Nada es imposible = todo se puede lograr con el compromiso correcto.  
It doesn't rain = when you want to express the certainty of a certain event.

- No seas harina de tu saco = ser copiado o hecho con la ayuda de otros.  
Nothing is impossible = everything can be achieved with the right commitment.

- No seas la espinilla de un santo = ser una persona honesta o justa, o con un pasado algo tormentoso.  
Don't be flour from your sack = be copied or done with the help of others.

- No lastimes a una mosca = sé manso e inofensivo.  
Don't be a saint's shank = be an honest or fair person or a somewhat stormy past.

- No mires a nadie a la cara = no hagas favoritismo.  
Don't hurt a fly = be meek and harmless.

- No importe un higo seco = no importe nada.  
Do not look anyone in the face = do not do favoritism.

- No mueva un dedo = no haga absolutamente nada, no intervenga.  
Don't import a dried fig = don't import anything.

- No saber qué pescado tomar = no saber qué decidir.  
Do not move a finger = do absolutely nothing, do not intervene.

- No sé dónde golpearse la cabeza = no sé cómo lidiar con una situación difícil o complicada.  
Not knowing what fish to take = not knowing what to decide.

- No saber cómo mantener un garbanzo en la boca = no poder guardar un secreto.  
Don't know where to bang your head = don't know how to deal with a difficult or complicated situation.

- No escuche una mosca volar = silencio absoluto, no escuche ningún ruido.  
Not knowing how to hold a chickpea in your mouth = being unable to keep a secret.

- No puedes vivir en el aire = ser muy pobre, como si solo tuvieras aire para alimentarte.  
Don't hear a fly fly = absolute silence; don't hear any noise.

- No te quedes en el cielo o en la tierra = ser imposible, absurdo.  
You can't live in the air = being very poor, as if you only had air to feed yourself.

- Ya no estar en la piel = estar en una agitada espera.  
Do not stay in heaven or on earth = to be impossible, absurd.

- No despierte al perro dormido = no provoque a quienes puedan reaccionar de manera impredecible.  
No longer being in the skin = being in a hectic waiting.

- No tuerza un cabello = no le haga ningún daño a nadie.  
Do not wake the sleeping dog = do not provoke those who might react unpredictably.

- No vale un higo seco = vale muy poco, menos que un higo seco.  
Do not twist a hair = do absolutely no harm to anyone.

- No vale una lira = no vale nada.  
Not worth a dried fig = worth very little, less than a dried fig.

- Mirando hacia adelante = ser impaciente.  
Not worth a lira = not worth anything.

- Nadar en oro = ser muy rico.  
Looking forward = being impatient.

- se va o se rompe = intento arriesgado, que podría ser bueno o muy malo.  
Swimming in gold = being very rich.

- Come sopa o salta por la ventana = convence a alguien que no tiene otra alternativa.  
Either it goes, or it breaks it = risky attempt, which could be good or very bad.

- Ojo de halcón = vista aguda.  
Either eat soup or jump out of the window = convince someone who has no other alternative.

- Ojo de lince = tener una vista muy aguda y penetrante.  
Hawkeye = acute sight.

- La muerte de cada papa = raramente.  
Lynx eye = having a very sharp and penetrating sight.

- Todos llevan su cruz =  
Every pope's death = rarely.

- Además del daño, el engaño = además de haber sufrido el daño, también se burla de él.

Everyone carries his cross =

- Ahora bailamos = expresa preocupación por un peligro inminente.  
In addition to the damage, the hoax = in addition to having suffered the damage, it is also made fun of.

- Paga la fio = sufre el castigo correcto.  
Now we dance = expresses concern about an imminent danger.

- Hablar a la vista = hablar confidencialmente y sin testigos.  
Pay the fio = suffer the right punishment.

- Habla claro y redondo = habla explícitamente sin palabras.  
Talking to the eye = speaking confidentially and without witnesses.

- Hablar como un libro impreso = expresarse con excelentes propiedades lingüísticas.  
Speak clear and round = speak explicitly without words.

- Hablar Ostrogoth = hablar un idioma incomprensible.  
Speaking like a printed book = expressing oneself with great language properties.

- Comenzando en cuarto = comenzando algo con gran entusiasmo.  
Speaking Ostrogoth = speaking an incomprehensible language.

- Pasar de las estrellas a los establos = del éxito al fracaso, de la riqueza a la miseria.  
Starting in fourth = starting something with great enthusiasm.

- Pase la papa caliente = dé a otros una situación difícil de manejar y resolver.  
Moving from the stars to the stables = from success to failure, from wealth to misery.

- Ir bajo los tenedores Caudine = sufrir una grave humillación.  
Pass the hot potato = give others a difficult situation to manage and solve.

- Perder la luz de la razón = volverse loco.  
Go under the Caudine forks = suffer a serious humiliation.



- Perder la cara = perder dignidad y honor.

Losing the light of reason = going crazy.

- Perder los estribos = perder la paciencia.

Losing face = losing dignity and honor.

- Por hilo y por signo = algo hecho con orden y precisión.

Losing the stirrups = losing patience.

- Para auriculares rotos = apenas superar una situación difícil.

By thread and by sign = something made with order and precision.

- Pisar los pies de alguien = daño o molestia.

For broken headphones = barely overcome a difficult situation.

- Llorando con lágrimas calientes = llorando desesperadamente.

Step on someone's feet = damage or annoy.

- Llorando como un ternero = llorando desesperadamente.

Crying with hot tears = crying desperately.

- Llorar sobre ti mismo = sentir lástima por ti mismo todo el tiempo, con quejas que tocan lo ridículo.

Crying like a calf = crying desperately.

- Plantar as = dejar a alguien solo, inesperadamente, y en medio de dificultades o situaciones desagradables.

Crying on yourself = feeling sorry for yourself all the time, with complaints that touch the ridiculous.

- ¡Está lloviendo, ladrón del gobierno! = culpar al gobierno, incluso por la lluvia.

Planting ace = leaving someone alone, unexpectedly, and in the midst of difficulties or unpleasant situations.

- Llueve en mojado = el empeoramiento de una situación ya mala.

It's raining, government thief! = to blame the government, even for the rain.

- Llevar agua al mar = realizar tareas innecesarias.

It rains in the wet = the worsening of an already bad situation.

- Tomar literalmente = entender el significado literal, sin comprender los significados ocultos.

Bringing water to the sea = doing unnecessary tasks.

- Tome dos pájaros de un tiro = logre dos objetivos con un solo esfuerzo.

Take literally = understand the literal meaning, without grasping the hidden meanings.

- Burlarse = burlarse, ridiculizar.

Take two birds with one stone = achieve two goals with one effort.

- Toma la pelota = aprovecha la oportunidad favorable y aprovéchala.

Making fun = mocking, ridicule.

- Tome la vida con filosofía = no se preocupe ni se deprima ante los problemas de la vida.

Take the ball = take the favorable opportunity and take advantage of it.

- Tomar luciérnagas por linternas = confundir una cosa por otra.

Take life with philosophy = do not get worried or depressed in the face of life's problems.

- Tomar debajo de la pierna = tomarlo demasiado a la ligera subestimando su importancia y dificultad.

Taking fireflies for lanterns = confusing one thing for another.

- Take a bin = sufrir una estafa.

To take under the leg = to take it too lightly underestimating its importance and difficulty.

- Toma un cangrejo = comete un error.

Take a bin = suffer a scam.

- Hacer un derrape = enamorarse de manera intensa y repentina.

Take a crab = make a mistake.

- Prometedor mar y montaña = hacer promesas sin poder o querer cumplirlas.

Taking a skid = falling in love is an intense and sudden way.

- Temas de lana de cabra = debates sobre cosas inútiles y sin fundamento.

Promising sea and mountains = making promises without being able or wanting to keep them.

- Aquí el burro cae = aquí es fácil equivocarse.

Goat wool issues = discussions on futile, baseless things.

- Aquí el gato nos cría = cuando algo es extraño o poco convincente.

Here the donkey falls = here it is easy to be wrong.

- Raspe el fondo del barril = use los últimos recursos restantes para salir de un obstáculo.

Here cat breeds us = when something is strange or unconvincing.

- Hacer pan para focaccia = devolver una ofensa o un mal recibido con igual o mayor amargura.

Scrape the bottom of the barrel = use the last remaining resources to get out of a hindrance.

- Quedarse con mal gusto = estar decepcionado.

Making pan for focaccia = returning an offense or a wrong received with equal or greater bitterness.

- Siga recto = actúe de acuerdo con sus deberes.

To be left with a bad taste = to be disappointed.

- Gire la tortilla = haga que algo aparezca según su conveniencia.

Go straight = act according to your duties.

- Mantente a flote = resiste eventos, sálvate de una situación difícil.

Turn the omelet = make something appear according to your convenience.

- Quédate con un puñado de moscas = obtén poco o nada.

Stay afloat = resist events, save yourself from a difficult situation.

- Estar aturdido = estar asombrado, sin palabras.

Stay with a handful of flies = get little or nothing.

- Retira la palabra = no mantengas un compromiso.

To be stunned = to be amazed, without words.

- Remangarse las mangas = comprometerse a hacer algo.

Take back the word = don't keep a commitment.

- Volver a la normalidad = recuperarse de una enfermedad o lesión.

Roll up your sleeves = commit to doing something.

- Rimas de respuesta = reacción verbal a una intervención ofensiva o provocativa.

Getting back on track = recovering from an illness or injury.

- Romper el retraso = tomar medidas.

Answering rhymes = verbally reacting to an offensive or provocative intervention.

- Roer el hígado = rencor melancólico, ira.

Break the delay = take action.

- Romper el hielo = detener una situación hecha de silencio y vergüenza.

Gnawing one's liver = brooding rancor, anger.

- Romper las cajas = crear molestia.

Break the ice = stop a situation made of silence and embarrassment.

- Romper huevos en la canasta = arruinar un plan o proyecto preparado pacientemente.

Breaking the boxes = creating annoyance.

- Saltar la zanja = romper cualquier relación con el pasado para dedicarte a cosas completamente nuevas.

Breaking eggs in the basket = ruining a patiently prepared plan or project.

- Salto de calidad = mejora significativa de la calidad.

Jumping the ditch = breaking any relationship with the past to devote yourself to entirely new things.

- Salvar la cabra y la col = salvaguardar los intereses de dos personas con una decisión.

Quality leap = significant quality improvement.

- Save face = en caso de falla, trate de no perder reputación.

Saving goat and cabbage = safeguarding the interests of two people with a decision.

- Conozca sus cosas = tenga confianza en sí mismo y sea capaz de sobrevivir.

Save face = in case of failure, try not to lose reputation.

- Saberlo mucho = ser muy inteligente, inteligente.

Know your stuff = be self-confident and able to get by.

- Conocer a uno más que al diablo = ser muy inteligente, conocer toda la malicia que el Diablo puede conocer e incluso uno más.

Know it long = be very smart, smart.

- Ganarse la vida = vivir con dificultades, reunir el dinero suficiente para la supervivencia diaria.

To know one more than the devil = to be very clever, to know all the malice that the Devil can know and even one more.

- Calentando el escritorio = asistiendo a la escuela estudiando poco o nada.  
Making ends meet = living with difficulty, putting together just enough money for daily survival.

- Cavar el hoyo = arruinar con tus propias manos.  
Warming up the desk = attending school studying little or nothing.

- Elija una flor = haga una selección cuidadosa, eligiendo siempre la mejor.  
Digging the pit = ruining with your own hands.

- Descubrir agua caliente = pensar o presumir de haber descubierto algo que todos conocen.  
Choose a flower = make a careful selection, always choosing the best.

- Discover America = piensa o presume de haber descubierto algo que todos conocen.  
Discovering hot water = thinking or bragging that you have discovered something that is actually known to everyone.

- Sentirse como un pez fuera del agua = no sentirse cómodo.  
Discover America = think or boast of having discovered something that is actually known to everyone.

- Servir a dos maestros = servir a dos personas que persiguen intereses o propósitos en conflicto o incompatibles.  
Feeling like a fish out of water = not feeling comfortable.

- Romper una puerta abierta = apoyar un tema con una persona que piensa de la misma manera.  
Serving two masters = serving two people who pursue conflicting or incompatible interests or purposes.

- Su nombre es Pietro y regresa = para prestar algo y señalar que la quieres de regreso lo antes posible.  
Breaking through an open door = supporting a topic with a person who thinks the same way.

- Señores, ustedes nacen, no se vuelven = los buenos modales se aprenden desde una edad temprana.  
Her name is Pietro and come back = to lend something and point out that you want her back as soon as possible.

- Dividir el cabello en cuatro = entrar en demasiados detalles.

Gentlemen, you are born, you do not become = good manners are learned from a young age.

- Disparar cero = acusar, criticar.

Splitting the hair in fours = going into too much detail.

- Romper una lanza a favor = tomar defensas.

Shoot zero = accuse, criticize.

- Exprimir como un limón = aprovecharlo al máximo.

Break a lance in favor = take defenses.

- Perder el aliento = hablar innecesariamente, sin ser escuchado.

Squeeze like a lemon = make the most of it.

- Escupe el sapo = confiesa algo.

To waste your breath = to speak unnecessarily, without being listened to.

- Quédese allí como el repollo snack = choque, no tiene relevancia para el tema en cuestión.

Spit out the toad = confess something.

- Mantente cerca = sigue a una distancia muy corta.

Stay there like the cabbage snack = clash, have no relevance to the topic in question.

- Quedarse en la ventana = solo mirar.

Stay close = follow at a very short distance.

- Mantente en suspenso = espera ansioso a que salga algo.

Staying at the window = just watching.

- Párate con las manos = no hagas nada, no intervengas.

Stay in suspense = wait anxiously for something to come out.

- Aprieta los dientes = resiste, no te rindas.

Stand with your hands = do nothing, do not intervene.

- En lo más bello = en el mejor o más importante momento.

Grit your teeth = resist, don't give up.

- Cortar = excluir.

On the most beautiful = in the best or most important moment.

- Cortar los puentes = cortar relaciones, no tener relaciones con nadie.

Cut out = exclude.

- Cortar la cuerda = escabullirse.

To cut the bridges = to sever relationships, not to have relationships with anyone.

- Cortar la cabeza del toro = tomar una decisión drástica.

Cut the rope = sneak away.

- Cortar las piernas = obstaculizar seriamente a alguien, evitando que avance con su propia fuerza.

Cut the bull's head = make a drastic decision.

- Talón de Aquiles = punto débil.

Cut the legs = seriously hinder someone, preventing him from moving forward with his own strength.

- Mucho humo y poco asado = situación rica en apariencia pero pobre en sustancia.

Achilles heel = weak point.

- Recortar las alas de alguien = evitar que alguien muestre sus habilidades.

A lot of smoke and little roast = situation rich in appearance but poor in substance.

- Espera = espera, no te rindas.

Clipping someone's wings = preventing someone from showing their skills.

- Mantén el pico cerrado = mantén la boca cerrada, cállate.

Hold on = hold on, don't give up.

- Mantener el cuchillo en el lado del mango = tener el control de la situación y poder decidir qué hacer.

Keep the beak closed = keep the mouth closed, keep quiet.

- Mantener en la pelota = mantener en espera, parada.

Keeping the knife on the handle side = being in control of the situation and being able to decide what to do.

- Mantenerse bajo control = mantener a alguien en una posición inferior para poder manejarlo mejor.

Keep on the ball = keep on hold, stall.

- Esté atento = para que pueda verse o controlarse fácilmente.

Keeping in check = keeping someone in an inferior position to be able to

manage him better.

- Aguanta la cuerda = aguanta la duda, la incertidumbre.

Keep an eye on = so you can easily see or control yourself.

- Mantener en las espinas = alimentar la curiosidad de los demás.

Hold on the rope = hold in doubt, in uncertainty.

- Tenso como una cuerda de violín = estar particularmente nervioso.

Keep on thorns = feed the curiosity of others.

- Tire de los remos en el bote = suspenda una actividad.

Tense like a violin string = being particularly nervous.

- Pull in dance = hacer que alguien participe en eventos, discursos, negociaciones.

Pull the oars on the boat = suspend an activity.

- Atraiga agua a su molino = haga su propio interés.

Pull in dance = make someone participate in events, speeches, negotiations.

- Tire del cinturón = apenas viva, pase hambre.

Draw water to your mill = do your own interest.

- Tirar del cuero = morir

Pull the belt = barely live, go hungry.

- Tire del pelo = obligar a alguien a hacer algo.

Pull the leather = die.

- Tirar demasiado de la cuerda = fingir demasiado, arriesgarse a "romper" la cuerda.

Pull by the hair = force someone to do something.

- Toca el fondo = llega al punto más bajo, triste o vergonzoso, de tu vida.

Pulling on the rope too much = pretending too much, risking to "break" the rope.

- Retira las castañas del fuego = ayuda a alguien, liberándolo de una situación potencialmente difícil y peligrosa.

Touch the bottom = reach the lowest point, sad or shameful, of your life.

- Tres hilos forman una cadena = la unión de tres cosas aparentemente inútiles crea algo útil.

Remove the chestnuts from the fire = help someone, freeing them from a



potentially difficult and dangerous situation.

- Encontrar Eldorado = alcanzar una situación envidiable de bienestar y abundancia.

Three threads make a string = the union of three apparently useless things creates something useful.

- Encontrar pan para tus dientes = encontrar un rival digno.

Finding Eldorado = reaching an enviable situation of well-being and abundance.

- Estar cara a cara = estar frente a una persona, solo, sin otras personas alrededor.

Finding bread for your teeth = finding a worthy rival.

- Estar entre dos fuegos = estar en medio de dos peligros igualmente graves.

Being face to face = being in front of a person, alone, without others around.

- Estar entre el yunque y el martillo = estar en medio de dos personas hostiles o dos peligros.

Being between two fires = being in the middle of two equally serious dangers.

- Use palo y zanahoria = alterne buenos y malos modales para lograr un cierto resultado.

Being between the anvil and the hammer = being in the midst of two hostile people or two dangers.

- Sal de las pandillas = pierde la paciencia.

Use stick and carrot = alternate good and bad manners in order to achieve a certain result.

- Ver abajo = quiere ir al final.

Get out of the gangs = lose patience.

- Ver todo negro = ser negativo y pesimista.

See the bottom = want to go to the end.

- Verlo feo = estar en una situación de grave peligro.

Seeing everything black = being negative and pessimistic.

- Vende tu piel caro = defiéndete con todas tus fuerzas.

Seeing it ugly = being in a situation of grave danger.

- Llegar al punto = examinar el tema más importante del discurso.  
Sell your skin dearly = defend yourself with all your might.
- Entrar en el centro de atención = imponer atención y lograr notoriedad.  
Coming to the point = examining the most important topic of the speech.
- Vivir en el limbo = estar en una situación de incertidumbre.  
Living in limbo = being in a situation of uncertainty.
- Gira la cara = cambia de opinión, recupera la palabra.  
Turn your face = change your mind; get your word back.